

# MANIPURI GRAMMAR



NAND LAL SHARMA

*Published by:—* **R. K. Book Agency**  
**Paona Bazar, Imphal**

*Edition— 1st edition:*  
**Price—Rs. 35**

---

**Printed at R. K PRINTERS, Paona Bazar, Imphal.**

# P R E F A C E

Manipuri is the most widely used Tibeto-Burman language of India. It has thus a special importance among the languages of India.

Manipuri was noticed in the Linguistic Survey of India. It was then dealt with in the monograph by Pettigrew and also in some text books by the writers including Padma Shri Kelachand Singh and Shri Dwijamani Sharma. But such text books and monographs do not show the basic categories of Genders, Numbers, Cases, Tenses, Tense Forms etc. They do not thus serve as an aid to the Manipuri Morphology, Phonology and Syntax portions of the language remain as the entirely new field. Thus basic features of phonology, morphology and syntax of Manipuri are not yet brought out.

The author worked on the Manipuri Grammar while teaching the students of the Tombisana High School, Imphal during 1954-56 and 1960-62. Some portions of such work were published and prescribed as the text book in the schools and Colleges. The reception they got was also encouraging. The author could work on Manipuri with more comprehension and precision only after taking it up as a full time departmental work in the Manipur College, Imphal during 1983-85. He has before him no model of a complete grammar of any Tibeto-Burman language of India. Thus the present work was done independently without any commitment towards any model or published works on the Tibeto-Burman languages.

Dialectal variations are very few in the language and seen in the outlying districts of the Manipur Valley. The representative standard Manipuri is the form spoken in the Greater Imphal areas and adjoining districts. It is also understood and spoken by the speakers of the different tribal languages in the Hill Districts of Manipur. The written form of

## ( II )

the standard Manipuri is the Modern Manipuri Literature with two trends viz, the highly literary Manipuri and the puristic Manipuri. Such trends are not important from the view point of literary assessment and evaluation but they merit notice for linguistic analysis. These trends show slight variations. The highly literary Manipuri use a large measure of Sanskrit words and the puristic Manipuri preserves some features of the early Manipuri. Such standard Manipuri in its spoken and written form is analysed and described in the present work with due emphasis on the features used in the formal talks and common correspondences. Dialectal variations have been noted when they were found important.

### Aim and Form

The purpose of the present work is to help the Students and language teachers giving the basic features of the language. This practical side primarily governs the pattern of presentation of the materials in this work. Descriptive approach has been adopted in general. Comprehensive examples are given.

Care has been taken to make this book not too theoretical. Thus mathematical formulae are avoided as far as practicable. Simple statements are used in place of abstract and technical enunciations even where such enunciations would have been more appropriate. Simple statements are also used in place of more compact and precise formalisations even where such formalisations would have been more accurate. There are thus limitations and even inaccuracies in some sections imposed by the attempt to make this book not too theoretical. The author is fully aware of such limitations.

The present work should have avoided references to the historical developments and ancient sources. But it is not possible in case of this language which shows different features in the early and medieval Manipuri.

The analysis of the language will show that almost all the features brought out in this book are new and do not



find any place in the published works on the language. But it does not mean that every feature and peculiarity of the language has been brought in. The field is so vast that they can hardly be covered in a work like this. However, it is hoped that the basic grammatical forms and features required for understanding the language have been adequately dealt with.

### Subject

The Introductory Chapter is a very short sketch of the the early Manipuri literature and the Modern Manipuri.

The First Chapter deals with Manipuri Phonology. Vowels ( both the monophthongs and diphthongs) carry two Tones viz., the High Tone and the Falling Tone. The problems in the modifications of the two Tones of the vowels are pointed out for the first time. Though a complete phonemic analysis is not fully relevant for a book of this size, it is considered necessary in order to make the phonomic studies readily available for the users. A list of the consonant clusters are given at the end of this chapter not only illustrates the voicing, unvoicing etc. of such consonants but also brings out the features of the modification of the two tones of the vowels.

The Second Chapter deals with Morphophonimics. The problems of morphophonimics are not complex compared with those in the New Indo-Aryan languages. Vowels in the loan words of the Indo-Aryan origin undergo morphophonemic changes in conformity with such changes of Manipuri vowels. A separate section on such changes of vowels in the loan words has been incorporated.

The Third Chapter covers Morphology. The declinable classes viz, Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs are treated as usual. The Nouns take the markers of Genders, Numbers and Cases. In case of Genders, the classification is based on a semantic basis not strictly according to the maleness and femaleness but on the division of the nouns into the three classes viz, human, nonhuman and inanimate. The human and non-human nouns are in the three genders viz, masculine, feminine and common. The inanimate nouns are in the neuter gender.

The category of Number is another feature of the nouns. Plural marker occurs with the nouns. Such marker is optional provided it is followed by the numerals. But the emphatic replative plural markers occur even if they are followed by the numerals.

Traditionally accepted case system includes eight cases. The usages and areas of meanings of each case have been shown in detail.

Manipuri pronouns do not show genders. They have different forms in the plural taking the emphatic replative plural

## ( IV )

marker. The case markers are as in the case of the nouns.

Verbs show three tenses and some tense forms. All the tenses and some tense forms are expressed in the four aspects with the help of the markers of the tenses/tense forms, the aspects and the verbal forms. One of the two groups of Manipuri verbs is the stative verbs or the adjectives. Stative verbs are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms.

Study of the above three declinable groups forms the main part of the Chapter on Morphology,

Qualifying items as the genitive nouns and pronouns and the infinitives have been treated under QUALIFIERS.

Adverbs and relational words belong to the closed classes. Some primary adverbs are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. Most of the adverbs are derived from the primary, nominal and pronominal stems by adding to such stems the markers of the instrumental and locative.

Relational words are adverbs. They are monosyllabic forms. They are prefixed, infixed or suffixed to the conjugated verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

Conjunctions are a closed class. Some conjunctions are monosyllabic forms. Most of the conjunctions are derived from the primary, nominal and pronominal stems by adding to such stems case markers and relational words.

The Fourth Chapter deals with SYNTAX. Compound nouns, compound verbs and verbal compounds have been studied, but this is only a limited attempt. Idiomatic uses of nouns and verbs are so large that they cannot be covered in a grammar.

Honorific persons, negation, interrogation and causation of the verbs have been dealt with.

The Chapter on Syntax also shows the main types of sentences—types of simple, complex and compound sentences. Generative possibility in each has been studied. Proceeding from the study of the PHRASES, the study is extended to the CLAUSES and SENTENCES. This will enable the reader to fill in the gaps in the latter parts using the structures shown earlier. Proper pre-references are given as aid.

CONCORD is not an important feature as the verbs and qualifiers do not express gender, number and person and the honorific persons of the verbs is also optional. Thus CONCORD forms the last segment of the Chapter on Syntax. The different types and contents of concord have been examined in detail.

Thanks are due to Mr. Krotchvil, Dr. Y. R. Chao and Shri S. N. Ganesan whose works have been of valuable help in preparing this book.

Shri Ch. Manihar Singh, Senior Fellow, Department of Manipuri Language and Literature, Manipur University and Shri S. P. Bhattacharjee, Head of Department of Geography, Manipur College have kindly given the author valuable help in examining the proofs of the present work. Thanks are due to Shri Singh and Shri Bhattacharjee.

Thanks are due to be given to Shri R.K. Sanayaima Singh, Proprietor, R.K. Book Agency, Paona Bazar, Imphal for making special arrangement for printing of the work.

It is hoped that the work will be of help in undertaking Manipuri and teaching it in a scientific way.

*Imphal,* }

Nand Lal Sharma

# CONTENTS

## PREFACE

Abbreviations, Notes and Corrections

Introduction

MANIPURI GRAMMAR 1—406

## 1 PHONOLOGY 1—123

### 1.1 PHONEMES

1.1.1.1 Consonants —1

1.1.2 Vowels

1.1.2.1 Simple Vowels ( Monophthongs ) —2

1.1.2.2 Diphthongs ( Complex Vowels ) —2

1.1.3 Tones .

1.1.3.1 High and Falling Tones —2

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF PHONEMES

1.2.1 Consonants —2

1.2.2 Vowels

1.2.2.1 Simple Vowels ( Monophthongs ) —5

1.2.2.2 Diphthongs ( Complex Vowels ) —6

### 1.3 DESCRIPTION OF TONES

1.3.1 High Tone —

1.3.1.1 High Tone —7

1.3.1.2 High Tone in Syllables ending with  
Unaspirated Voiceless Stops —8

1.3.1.3 Modification of High Tone —8

1.3.1.4 High Tone in Loan Words

1.3.1.4.1 High Tone in Monosyllabic Loan Words. —9

1.3.1.4.2 High Tone in Compound Loan Words —9

1.3.2 Atonic Syllables

1.3.2.1 Atonic Syllables —10

1.3.2.2 Atonic Syllables and High Tone —11

1.3.3 Falling Tone

## VII

|                                      |  |     |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----|
| 1,3,3.1                              | Falling Tone   | —11 |
| 1,3,3.2                              | Falling Tone in Syllables ending with<br>Vowels and Nasals             | —12 |
| 1,3,3.3                              | Modification of Falling Tone   | —12 |
| 1,3,3.4                              | Atonic Syllables and Syllables with<br>Falling Tone                    | —14 |
| 1,3,3.5                              | Falling Tone in Monosyllabic<br>Loan Words                             | —14 |
| 1,3,3.6                              | Falling Tone and High Tone in<br>Compound Words                        |     |
| 1,3,3.6.1                            | Falling Tone followed High Tone  | —15 |
| 1,3,3.6.2                            | High Tone followed by Falling Tone                                     | —16 |
| 1,3,3.7.1                            | Opposition between two Tones in<br>Monosyllabic Words                  | —17 |
| 1,3,3.7.2                            | Opposition between Two Tones in<br>Final Syllables of Compound Words   | —18 |
| 1,3,3.7.3                            | Opposition between Two Tones in<br>Initial Syllables of Compound Words | —19 |
| 1,3,3.8.0                            | Influence of Stress on Falling Tone<br>and High Tone                   | —21 |
| 1.4                                  | Consonant Clusters   | —22 |
| 2 MORPHOPHONEMICS 30—128             |  |     |
| 2.1 JUNCTURAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES |  |     |
| 2.1.1                                | -o   |     |
| 2'1.1(1-20)                          | Changes in-o   | —30 |
| 2.1.2                                | -i   |     |
| 2.1.2(1-9)                           | Changes in-i   | —32 |
| 2.1.3                                | -u   |     |
| 2.1.3(1-3)                           | Change in-u  | —35 |
| 2.1.4                                | -o   |     |
| 2.1.4 (1-7)                          | Changes in-o   | —36 |
| 2.2 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES  |  |     |
| 2'2.1                                | -o   |     |
| 2.2,1(1-10)                          | Changes in-o   | —39 |
| 2,2.2                                | -a   |     |

# VIII

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| 2.2.2 (1-11) Changes in-a                                      | - 43  |
| 2.2.3 -i   |       |
| 2.2.3,1 Changes in-i   | - 47  |
| 2.2.4 -u   |       |
| 2.2,4,1 Changes in-u   | - 53  |
| 2.2.5 -e   |       |
| 2.2.5.1 Changes in-e   | - 57  |
| 2.2.6 -o   |       |
| 2.2,6,1 Changes in-o   | - 61  |
| 2.2.7 -i   |       |
| 2.2.7.1 Changes in-i   | - 65  |
| 2,2,1 -u   |       |
| 2.2.8.1 Changes in-u   | - 68  |
| 2,2,9 -ai  |       |
| 2.2.9.1 Changes in -ai   | - 71  |
| 2.2.10 -ao   |       |
| 2.2,10.1 Changes in -ao  | - 75  |
| 2.2.11 -oi   |       |
| 2.2.11.1 Changes in-oi   | - 76  |
| 2.2.12 -ui   |       |
| 2.2.12.1 Changes in-ui   |       |
| 2.3 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS              | - 80  |
| 2,4 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN CONSONANTS                       |       |
| 2.4.0 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops                              |       |
| 2.4.1 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops in Syllable Initial Position | - 90  |
| 2.4.2 Unaspirated Voiceless Stops in Syllable Final Position   | - 95  |
| 2.4.3 Aspirated Voiceless Stops                                | - 100 |
| 2.4.4 -c   | - 106 |
| 2.4.5 -s   | - 108 |
| 2.4.6 -h   | - 109 |
| 2.4.7 -l   | - 110 |
| 2.4.8 -r   | - 112 |

## IX

|                      |  |      |
|----------------------|--|------|
| 2.4.9                | -w   | —113 |
| 2.4.10               | -y   | —114 |
| 2.4.11               | Nasals in Syllable Initial position                | —114 |
| 2.4.12               | Nasals in Syllable Final Position                  | —116 |
| 2.5                  | MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS IN LOAN WORDS | —122 |
| 3 MORPHOLOGY 129-240 |  |      |
| 3.0                  | WORDS ( Parts of Speeches )                        | —129 |
| 3.1                  | NOUNS  | —129 |
| 3.1.1                | Gender   | —129 |
| 3.1.1.1              | Male and Female Denoters of Human Nouns            | —130 |
| 3.1.1.2              | Male and Female Denoters of Non-human Nouns        | —135 |
| 3.1.1.3              | Inanimate Nouns in Neuter Gender                   | —136 |
| 3.1.2                | Number   | —137 |
| 3.1.2.1              | Nouns in Singular                                  | —137 |
| 3.1.2.2              | Plural Markers                                     | —137 |
| 3.1.2.2.1            | Nouns in Plural                                    | —137 |
| 3.1.2.2.1.2          | Nouns in Emphatic Plural                           | —141 |
| 3.1.2.2.2            | Nouns in Epicene Plural                            | —142 |
| 3.1.2.2.2.1          | Nouns in Emphatic Epicene Plural                   | —144 |
| 3.1.3                | Case   | —144 |
| 3.1.3.1              | Nominative, Agentive                               | —146 |
| 3.1.3.2              | Accusative   | —149 |
| 3.1.3.3              | Instrumental, Mediative, Comitative                | —150 |
| 3.1.4                | Locative   | —152 |
| 3.1.3.5              | Genitive (Possessive and Qualificatory)            | —152 |
| 3.1.3.6              | Dative (Possessive, Intensive, Purposive)          | —154 |
| 3.2.3.7              | Ablative (Separative, Comporative)                 | —156 |
| 3.1.3.8              | Vocative   | —158 |
| 3.1.3.9              | Emphatic Case Markers                              |      |
| 3.1.3.9.1            | Emphatic Replative Case Markers                    | —158 |
| 3.1.3.9.2            | Emphatic Additive Replative Case Markers           | —159 |

# X

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>3 2 PRONOUNS</b>   | <b>—165</b> |
| 3.2.1 Personal Pronouns                                       | —165        |
| 3.2.1.1 Personal Pronouns in Singular                         | —165        |
| 3.2.1.1.1 Emphatic Forms of Personal<br>Pronouns in Singular  | —166        |
| 3.2.1.1.2 Honorific Forms of Personal Pronouns<br>in Singular | —167        |
| 3.2.1.2 Personal Pronouns in Plural                           | —167        |
| 3.2.1.2.1 Emphatic Plural Forms<br>of Personal Pronouns       | —168        |
| 3.2.1.2.2 Honorific Plural Forms of Personal<br>Pronouns      | —168        |
| 3 2.1.8.3 Declension of Personal<br>Pronouns in Plural        | —169        |
| 3.2.1.2.4 Personal Pronouns in<br>Plural with sing            | —169        |
| 3.2.1.3 Denotion of Genders                                   | —169        |
| 3.2.1.4 Personal Pronouns and<br>their Areas of Meanings      | —170        |
| 3.2.1.5 Personal Possessive Prefixes                          | —171        |
| 3.2.2 Reflexive Pronouns                                      | —173        |
| 3.2.3 Reciprocal Pronouns                                     | —174        |
| 3.3.4 Demonstrative Pronouns                                  | —175        |
| 3.2.5 Determinative Pronouns                                  | —178        |
| 3.2.6 Separative Pronouns                                     | —179        |
| 3.2.7 Distributive Pronouns                                   | —180        |
| 3.2.8 Interrogative Pronouns                                  | —180        |
| 3.2.2 Indefinite Pronouns                                     | —181        |
| <b>3,3 VERBS</b>  | <b>—183</b> |
| 3.3.1.1.1 Two Groups of Verbs                                 | —183        |
| 3.3.1.1.2 Four Classes of Verbs                               | —133        |
| 3.3.1.1.3 Verbal Base   | —184        |
| 3.3.1.2.1 Gender, Number and<br>Person of Verbs               | —184        |
| 3.3.2 Tenses  | —185        |



# XI

|           |  |      |
|-----------|--|------|
| 3.3.2.1.1 | Markers of Four Aspects and Form for Verbs in Present and Past Tenses  | —185 |
| 3.3.2.2.1 | Present Tense  | —185 |
| 3.3.2.2.2 | Segmental Similarity of Verbs in two Aspects of Present Tense          | —186 |
| 3.3.2.3 1 | Past Tense   | —187 |
| 3.3.2.3.2 | Markers common to Present and Past Tenses                              | —188 |
| 3.3'2 4   | Future Tense   | —188 |
| 3.2.2.4.1 | Markers of Four Aspects and Form for Verbs in Future Tense             | —188 |
| 3.3.2.4.2 | Four Aspects of Future Tense   | —189 |
| 3.3 2.4.3 | Kodo'u, marker of Future Tense in Verbs of Subordinate Clauses         | —190 |
| 3.3.3     | Tense Forms  | —190 |
| 3.3.3.1   | Tense Forms expressed with the help of Markers of Aspects              | —190 |
| 3.3 3 2   | Tense Forms expressed with the help of Auxilliary Verbs                | —195 |
| 3 3.3.3   | Tense Forms expressed with the help of Kodo'u                          | —197 |
| 3.3.3.4   | Tense Forms expressed in Adverb Clauses                                | —200 |
| 3 3 é     | Stative Verbs in Tenses and Tense Forms                                | —202 |
| 3 3.4:2   | Change of Sentences in Active Voice into the Sentences in PassiveVoice | —203 |
| 3.4       | QUALIFIERS   | —203 |
| 3 4.1     | Verbal Qualifiers  | —203 |
| 3.4.2     | Pronominal Adjective   | —209 |

## XII

|           |   |       |
|-----------|---|-------|
| 3.4,3     | Numerals  | - 210 |
| 3.4.3.1   | Cardinal Numerals   | -210  |
| 3.4.3.2   | Ordinal Numerals  | -213  |
| 3.4.3.3   | Multiplicative Numerals   | -213  |
| 3.4.3.4   | Distributive Numerals   | -213  |
| 3.4.4     | Qualificatory Genitive  | -213  |
| 3.5       | ADVERBS   | - 214 |
| 3.5.1     | Primary Adverbs   | -214  |
| 3.5.1.1   | Primary Adverbs without<br>any Markers                          | -214  |
| 3.5.1.2   | Primary Adverbs taking no<br>forms and Indefinite/Perfect Forms | -215  |
| 3.5.1.3   | Primary Adverbs used as<br>Emphasisers                          | - 219 |
| 3.5.2     | Derived Adverbs   | -220  |
| 3.5.2.1   | Derived Adverbs with<br>Instrumental Marker                     | -220  |
| 3.5.2.2   | Derived Adverbs with<br>Locative Marker                         | -222  |
| 3.5.3     | RELATIONAL WORDS  | -224  |
| 3.5.3.1   | Relational Words suffixed<br>to Nouns and Numerals              | -224  |
| 3.5.3.2   | Relational Words<br>added to Verbs                              | -225  |
| 3.5.3.2.1 | Relational Words prefixed to Verbs                              | -225  |
| 3.5.3.2.2 | Relational Words infixed<br>to Verbs                            | -225  |
| 3.5.3.2.3 | Relational Words suffixed<br>to Verbs                           | - 226 |
| 3.5.4     | Synonymous Adverbs and<br>Relational Words                      | -227  |
| 3.6       | CONJUNCTIONS  | - 238 |
| 3.6.1     | Primary Conjunctions  | 238   |
| 3.6.      | Derived Conjunctions  | - 239 |

# XIII

## 4 SYNTAX 241—381

|             |  |        |
|-------------|--|--------|
| 4.1.1       | Nominal Phrase   | -- 241 |
| 4.1.1.1     | Noun or Noun Equivalent  | — 241  |
| 4.1.1.2     | Noun Classes   | — 241  |
| 4.1.1.2.1   | Subsyllabic Nouns  | — 242  |
| 4.1.1.2.2   | Monosyllabic Nouns   | — 242  |
| 4.1.1.2.3   | Suffixed Nouns   | — 243  |
| 4.1.2.2.4   | Compound Nouns   | — 243  |
| 4.1.1.2.4.1 | Simple Compound Nouns  | — 243  |
| 4.1.1.2.4.2 | Complex Compound Nouns   | — 245  |
| 4.1.1.2.5   | Verbal Nouns   | — 248  |
| 4.1.1.3     | Coordinated Nouns  | — 252  |
| 4.1.1.3.1   | Coordination of Nouns with<br>out Case Markers                         | — 252  |
| 4.1.1.3.2   | Coordination of Nouns with<br>Case Markers                             | — 252  |
| 4.1.1.4     | Nouns with Adjuncts  | — 253  |
| 4.1.2       | Verbal Phrase  | 256    |
| 4.1.2.1.1   | Subsyllabic Verbs  | — 256  |
| 4.1.2.1.2   | Monosyllabic Verbs   | — 257  |
| 4.1.2.1.3   | Infixd Verbs   | — 258  |
| 4.1.2.1.4   | Compound Verbs   | — 259  |
| 4.1.2.1.4.1 | Simple Compound Verbs  | — 259  |
| 4.1.2.1.4.2 | Complex Compound Verbs   | — 260  |
| 4.1.2.1.4.3 | Verbal Compounds   | — 263  |
| 4.1.2.4     | Persons, Negation and<br>Interrogation of Verbs                        | — 264  |
| 4.1.2.2.1   | Verbs in Tenses and Tense<br>Forms expressing Persons, Negation etc.   | — 264  |
| 4.1.2.2.2   | Auxiliary Verbs in Tense<br>Forms expressing Persons,<br>Negation etc. | — 275  |
| 4.1.2.2.3   | Honorific Persons of Verbs   | — 283  |
| 4.1.2.2.4   | Causation of Verbs   | — 285  |
| 4.1.2.2.5   | Stative Verbs expressing<br>Persons, Negation etc.                     | — 289  |

## **XIV**

|           |   |       |
|-----------|---|-------|
| 4.1.2.6.1 | Auxiliary Verbs   | ~ 292 |
| 4.1.2.6.2 | Emphatic Verbs  | —301  |
| 4.1.2.6.2 | Coordination of Verbs   | —311  |
| 4.1.2.6.4 | Derivatives   | —311  |
| 4.2       | SENTENCE  | —320  |
| 4.2.1     | Simple Sentence   | —320  |
| 4.2.1.1   | Deletion of Subject   | —320  |
| 4.2.1.2   | Adjuncts with N and V   | —320  |
| 4.2.1.3   | Sentences with Complements  | —320  |
| 4.2.1.3.1 | Sentences with Subjective<br>Complements                                      | —321  |
| 4.2.1.3.2 | Sentences with Direct Objects   | —322  |
| 4.2.1.3.3 | Sentences with Indirect<br>and Direct Objects                                 | —323  |
| 4.2.1.3.4 | Sentences with Direct Objects<br>and Objective Complements                    | —323  |
| 4.2.1.4   | Position of Adverbs in<br>Simple Sentences                                    | —324  |
| 4.2.2     | Complex Sentence  | —325  |
| 4.2.2.1   | Adjective Clause  | —325  |
| 4.2.2.2   | Relative Clause   | —336  |
| 4.2.2.3   | Adverb Clause   | —327  |
| 4.2.3     | Compound Sentence   | —366  |
| 4.3       | CONCORD   | —371  |
| 4.3.1     | Verb-Noun Concord in<br>Plural  | —371  |
| 4.3.2     | Verb-Personal Pronoun<br>Concord  | —371  |
| 4.3.3     | Presence/Absence of Concord<br>between Verbs of Main and<br>Dependent Clauses | —379  |
| 5         | LEXIS   | —381  |
| 5.1       | Core Vocabulary   | —388  |
| 5.2       | Phonological forms<br>of Loan Words   | —388  |

## XV

|       |   |      |
|-------|---|------|
| 5.2.1 | Loan Words of NIA Origin                            | -388 |
| 5.2.2 | Loan Words of Arabic<br>and Persian Origin          | -388 |
| 6     | GRAPHOLOGY  | -389 |
| 6.1   | Antiquity of Manipuri Script                        | -388 |
| 6.2   | Replacement of Manipuri<br>Script by Bengali Script | -392 |
| 6.3   | Vowels and Consonants in<br>Manipuri Script         | -392 |
| 6.4   | Wak'oklón System                                    | -392 |

## **ABBREVIATIONS**

|    |   |                |
|----|---|----------------|
| EM | — | Early Manipuri |
| N  | — | Noun           |
| V  | — | Verb           |

## **SIGNS AND SYMBOLS**

|     |   |                             |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|
| ... | — | Alternate forms             |
| +   | — | Added to                    |
| >   | — | Gives, yeilds or results in |
| <   | — | Got or derived form         |

## **CORRECTIONS**

Inspite of the utmost care taken, a few mistakes have remained unnoticed. Most of them are self evident or clear from the immediate description or environment. Thus only a selective correction list is given.

| <b>'age No.</b> | <b>Line No.</b> | <b>Incorrect</b> | <b>Correct</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 5               | 5               | stop             | nasal          |
| 15              | 28              | téngk`o          | téngk`ot       |
| 131             | 13              | ngú              | ngó'u          |
| do              | 18              | from             | form           |
| 161             | 13              | Plural           | Case           |
| 169             | 22              | Content          | context        |

# O. Introduction

## 010 Early Manipuri Literature—A Sketch

Manipuri was the vehicle of one of the most developed and advanced literatures of India. Antiquity of early Manipuri literature is not fully established. However, development of Manipuri prose in 600 A.D. is attested by the numismatic evidences.

Most of the early Manipuri texts are in the prose. It shows the development of prose writings at an early period of the Manipuri literature. Some of the early texts are in poetry.

There was a tradition which required that no writers should give their names and other relevant particulars in their works. Such tradition was preserved and protected by the omäibo l'ois'ong, the Royal Department in the charge of the State Archive and Ecclesiastical Affairs. The tradition was respected and followed by poets, scholars and writers. Thus most of the early Manipuri texts contain no names and other relevant particulars of the authors. This creates a very difficult problem for dating such texts. However, on the basis of genre, style and content of such texts, some of these texts can be dated.

About 1200 Manipuri manuscript texts have so far been discovered. Most of such texts are noticed in "A Catalogue of the Early Manipuri Manuscript Texts". Such texts belong to the period from 600 AD to 1800 AD. They may broadly be classified into the following heads:—

- a) Literature
- b) History
- c) Polity

## XVIII

d) Socio-economic History

e) Cultural History

f) General Literature

Most of the early texts coming under the category of general literature have already been published. Some of such texts are shown below:—

a) Chàinorón

b) Chóthé Thàngmài Pàkh'ongbo

c) Khóngzóm Nùbí Nónggàrón

d) Náothingkhóng Pho'mbán kàbo

e) Númít Kàppa

f) Pánthóibí Kh'onggún

g) Póiro'itón Khúnth'okpo

h) Th'ouwánthàbo Hiràn

English translation of Náothingkhóng Pho'mbán kàbo, the coronation of king Náothingkhóng was published by the Manipur University in 1983.

### (II) History

One of the important features of the early Manipuri literature is the development of historical writings at an early date. Such historical writings are in the prose. Some of these texts may be classified into the following groups:—

a) Those on the general History of Manipur

b) Those on the accounts and achievements of the particular kings

c) Those on the clan kingdoms

Ch'óitháron kumbábo is the Royal Chronicle of Manipur. It records the activities, achievements and events of the country. Entries in such chronicle was made in the Manipuri prose and the Manipuri script under the supervision of the omáibo l'ois'ong, the Royal Department in charge of State Archive and Ecclesiastical Affairs.



The Royal Chronicle starts with the coronation of king Nóngdǎ láirén Pàkh'óngbo in 33 A.D. and concludes with the accounts of the reign of king Bodh Chandra ( 1945-1956 ). Authenticity of the details in such chronicle is confirmed by the relevant accounts in the two subsidiary chronicles viz., Níngtho'urón Ló'mbùbo and Chàdo Láinúi. Particulars other than those in the Royal Chronicle are recorded in the two subsidiary chronicles. The Royal Chronicle – “Ch'èitháron kumbábo” was published by the Manipuri Sahitya Parishad in 1967. The two subsidiary chronicles had also been published.

The early texts recording the reign and activities of particular Manipuri kings are fairly large in number. Some of such texts shown below:—

- a) Náothingkhong Pho'mbán Kábo, coronation of king Náothingkhong
- b) Tókhen Ngó'mbo, Conquerer of Takhen ( Tripura)
- c) Kháhi Ngó'mbo, Conquerer of Khahi ( Khasi )
- d) cwà Ng'ombo, Conquerer of Awa ( Burma )

The early texts giving the accounts of the clan kingdoms in the Manipur Valley also confirm the authenticity of the details in the Royal Chronicle. Some of the clan chronicles are khùmó'n káng'oirón ( the khùmó'n clan chronicle) Móiráng Níngtho'urón Ló'mbùbo ( the Moirang clan chronicle), ongómón ( the Angom clan chronicle) etc.

### (III) Polity

There are also texts dealing with the different aspects of state polity. Some of such texts are L'oiyúmbo sínén (Royal Edict of king Loiyumbo), pho'mlón ( Accounts of the post categories under the Royal Departments), pho'mbánlón (Accounts of the rituals and rules for Royal Coronation ) etc.

### (IV) Socio-Economic History

There are early Manipuri texts recording different aspects of the socio-economic history of Manipur. Some of such texts are shown below:—

| Texts                 | Subjects                              |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) Bámón khúnth oklón | migration of the Brahmins             |
| b) Nóngcúp Hár om     | migration of the people from the West |
| c) Nóngp'ok Háro'm    | migration of the people from the east |
| d) Pèndinnobo         | marriage rules and practices          |
| e) yumdábo Pù'á       | family genealogy                      |

There are about 350 yumdabo texts on the different families under the seven Manipuri clans

#### (V) Cultural History

There are also early texts dealing with the different aspects of the cultural history of Manipur. Some of such texts are shown below; -

| Texts   | Subjects                                     |
|---|--|
| a) Nóngiábo Láihul<br>Pàkh'ongbo Náoyóm<br>Sàk'ok Lo'mlén<br>Sonàmoh'i Láitú! | early faith and religious practices          |
| b) Nónglón Lángbùm<br>Súbiká<br>Thowànm'icàk Khénzo'nglón                     | astronomy and astrology                      |
| c) Kàngz'oirón  | games, sports, physical culture etc          |
| d) Thàngc'ot<br>Thànglón<br>Thénggo'urón                                      | martial arts viz, archery sword fencing etc. |
| e) Chàinorón  | dual between rival warriors                  |
| f) Lànggón c'inggo'oirón<br>Nóngmáiz'ing c'inggo'oirón                        | topography, flora, fauna etc.                |

#### 0.2.0 Modern Manipuri - A sketch

Modern Manipuri is used as follows:

- a) Mother Tongue of 67 per cent of the population of Manipur
- b) Official Language of Manipur
- c) Language of the Courts in Manipur
- d) Major Indian Language recognised by the Sahitya Akademy of India
- e) Medium of broadcast of the AIR programmes
- f) Medium of Instruction and Examination from Primary to Post-graduate levels

### (1) Mother Tongue

Manipuri is the mother tongue of 67 percent of the total population of Manipur. The number of the speakers of Manipuri is over 10,00,000 as per Census Report of India.

Number of the speakers of Manipuri in Assam and Tripura State are 97,000 and 40,000 respectively. There are also the speakers of Manipuri in Nabadwip areas of West Bengal and also in Brindaban and Radhakunda areas of Uttar Pradesh.

There are also speakers of Manipuri in Burma and Bangladesh. The number of the speakers of Manipuri in the two countries are 240,000 and 50,000 respectively.

### (2) Official Language

Manipuri had been the official language of Manipur during the period from 600 A.D. to 1890 A.D. It was thus used in such period in the transaction of the following business of the state:—

- a) Inscribing legends on the coins
- b) Making prose entries in the copper plate grants, stone edicts, royal chronicles, records, documents etc.

Some of the formal correspondences of Manipur kings with the British Government of India were written in Manipuri. One of such correspondences is the letter from King Chandra Kirti to the British Government congratulating the latter on

## 2—Manipuri Grammar

### 1.1.2 VOWELS

#### 1.1.2.1 Simple vowels (monophthongs)

Manipuri has the following simple vowels (monophthongs):

|   |   |
|---|---|
| i | u |
| e | o |
| ɔ |   |
| a |   |

#### 1.1.2.2 Diphthongs (Complex Vowels)

Manipuri has the following diphthongs (complex vowels) t—

ɔi,      ai,      ui,      oi  
ao  
ou

### 1.1.3 TONES

#### 1.1.3.1 High and falling tones

Vowels (monophthongs and diphthongs) carry two tones viz., hightone and the falling tone. High tone will be marked ' over the vowels and falling tone will be marked ˘ over the vowels.

## 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF PHONEMES

1.2 Manipuri phonemes will be illustrated with the help of the monosyllabic and disyllabic words consisting of the vowels (monophthongs and diphthongs) in the high tone. Thus such vowels in these words will be marked with ' (the marker of high tone).

### 1.2.1 CONSONANTS

#### 1.2.1.1 Consonants

#### STOPS

/p/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiceless stop

po'i—spleen ; po'u—pole ; pa'i—a small bag ; pa'o—news ;  
pa'r, EM—rifle ; pi'—tear ; pe'—umbrella ; pe'ng—intelligence ;  
po'—pawn ; po'n—cage ; pu', EM—pair ; pu'm, EM—needle ;  
pu'n—a kind of pitcher.

/ph/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiceless stop

Pho'i—thigh : pho'u—paddy ; pho'm—post : phai, EM—valley ; pha'n stool ; phi—cloth.

/b/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced stop

ba'gi'—a kind of disease ; bo'ro'i—plum : ha'iba'r - a kind of ear ring ; lai'ba'r, EM—ambassador ; he'mbo, EM—hillman ; mo'ngbo, EM—home ; to'nbo, EM—man.

/bh/ Bilabial, aspirated, voiced stop

bha'b—idea ; bha'a'—fare ; bhu'ga'ti' typhoid fever ; bha'lo'—bravo , ph'bh'o'm—condition.

/t/ Denti—alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless stop

to'm—valley ; ta'—spar ; ta'n, EM—an ornament ; ta'ng—limb ; te'm—a weaving implement ; te'n—bow ; tu'—fur ; tu'm—pin ; to'ng—flesh.

/th/ Denti-alveolar, aspirated voiceless stop

tho'u—duty ; tha'—month, moon tha'o oil : tha'n EM—coffin ; the'n, EM—plateau ; thum—salt.

/d/ Denti—alveolar, unaspirated voiced stop

da'na'—cooked food for cattle ; da'ri'—varandah ; du'ho'n—a person in charge of water supply for a religious function ; do'na'—a water vessel ; tho'uda'—duty ; tho'udu', EM—marble.

/dh/ Denti—alveolar, aspirated voiced stop

dha'tu'—a kind of disease ; dho'ri'—string used in playing top ; dhu'me'n, EM—a performance by the drummers ; la'idhi'—doll ; ta'dho'n—elder brother,

/k/ Velar, unaspirated, voiceless stop

ka' room ; ka'i, EM—coffin : ki'n—fist ; ko'i—beard ; ko'm—pit ; ku'm—year ; ku'n—twenty : k'ong, EM—dry land.

/kh/ Velar aspirated, voiceless stop

kho'u—throat ; kha'o—bag , kha'ng—pan ; khe'—a kind of dye : khe'n, EM—time ; kho'm—udder ; kho'n—voice ; khu'n—village ; khu'ng—top ; khwa, EM—monkey.

#### 4—Manipuri Grammar

##### /g/ Velar, unaspirated, voiced stop

gi'ho'm—pine apple ; ge'ho'ri'—a kind of fruit ; gu'nza'—front tug of dhoti ; gu'ru'ng—upturn of cart ; gu'mbhi'r—crocodile.

##### /gb/ Velar, aspirated, voiced stop

ghu'mti'—a canopy on the bullock cart ; ghu'ti'—a kind of kite ; gho'r—enthusiasm ; mosi'nggha'—bite ; si'nggha'ro'i—a kind of flower ; zi'nggho'—corrugated iron sheet.

#### AFFRICATE

##### /c/ Palato—alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless affricate

Ca'i, Em—summon ; ca'ng—quantity ; ca'r, EM—door ; ci'—a kind of disease ; co'm—cork ; cu'—sugarcane ; cu'm—lizard.

#### FRICATIVES

##### /s/ Alveolar, unaspirated, voiceless fricative

so'u—obstacle ; so'n—bull, cow ; sa'i—cave ; sa'n, EM—body ; si'—even number ; si'n—profession ; se'n—money ; so'—key.

##### /z/ Alveolar, aspirated, voiced fricative

zo'ng—rust ; za'm—black berry ; zo'i—victory ; zi'nggho'—corrugated iron sheet ; zu'ri—drainage ; zu'wa'n—yoke

##### /zh/ Alveolar, aspirated, voiced fricative, occurs with the loan words.

zha'n—a kind of cymbal ; zhu'lo'n—a Hindu festival.

##### /h/ Glottal, voiceless fricative

ho'n—maggot ; ho'ng—machine ; ha'—yam ; ha'r—maure ; hi'—boat ; hu'ng—hand cuff ; ho, EM—blood ; ho'p—ani-seed.

#### NASALS

##### /m/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced nasal

mo'u—married woman ; mar, EM—foot print ; mi'ng—name ;

me'n,EM -capital ; mo'n-pillow ; cu'm-lizard ; ku'm-year ;  
tu'm-pin ; thu'm-salt

/n/ Alveolar, unaspirated voiced stop

na'ear ; na'i-pus : na'o,EM - canoe ; no'ng-rain ; ho'n-  
maggot ; kho'n-a weighing implement ; lo'n-wealth ; so'n-bull,  
cow.

/ng/ Velar, unaspirated, voiced nasal

ngc'i-neck : ngo'u-palate ; nga'i-relatives ; ca'ng-quantity ;  
kha'ng-bell ; la'ng-net ; pa'ng-sheet of paper ; ta'ng-limb,

*Lateral*

/l/ Alveolar, unaspirated voiced lateral

lo'i-flower, tongue ; lo'n-wealth ; lo'ng-yarn ; la'i-god ; la'n-  
battle ; la'ng net ; li'n snake ; le'n hail ; lu'm-pendulum,

*Flap*

/r/ Post alveolar, unaspirated, voiced flap

ra'si' beauty ; ru'i a kind of shawl ; ca'r,EM-door ; ha'r-  
mannure ; mar,EM - foot print ; pa'r,EM -rifle ; ci'na'r-melon ;  
ha'iba'r-a kind of ear ring ; la'iba'r,EM -ambassador ; no'ng-  
da'r-mica,

## SEMI VOWELS

/w/ Bilabial, unaspirated, voiced semi-vowel

wa'ng-a kind of tree ; wa'ngdo'i,EM - granery ; wa'ngle'n,  
EM-curry ; owa'ng-north ; howai-pulse ; ke'wa'-a kind of tree ;  
lo'wa'i-forehead ; tho'wa'n-name of a Manipuri month,

/y/ Palatal, unaspirated, voiced semi-vowel

ya'-tooth ; ya'i,EM -fire ; ya'o-sheep ; yu'-wine ; yu'ng-  
urine ; ye'n-cock, hen ; yo'ng-monkey ; mo'ya'm-many ; mo-  
ya'n mixture ; mo'ye'ng-quantity.

## 1.2.2 VOWELS

### 1.2.2.1 Simple vowels (monophthongs)

/i/ High, front, unrounded vowel

ci'-a kind of disease ; hi' boat ; pi'-tear ; phi'-cloth ; si'-  
even number ; ki'n-fist ; li'n-snake ; si'n-profession.

## 6—Manipuri Grammar

/e/ Mid, front, unrounded vowel

khe'-a kind of dye ; pe'-a kind of umbrella ; khe'n,EM-time ; le'n-ha'il ; men,EM-capital ; se'n-money ; then,EM-plateau ; le'ng-shoulder ; pe'ng-intelligence.

/a/ Low, central, unrounded vowel

ha'-yam ; ka'-room ; na'-ear ; pa'-eye lash ; ta' spear ; tha'-moon, month ; ya'-tooth ; ca'ng-quantity ; kha'ng-bell ; la'ng-net ; pa'ng sheet of paper ; ta'ng limb.

/ɔ/ Mid; central, unrounded vowel

ho'n-maggot ; kho'n-weighing implement ; lo'n wealth ; po'n bund ; so'n-bull, cow ; ko'm cornice ; lo'm-area ; no'm back ; pho'm-post ; to'm-valley.

/o/ Mid, back, rounded vowel

co'm-cork ; ko'm pit ; kho'm-udder ; kho'n-voice ; mo'n-pillow ; po'n-cage ; yo'n,EM-beauty ; ko'ng,EM-dry land ; no'ng-rain ; to'ng flesh ; yo'ng-monkey.

/u/ high, back, rounded vowel

cu'-sugarcane ; pu',EM-pair ; tu'-fur ; u'-tree ; yu'-wine ; cu'm-lizard ; ku'm-year ; pu'm,EM-needle ; tu'm-pin ; thu'm-salt ; hu'ng-handcuff ; khu'ng-top.

### 1.2.2.2 DIPHTHONGS (Complex Vowels)

The six diphthongs are not combinations of individual simple vowels. They are complex vowels. They have slightly greater duration than the simple vowels (monophthong). But they are much shorter than the combination of the duration of their components occurring as simple vowels.—*i* forms the final component of the four diphthongs viz., *ɔi*,—*ai*,—*oi*, and *ui*. The two diphthongs viz.,—*ao* and —*ou* take —*o* and —*u* respectively as the final components. The six diphthongs are illustrated below ;—

/ɔi/

lo'i-flower ; ngo'i-neck ; po'i-spleen ; pho'i-thigh ; so'i,EM-song ; to'i-a kind of pan.



/ai/

ca'i, EM-summôn ; ka'i, EM-coffin ; la'i-god ; na'i-pus ;  
nga'i-relatives ; pa'i-a-small bag ; pha'i,EM -valley ; sa'i-cave ;  
ya'i,EM -fire.

/oi/

ko'i-beard ; kho'i-bee ; lo'i-conquered people ; soi'-filly ;  
yo'i,EM -beauty,

/ui/

hu'i-rivet, whistle ; u'i-a kind of bamboo ; cohui-a kind of  
tree ; la'ihu'i,EM -origin ; pu'idi'ng,EM -thatch.

/ao/

kha'o-bag ; na'o,EM -canoe ; pa'o-news ; ta'o-a kind of  
worm ; tha'o-oil ; ya'o-sheep.

/ɔu/

kho'u-throat ; mo'u-married woman ; ngo'u-palate ; po'u-  
pole ; pho'u-paddy ; so'u-obstacle ; tho'u duty.

## 1.3 TONES

### 1.3.1 HIGH TONE

#### 1.3.1.1 High tone

High tones occurs with the vowels in the monosyllabic and disyllabic words used in illustrating the thirty-six Manipuri phone-mes. Basic features of such tone are described by Kratochvil. He says, "The high tone... has an almost level contour of pitch which is positioned in the upper third of the natural pitch range of the speaker's voice ; the loudness of the respective vowel sound remains the same throughout the whole vowel, and the direction of the syllables with this tones is slightly above average". (Kratochvil, P, 1968, Chinese Language Today, p. 37). Such features of the vowels with the high tone may be seen from the following pairs of segmentally identical monosyllabic words :—

## 8—Manipuri Grammar

|                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| ku'm, EM-year     | ku'm-a kind of dye          |
| kha'ng-bell       | kha'ng-pan                  |
| lo'i-flower       | lo'i-tongue                 |
| le'n,EM -superior | le'n-hail                   |
| no'ng, EM-day     | no'ng-rain                  |
| pho'm-post        | pho'm-be3                   |
| sa'i-eave         | sa'i-side lock of the girls |
| thou', EM-marble  | tho'u-duty                  |
| tha'-moon         | tha'-month                  |
| tha'n, EM-coffin  | tha'n-coil of cloth         |

### 1.3.1.2 *High tone in the monosyllabic words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops*

High tone occurs with the vowels in a few monosyllabic words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops,

co'p-a kind of indoor game ; ku't,EM -name of a post ;  
tha'k-stair.

### 1.3.1.3 *Modification of high tone*

If a syllable with high tone is followed by another syllable with the same tone, such tone of the first syllable is rising in the pitch contour retaining the loudness of the same tone.

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| lo'iha'o-champaka flower | lo'ite'ng-ornament     |
| lo'ika'-flower petal     | lo'iko'n-garden        |
| lo'ipu'n-tie of love     | lo'ipho'm-residence    |
| laibar,EM -ambassador    | lai'za'o-small pox     |
| la'iba'o-gospel          | la'ipho'm-shrine       |
| la'imo'n-chronic disease | la'ito'ng-a basket     |
| la'ina'-disease          | la'ire'n-python        |
| na'co'n-centipede        | na'co'm-nosegay        |
| na'kho'i-settlement      | na'khu'm-cap           |
| na'pu'-yellow            | na'po'm-slop of a hill |
| na'so'n-hint             | na'yi'n-ear ring       |
| na'to'ng-a plant         | na'toi'-proof          |
| u'ho'n-a medicinal herb  | u'ha'm-ordinary wood   |
| u'ko'n-clump             | u'khu'n-hole           |
| u'lu'm-pendulum          | u'ru'm-umbrage         |

u'mo'ng-forest  
u'pu'-box  
u'ra'ng-trunk  
u'ro'ng-pipe

u'mu'-a kind of bamboo  
u'sa'-bough  
u'yi'n-a good quality timber  
u'ro'ng-symbol

### 1.3.1.4 HIGH TONE IN LOAN WORDS

#### 1.3.1.4.1 *High tone in monosyllabic loan words*

High tone accommodates the short and long values of the vowels in the NiA languages. Thus it occurs with the monosyllabic loan words from the NiA languages ending with the vowels and nasals. Such feature of the high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the segmentally identical native and loan words :—

#### *native words*

ko'n-premises  
kho'n-voice  
lo'i-conquered people  
lo'r-generation  
mo'n-pillow  
pa'i-a small bag  
po'n-cage  
sa'n,EM-body  
so'i-filly  
ta'n,EM-an ornament

#### *loan words*

ko'n-machine  
kho'n-a kind of drum  
lo'i-rhythm  
lo'n-loan  
mo'n-mund  
pa'i-a coin  
bo'n-forest  
sa'n-shawl  
so'i-signature  
ta'n-rhyme

High tone also occurs with a few monosyllabic loan words ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops :

da'k-stigma ; pha'k-difference ; ho'p-anisced ; ka'p-boot  
polish ; na'p-measurement.

#### 1.3.1.4.2 *High tone in compound loan words*

High tone occurs with the overwhelming majority of the compound loan words consisting of two syllables ending with the vowels and nasals. Modifications of the high tone in the first syllables of such words are same as those of the same tone shown in para 1.3.1.3 above. These features of high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the native and loan words :—

*native words*

|                              |
|------------------------------|
| ba'gi'-a kind of disease     |
| ca'ga'-income                |
| ca'na',EM-grass              |
| dha'tu'-a kind of disease    |
| khu'di'-obstacle             |
| la'lu',EM-head               |
| li'la',EM-snake              |
| mu'ni'-a kind of worm        |
| pa'la'-singer of samkristana |

*loan words*

|                           |
|---------------------------|
| ba'ki'-loan               |
| ca'ka'-wheel              |
| ca'na-gram                |
| dha'tu'-metal             |
| khu'ti' post              |
| la'lu'-kind of sweet meat |
| li'la-piay                |
| mu'ni'-hermit             |
| pa'ra'-lesson             |

### 1. 3. 2 ATONIC SYLLABLES

#### 1.3.2.1 Atonic syllables

Atonic syllables do not carry high and falling tones. They are thus tonally neutral. Atonic syllables end with  $-ə$ . Such  $-ə$  will not be marked with any diacritical symbol. It is very short. Its loudness is very slight and its pitch contour and distribution of loudness are unpronounced with a uniformly falling tendency. Atonic syllables function as formative affixes.  $-ə$  itself functions as formative affix without carrying the two tones. Some atonic syllables are shown below :—

- $ə$ —(a) primary prefix
- (b) secondary prefix
- $əə$ —(a) marker of honorific first person
- (b) primary prefix
- (c) primary infix
- $lə$ —(a) marker of perfect aspect of the present and past tenses
- (b) primary infix
- $mə$ —(a) primary prefix
- (b) secondary prefix
- $nə$ —(a) marker of nominative
- (b) marker of instrumental
- (c) secondary suffix
- (d) primary suffix
- (e) primary infix

- pɔ*—(a) marker of masculine gender  
 (b) marker of infinitive  
*tɔ*—(a) marker of locative  
 (b) expresses the sense 'only'  
 (c) marker of negative for present and past tenses  
 (d) primary prefix

### 1.3.2.2 Atonic syllables and syllables with high tone

Occurrence of the atonic syllables viz, *mɔ* and *tɔ* with the syllables with the high tone in the compound words is shown below :—

#### (a) *mɔ*, secondary prefix

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>məkha'</i> —south    | <i>məkha'</i> —downwards                |
| <i>məna'</i> —ear       | <i>məna'</i> handle of the bucket       |
| <i>məpa'n</i> —flower   | <i>məpa'n</i> —exterior                 |
| <i>məro'i</i> —argument | <i>məro'i</i> —machine                  |
| <i>məru'</i> —root      | <i>məru'</i> head                       |
| <i>məsa'</i> —bough     | <i>məsa'</i> —wing of the bird          |
| <i>məto'n</i> —top      | <i>məto'n</i> —father's younger brother |

#### (b) *tɔ*—locative

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>ko'ndɔ</i> —to the machine          | <i>ko'ntɔ</i> —only the machine          |
| <i>kho'ndɔ</i> —to the voice           | <i>kho'ntɔ</i> —only the voice           |
| <i>lo'ndɔ</i> —to the conquered people | <i>lo'ntɔ</i> —only the conquered people |

## 1.3.3 FALLING TONE

### 1.3.3.1 Falling tone

Falling tone occurs with the vowels in the overwhelming majority of the syllables ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops. Basic features of such tone are described by Kratochvil. He says: 'The falling tone (marked ` as in *ba*, 'a harrow') has a falling pitch contour starting almost at the top limit of the range and reaching its lower third at the end; the loudness falls sharply towards the end of the vowel, and the duration is far below average' (Kratochvil 1968). Such features of the vowels with the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of the segmentally identical monosyllabic words :—

## 12—Manipuri Grammar

|                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| cu`p-spigot          | cu`p-mode of sinking                |
| li`k-necklace        | li`k-bead                           |
| lo`k-gorge           | lo`k-cough                          |
| no`p-nasal mucus     | no`p-mode of being sticky           |
| na`t-custom          | na`t-a weaving implement            |
| po`k-grey hair       | po`k-sound of breaking<br>an object |
| pu`k-belly           | pu`k-mind                           |
| tho`k-a kind of worm | tko`k-directly                      |
| thi`k,EM-breast      | thi`k-fittering                     |
| yo`t-iron            | yo`t-spade                          |

### 1.3.3.2 *Falling tone in monosyllabic words ending with vowels and nasals*

Falling tone also occurs with the vowels in some syllables ending with such vowels and nasals. Occurrence of this tone with these vowels may be seen from the following pairs of the monosyllabic words :-

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| ca`-lac            | ca`-a kind of skin disease |
| i`,EM-water        | i`-blood                   |
| ka`o-bull          | ka`o-a fishing trap        |
| ma`,EM-mother      | ma`-bug                    |
| mo`-a kind of flea | mo`-cry of the cow         |
| pu`ng,EM-country   | pu`ng,EM-place             |
| pu`ng-drum         | pu`ng-hour                 |
| phu`,EM-pitcher    | phu`-mode of blowing       |
| wa`-bamboo,        | wa`-word                   |
| wa`i,EM-place      | wa`i,EM-span               |

### 1.3.3.3 *Modification of Falling Tones*

If a syllable with falling tone is followed by another syllable with the same tone, such tone of the first syllable starts slightly lower and drops to only about the middle of the pitch range. Such features of falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of compound words :-

càkthàk-maintenance  
 cùpkhàk-the leftovers of a dish  
 hàkto`k-reign  
 ko`kyèt-turban  
 ko`kset-headgear of woman  
 khùtkàp-shot  
 lo`kcò`p-ravine  
 nàkpàk-side  
 pho`kcèt-a plant  
 pho`kto`p-a kind of mat

po`tho`k-product

pàtxo`k-comprehensive  
 sùplàk-multiplication table

yo`tpàk-spade

The first syllables of the compound words may end with the vowels,

cò`iràk-strictness

cò`itò`p-affix  
 hò`iko`k-water chestnut  
 hi`dàk-medicine  
 i`no`t-tide  
 i`phùt-spring  
 i`tho`k-wave  
 khùbàk-palm  
 khùdò`k-instantly  
 khùzo`k-handful  
 mò`icàk-pain  
 mì`kò`p-wink  
 mì`hùt-representative  
 mì`re`p-candidate for election  
 phùrì`t-shirt  
 wàcò`p-split  
 wàrè`p-decision

càkso`ng-kitchen  
 cùpli`-rein  
 hàkthi`-sneezing  
 ko`kno`m-fillet  
 ko`kthón, EM-hat  
 khùtrùm-fist  
 lo`ksà-rill  
 nàkci`-corner  
 pho`kto`m-screen  
 pho`klo`p-with a little  
 unpleasant taste  
 po`tsèm-bewitched ob-  
 ject  
 pàkno`m-a kind of dish  
 sùpnò`m-violent im-  
 position  
 yo`tpi-nail.

cò`iràp, EM-highest court  
 of justice  
 cò`itùp-club  
 hò`itùp-apple  
 hi`go`k-blue  
 i`pàk-vast sheet of water  
 i`so`t-drainage  
 i`tho`t-island  
 khùdò`p-ring  
 khùdùp-cubit  
 khùzùp-an ornament  
 mòikhet-match  
 mì`kùp-moment  
 mì`to`p stranger  
 mì`thit-a select group  
 phùrùp, EM-group  
 wàcè`t-split bamboo  
 wàso`k-oath

## 14 – Manipuri Grammar

### 1.3.3.4 Atonic syllables and syllables with falling tone—

Syllables with falling tone may be preceded or followed by the atonic syllables in the compound words. Occurance of such syllables with the two atonic syllables viz., *mə* and *tə* is shown below :—

#### (a) *mə*-primary/secondary prefix

|                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>məcà</i> -offspring | <i>məcà</i> mode of eating        |
| <i>məkhà</i> -mouth    | <i>məkhà</i> deg ee of bitterness |
| <i>mənà</i> -prize     | <i>mənà</i> -leaf                 |
| <i>məpàn</i> -plant    | <i>məpàn</i> vicinity             |
| <i>məro`i</i> -tongue  | <i>məro`i</i> -mode of buying     |
| <i>məri`</i> -relative | <i>məri`</i> -link                |
| <i>məthi`</i> -dung    | <i>məthi`</i> -residue            |

#### (b) *tə* locative

|                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>li`ktə</i> -to the necklace | <i>tə</i> -only                  |
| <i>pùktə</i> -in the belly     | <i>li`ktə</i> -only the necklace |
| <i>yo`tə</i> -to the iron      | <i>pùktə</i> -only the belly     |
|                                | <i>yo`tə</i> -only the iron      |

### 1.3.3.5 Falling tone in monosyllabic loan words

Falling tone occurs with the vowels in some monosyllabic loan words from NIA languages ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops. Such feature of the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of the native and loan words :

#### native words

*cə`k*-mode of piercing with a sharp weapon  
*lák*-mode of being loose  
*li`k*-necklace  
*phùt*-mode of extinguishing fire  
*tèk*-mode of philliping  
*tho`k*-mode of waving  
*ko`t*-barn  
*po`t*-thing

#### loan words

*cə`k*, EM-age  
*lák*-lakh  
*li`k*-furrow  
*phùt*-a measure of twelve inches  
*tèk*-a kind of utensil  
*tho`k*-deceit  
*gho`t*-a pitcher used in religious rite  
*bho`t*-vote



|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| phùt-mode of extinguishing fire              | bhùt-ghost                 |
| so't-instantly                               | sàt-roof                   |
| sùt-mode of sobbing                          | zhùt-falsehood             |
| tùp-sound of an object falling on the ground | dhùp-incense               |
| tho`p-brain                                  | dho`p-a kind of samkritana |

Falling tone also occurs with the vowels in a few monosyllabic loan words ending with vowels and nasals,

|                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| ghi`-clarified butter | h`ng-asafetida |
|-----------------------|----------------|

### 1.3.3.6 FALLING AND HIGH TONES IN THE COMPOUND WORDS.

#### 1.3.3.6. *Falling tone followed by high tones*

Falling tone is modified in the compound words when it is followed by the high tone. Such modification is the same as the modification of the falling tone followed by the same tone. This modification of the falling tone may be seen from the following pairs of compound words :

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| càkkhāo-stomach                 | càkkhāi-kitchen  |
| caklén-dinner                   | càklóng-an annual ceremonial feast offered to the clan numen |
| càk:hén-fasting                 | cakthu'ng-share  |
| cèk:ko'n-brick field            | cèkphāi-a technique of Kang play                             |
| cèklá,EM-bird                   | cèkyā-aside  |
| ko'kcéng-ant                    | ko'ksu'-a small baby   |
| khùtlái-weapon                  | khùtpu'-an organised group                                   |
| khùt:sá hand                    | khùtsói-dependence on others for livelihood                  |
| li'klu'-a kind of necklace      | li'kkón-cowry  |
| mi'tlu'-corner of the eye       | mi'tyéng-view  |
| mi'tsáng-discharge from the eye | mi'tsén-sleepless vigil                                      |
| mùkkhi-a kind of arum           | mùkmu',EM-cow  |

## 16 – Manipuri Grammar

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| mùkláng-a kind of fish     | mò'ksò'n-hybrid                             |
| po'tpá pair                | po'tphò'm-stail                             |
| po'tlén-a bundle of thatch | po'tlói-costume of Rasa dance               |
| phò'kláng-wall             | phò'klóng-a curtain of netted bamboo strips |
| phò'kpái-a small plant     | phò'ksáng-a long of mat                     |

### 1.3.3.6.2 High tone followed by falling tone

High tone is modified in the compound words when it is followed by the falling tone. Such modification is the same as the modification of the high tone followed the same by tone. This modification of high tone may be seen from the following pairs of the compound words :

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hò'ngci't-day after tommorrow | hò'ngko`k-a reptile               |
| kángcèt-beetle                | kángcùp smoking pipe              |
| kánggo`t-tax                  | kángtho`k-a raised floor          |
| kángdru`k-a kind of bird      | kángpo`t-sledge                   |
| khónco`p-obsene word          | khóntho`k voice                   |
| láibo`k-fate                  | láipo`k-a genius                  |
| láicàk-a skin disease         | láikùp-chicken pox                |
| láiri`k-book                  | láirùk-a dish offered to god      |
| mónpàk-mattress               | móntèk-a kind of pillow           |
| nóngcùp-west                  | nongpo`k-east                     |
| phò'ibàk-thigh                | phò'izùp-a shawl used in sleeping |
| phi`du`p-a posture            | phírùk-a kind of basket           |
| phínàt-sandal                 | phizèt-dress                      |
| phíràk-liver                  | phírep-stand on a matter          |
| pómi`-plan                    | póthàp rule                       |
| sò'nùp-herd of cattle         | sò'npò`t-a pair of bullocks       |
| téngko`-bowl                  | téngpàk-clod                      |
| úbàk-wood plank               | útùp-lóg                          |
| u`cèk-bird                    | u`cùp-peg                         |
| u`ri`-tailor bird             | u`ri`k-a kind of necklace         |
| u`rùk-tray                    | n`ro`k egret                      |

High tone may be followed by the falling tone in loan words. In such case, final syllables of these words end with un-aspirated voiceless stops.

(a) k - ko'ntrūk sulphur ; móro'k-chilly ; sábo'k-disciple;  
soro'k-road ; tári'k-date

(b) p - cúrip-cigarette ; dhúlo'p a kind of drum ; mándo'p-  
an open hall near the temple ; zo'ro'p a ladder with holes :

(c) t - ispàt-steel ; po'ndi't-scholar ; púri't-priest ; sóràt-  
sradha ceremony : tézhàt-bay-leaf.

### 1. 3. 3. 7 OPPOSITION BETWEEN FALLING TONE AND HIGH TONE

#### 1. 3. 3. 7. 1 *Opposition between the two tones in the monosyllabic words*

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the monosyllabic words. In such case these monosyllabic words end with vowels and nasals. They are also segmentally identical.

#### *falling tone*

cà-lac  
hùi-dog  
i'-blood  
ko'i-store  
kho'i naval  
lòu paddy land  
là-plantain leaf  
lù-a fishing trap  
mài-face  
mi'-person  
sà animal  
so'i-a weir for fishing  
tù-lo

#### *high tone*

cá,LW- tea  
húi-rivet, whistle  
ì-thatch  
kó'i-tiger  
khoi bee  
lò'u-a technique of wrestling  
lá-a large round flat basket  
lú EM-head  
mái-no  
mi-spider, shadow  
sá a measure  
sói-filly  
tú-fur

## 18 – Manipuri Grammar

### *falling tone*

cùm-key  
kàng-mosquito  
ko'n-utensil  
kho'ng leg  
lo'n-language  
lo'ng-a long handled weapon  
po'ng-raft  
so'm-hair  
si'ng-fuel  
tàn,EM-time  
ti'n-worm  
tho'ng-door

### *high tone*

cúm-lizard  
káng-chariot, a game  
kón-premises  
khóng-canal  
lón-generation  
lóng-a fishing trap  
póng,EM-person  
so'm-a kind of basket  
sing-ginger  
tán-chance  
tin-spittle  
thóng bridge

### 1.3.3.7.2 *Opposition between the two tones in the final syllables of the compound words*

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the final syllables of some disyllabic compound words. In such case, these words are segmentally identical. *mə*, the atonic syllable forms the initial component of these words. The final syllables of such words end with vowels and nasals,

### *falling tone*

mocà-a small one  
moci-horn  
moho'i-fruit  
makhà-mouth  
monà-prize  
mopi-mother animal  
mori-link  
morü-seed  
mosà-body  
mothi-residue  
moyäi-middle  
mono'm-back  
mopan-plant

### *high tone*

mocá-details of a subject matter  
moci-essence  
moho'i-education  
makhá-south  
moná-ear  
mopí-tear  
mori-four  
morú-root  
mosá branch  
mothi mode of selection  
mo'yái-impact  
mono'm-smell  
mopan-exterior

*falling tone*

mərùm-egg  
mərò'n-speech  
mòsi ng number  
mòto'n-bud

*high tone*

mərúm-hump  
mərón-layer  
mòsing-fibre  
mòtón-top

There is also opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the final syllables of some disyllabic compound words and both the syllables of these words end with vowels and nasals.

*falling tone*

ìkù-my father in-law  
kà:nì'-will get scorched  
lò'uwài-rural area  
sàrò'i-a kind of smoking pipe  
sákhi'-was built  
úkù-bark  
ì'tò'n-dysentery  
kò'nthì'-spirit

kúm mò'i-end of the year

lò'irò'ng-fire place  
nóng mò'i-rifle  
thàngzi'-chop  
thénggù-mallet

*high tone*

skù hay-rick  
kázni,LW-opium  
lò'uwài-forehead  
sàrò'i-epilepsy  
sákhi,LW-witness  
úkù-culvert  
itò'n-tip of thatch  
kò'nthì,EM-necklace made of  
tulasi plant  
kúm mò'i-entertainment with song,  
dance etc,  
lò'irò'ng-earth wall  
nóng mò'i-next year  
thàngzi-a good quality timber  
thénggù-tortoise

*1.3.3.7.3 Opposition between the two tones in the initial syllables of the compound words*

There is opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the initial syllables of some disyllabic compound words. In such case, these words are segmentally identical and both the syllables of these words end with vowels and nasals.

*falling tone*

bèrá-objection  
bò'rá-gunny bag

*high tone*

bèrá LW-a kind of sweet meat  
bò'rá.LW-a kind of fried food

## 20 - Manipuri Grammar

### *falling tone*

cùbá-both sides of the face  
 hórái-saw  
 ì'ká-my affairs  
 i'kù-my father in-law  
 lo'iháo-soil  
 nùrà,EM-woman  
 ùso'i-young bamboo plant  
 i'tón-dysentery  
 ko'nzín-tap  
 ko'rphán-a kind of utensil  
 kho'ngbán-supporter  
 khùdóng-smoking  
 khùdón-presents  
 lo'mzáo-road  
 tho'ngzáo-front door

### *high tone*

cúbá-squeezed sugarcane  
 hórāi-a kind of tray  
 iká blade of thatch  
 ikú-hay rick  
 lo'iháo champaka flower  
 nùrá-duster for plastering  
 úsoi-a good quality timber  
 itón-tip of the thatch  
 kónzin-corner  
 kórphán-a round stool  
 khóngbán-ditch  
 khúdong-opportunity  
 khúdon-tip toe  
 lo'mzao-meadow  
 thóngzáo-big bridge

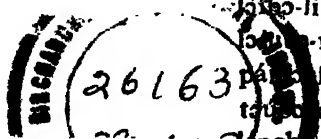
There is also opposition between the falling tone and high tone in the initial syllables of the verbal forms when these syllables are represented by the segmentally identical and semantically different monosyllabic roots of the verbs, carrying one of the two tones. Such opposition may be seen from the following infinitive forms of the verbs viz., compounds of the monosyllabic verb roots and po' atonic syllable (marker of infinitive) :—

### *falling tone*

pùbo-borrow  
 tàbo-hear  
 thàbo-send  
 thi'bo-count  
 ho'ubo-grow  
 hàibo-say  
 le'ibo-buy  
 lo'ubo-take  
 pàibo-handle  
 to'ubo-dig

### *high tone*

púbo-bring  
 tábo-fall  
 thábo-plant  
 thi'bo-search  
 ho'ubo-begin  
 hàibo-wave  
 le'ibo-live  
 lo'ubo-roast  
 pàibo-fly  
 to'ubo-do



*falling tone*

lò'nbò-shut  
nò'mbò-press  
pàngbò-progress  
phànbò-drink (honorific)  
sì'nbò-manage  
thàngbò-shift  
yànbò-cut

*high tone*

lónbò-boil  
nó'mbò smell  
pángbò-help  
phánbò-shave  
sínbò-copy  
thángbò-carry  
yánbò-mix

**1. 3. 3. 8** *Influence of stress of falling tone and high tone*

Falling tone and high tone are the conditions of stress and not vice versa. They may thus co-occur with the stress in the compound words. Atonic syllables do not create condition of stress and thus do not carry the onset of the stress.

Stress causes some modifications of the vowels and consonants of the syllables with the two tones. In the stressed syllables with the falling tone, vowels are shorter and louder in the beginning and become less towards the end and the pitch of such vowel starts higher and ends lower. In the stressed syllables with high tone, vowels are also shorter and louder and their pitch is slightly falling. In the final stressed syllables of the disyllabic compound words, the five consonants of such syllables viz. -k, -p, -t, -c and -l remain when such consonants other than -l are preceded by the vowels and nasals and -l is preceded by the vowels.

**(a)** *falling tone*

k—hò'ikò'k-water chest nut ; mà'ikò'i-direction ; m'kò'p-wink ;  
mì'kùp-moment.

p—cèngpàk-flattened rice ; kbo'ngpàk-foot ; ló'ipùng-mound ;  
nàpi'-grass.

t—cò'itò'p-affix ; hò'itùp-apple ; m'itò'p-stranger ; songtò'p-  
portico ; thàngtùp-date palm ; yàngtèk-ridge.

c—khàngcèt-dhoti ; kbo'ngcò't-journey ; lómco't-character ;  
sì'ngcèp-wedge ; waco'p-obscene word.

## 22—Manipuri Grammar

l—kàlò'i-country liquor ; so'la-gunny bag.

### (b) *high tone*

k—hákúm-last year ; ikú-hay-rick ; loíkón-garden ; yáká-response ; yákú,EM-a shawl used in sleeping.

p—hápú-weed ; nápú-yellow ; nápóm-slope of a hill ; úpú-box.

t—lò'itèng-ornament ; láitò'ng-a kind of basket ; nátsi-proof ; náitóm-alone ; páitú-a small bag.

c—káci-hook ; kúcú,EM-court ; náco'n-centipede ; nácóm-nosegay ; sácá frame ; yáco'n-rein.

l—cóláng-an edible herb ; kálén-summer ; lolá-ass ; málo'u,EM-a shawl used in sleeping ; pólói-end : póláng basket ; sólóm-a kind of fruit.

## 1.4 Consonant Clusters

### 1.4.1 Consonant Clusters

Manipuri has an abundance of consonant clusters. Such clusters occur at the morphemic junctures.

The following is a list of consonant clusters.

#### 1.4.1.1 Two consonant clusters

k+c

kk—omùkko'-once ; cékkón-brick field ; o'kkón-sty.

k kh—kho'kkho'i,EM-handle ; o'kkhi'-dandruff ; uro'kkho'ng-stilt.

kt—khùdò'kto—at once ; pàktù,EM-head load ; mùktábi'-fountain pen ; pho'kto'm-screen.

kth—càkthùng-share ; ko'kthōng-head load ; ko'kthón,EM cap

kp—cò'kpo'n-brick wall ; sèkpi'-bat ; thi'kpi',EM-fire place.



kph - kàkpho'i-leech ; ko'kphái-mould ; mùkphú-inkpot.

kc - ho'kcéng,EM-body ; ko'kcéng-ant ; pùkcén-mind.

ks - o'ko'ksà - a person possessed by the evil spirit ; caksò'ng kit-chen ; ngo'ksò'm-neck.

k:h - omuk:honno-once again ; càk:hén-fasting ; ko'k:hò'n láihò'n-eldest son.

kl - o'klá-perch ; càklén-dinner ; thi'klén,EM-breast.

kr - ko'ikro'n,EM-officer in charge of royal stores ; krithói,EM-surplus ; mòkrí,EM-clew.

km - co'kmóm,EM-fire ; mòkmò'i,EM-date of a month ; mukmu, EM cow.

kn - ko'knò'm - fillet ; mùknò wrestling ; pàknò'm - a kind of dish.

kn - o'pò'kngà,EM-name of a star ; to'kngà-rumour.

kw - kwá,LW-betel nut ; k'wa'i,EM-spittle coming out of chewing betel nut ; kwák,LW-crow.

ky - còkyá-aside ; nàk:yèt - both sides ; wàkyò'i,EM-boat.

kh + c

khr - khúnùkhrò'ng-hawk . pùkhrí,LW-pond

khw - khwá,EM-monkey ; khwái-all ; so'nákhwá - a term of address to a Manipuri Rajkumar.

khy - khyáo-mode of getting something dry

g + c

gr - ho'igrú-myrobalan ; phùgrí-itches ; ségràk-armpit.

gw - gwái-sound of playing cymbal

p + c

pk - kùpkò'ni - will cover ; thùpki-knot.

pkh - co'pkhài-is pressed ; thùpkhí-took shelter (emphatic).

## 24 - Manipuri Grammar

pt - kàptíngcà, EM-leech ; nò'ptóng-nose mucus ; tò'plái, EM-pillow.

pth - kàpthò'k:i-is shot ; nò'pthi-dry nose mucus,

pp - lèpponi-will stand (emphatic) ; yèppú, EM-a weaving implement,

pph - kùpphòrói-should not cover (emphatic) ; thùp-phòrói-should not conceal.

pc - hùpci't, EM-intellect ; hàpcínbò-insert ; kho'pchínbò-encroach.

ps - cùpsárón, EM-a hymn ; lèpsùmbò'n-an erect mortar for pounding paddy.

p:h - lèp:hò'n'bò-make one stand up ; thùp:hò'n'bò-make one conceal.

pl - cùpli'-rein ; lèplo'i-auger ; sùplàk-multiplication table.

pr - ngàprúm-mud eel ; prò'zá, LW-people ; prò'mán, LW-proof.

pm - kò'pmò'n'bò-too much crying ; tò'pmò'n'bò-too slow.

pn - làpnò-far ; sùpnò'm-violent imposition.

pw - kàpwáirò'ng, EM-thunderbolt.

phr - pómphri-rags

br - kòúbrú-northwest ; kho'bráng-both sides ; sò'mbru-mole.

by - cò'kò'byáng-a petrel ; ngàngbyá-a talkative fellow ; túbyá, LW-a small vessel for keeping tobacco.

t + c

tk - khùtkàppi'-fillip ; sò'tkò'n'bò-accustomed to borrowing.

tkh - ùtkhà, EM-ash ; yò'tkho'k-handle of a spade.

tt - khùttùm-fist ; thèttáng, EM-a kind of head gear ; yèttúm-needle.

tth - mì'tthò'u-stye ; pàtthò'bi'-a slough ; pò'tthò'k-product.

tp - pò'tpú-yoke ; yò'tpak-spade ; yò'tpi'-nail.

tph - mì'hàtphò'm-scaffold ; pò'tphò'm-stall.

te - pò'tcò'ng-requisite ; pò'tcói-item of small articles ; yò'tcàbf-magnet.

ts - khùtsùmbò'n-wage ; pàtsén-fishing tax ; pò'tsem-black magic.

t:h—ko`t:hing rust ; khùt:hing-smell of hand ; yo`t-hing hand cuff.  
tl—co`tlo`m,EM-road ; khùtlái-weapon ; pótioi-costume of Rasa  
dance.

tr—càtrùk-six hundred ; mōlitrèng,EM-fire ; pèttrùklo`i-violet.

tm—co`tmō`nbo-too wet ; pètmo`nbo-too soft ; po`tmō-a measure  
of about one hundred kilograms of paddy.

tn—khùtnàng-stain ; mi`tnō`m-deceit ; tètno`u,EM-iron.

tw—ko`twán,EM-name of a post ; so`twan,EM-name of a post ;

ty—mi`tyéng-view ; po`tyéng-monetary help to a berieved family.

th+c

thr—kaóthrùm-edible root of a plant ; pi`thraí-brass.

thw—thwà-sound of spitting

d+c

dr—hùidri-a weaving implement ; to`udrí--a musical instrument.

ddh—buddhi LW-intellect

o+c

cr—lo`icrèng-particles of dust ; khéeri,LW a kind of cooked rice.

z+c

zk—rázkúmar,LW-member of royal family

zb—tézbát,LW-bay-leaf

zr--ho`izráng knife

zw—zwár,LW-gambling

s+c

sk—péskári,LW-a kind of pump ; Yáiskúí-name of a division of  
Imphal.

st—i`sto`k-a basket for scooping up water ; i`stri,LW-smoothing-  
iron ; mistri,LW-carpenter.

sp—ispát,LW-steel ; náspátí,LW-a kind of fruit.

sl—múslá,LW spices ; tóslá,LW-a kind of utensil.

sm—kismis,LW raisin

sw—póswán a skirt of silvery muslin

## 26—Manipuri Grammar

### r+c

rk—so'rkár,LW-government ; tárko'ng,EM-a musical instrument.

rt—pártin,LW-bucket ; bártón,LW-invitation ; kórtál,LW-cymbal.

rp—ko'rpùr,LW camphor

rph—cárpón-a kind of fruit ; kórphán-a kind of utensil.

rb—kórbék,EM-book ; khórbák-slate ; tórbo't-white gourd.

rc—dácini,LW-cinnámón

rz—khùrzi'-rein ; kho'rzoi'-slate pencil

rs—phársi',LW-hanging by neck till death

### l+c

ls—túlsi,LW - tulasi plant.

ll—kóllùp-neighbouring area ; pólláng-basket ; so'llùp-herd of cattle.

lw—kho'lwóng,EM-a weighing implement : sálwón,EM-intarnation.

### m+c

mk—dho'mká,LW-threat , so'mko'kthàng-razor.

mkh—hémkhù,EM-boat ; ngo'mkho'i-boundary ; thúmkhóng-salt well.

mg—kho'mgón,EM-wind ; thémgóibo,EM-mango.

mt—ghúmti,LW-a canopy on the bullock cart ; lo'mto'p-secluded area ; námtù,EM-river.

mth—cùmtháng-rainbow ; no'mthàk-deceit ; ngo'mtho'ng-assistant.

md—lo'mdo'm-area ; khómdón-youngest son ; pho'mdo'u,EM-high official.

mp—kómpu,EM-soldier ; to'mpàk-valley ; yémpàk-a kind of umbrella.

mph—oinómpnú,EM-cooking pot ; to'mphá-jewel ; ti'mphá-water leech

mb—hémbo, EM-hillman ; tho'mbán-lotus ; ti'mbóng-choler.

mbh—gumbhir, LW-crocodile.

mc—lò'mcò't-character ; khómcup feeding bottle.

mz—səmzèt-comb ; sùmzi't-broom stick ; yámzég, EM-fore-head.

ms—khómsí, EM-comb ; túmsò't-pincers ; yúmsà-cattle.

mh—lò'mháng-meadow ; lò'mhùi-fox ; thúmhl-brine.

ml—cámloù, EM-plantain leaf ; khómlén, EM-dream ; kómlá, LW-orange.

mm—mócúmmà, EM-friend ; sùmmi, EM a mortar for pounding paddy with pestle.

mn—khe'mnùng, EM-death ; mómnù, EM-woman ; yùmnàk-sur-name.

mng—cámngá-five hundred ; nómgá-back support on the colt.

mw—kèmwáibò, EM-ruin.

my—kò'myá-lower part of the belly ; lò'myài, EM-road ; sò'myá, EM-comb for the king.

## n + c

nk—ci'nkùpsén-spittoon

nh—ci'nhúm-reply ; kónkho'i, EM-area ; tínkhà-bile.

ng—lò'n:go'i-treasury ; s'ngòng-hard cash ; ún:go'i, EM-mind.

nt—hèntàk-a kind of fish pickle ; ngo'ntà-early.

nh—kónthò'ng-gate ; pò'nthúng-destination ; tánthong, EM-length.

nd—sèndáng-sparrow ; sèndóng-profit ; tò'ndò'n-fire fly.

ndh—sò'ndhá, LW-twilight ; sò'ndho'ng-south west.

np—òthénpo't-presents ; ówúnpo't-dowry ; lò'llónpo't-merchandise.

nph—i'mphùi, Em-a fishing trap ; khúnphángtho'ú, EM-high officials.

nb—mánbi, EM-cow ; tò'nbo, EM-man ; úmbi, EM-mind.

nc—kò'ncàk-bell metal for casting utensils ; khóncò'p-low speech. phénci, EM-south west.

nz—ci'nzàk-food ; sènzég-bell metal ; wánzég, EM-fish.

ns—púnsí-life ; sènsi't-sale proceeds ; y'ènsáng-curry ;

## 28—Manipuri Grammar

nh—ci`nhài-oral statement ; mánhò'i-appricot ; wánhò'uso`ng-kit-chen.

nm÷kúnmathói-twenty one ; sínmi`-worker ; to`nmú,EM-oar.

nn—innophi-shawl ; yénnao-chicken ; yènni`ng-sprout.

nw—honwaibo.EM-to come back

ny—ko`nyái,EM pieces of gold and silver ; lónyi`m.EM-house.

### ng+c

ngk—léngko`t-a kind of basket ; téngko`t,EM-bowl ; yángko`k-winnowing fan.

ngkh—khángkhà,EM-brinjal ; tingkho`ng-thorn ; yàngkho`i-fifty.

ngg—kámngòt-tax ; kónggón-bubble ; thínngú,EM-mallet.

nggh—mósingghà-bile ; singghàresi-a kind of flower ; zínnggho`LW-corrugated iron sheet.

ngt—ménnángto`nbo,EM-goat ; so`ngto`p-portico ; thàngtúp-date palm.

ngth—kángtho`k-platform ; kángthón-bedstead ; nóngtho`u,EM-king.

ngd—lò`ngdúm-clew ; púngdón-guava ; so`ngdín,EM-cloth.

ngp—kángpo`t—sledge ; khàngpo`k-hut ; thàngpo`k,EM-pulse.

ngph—lò`ngphén-weft ; lánngpho`m-critical juncture ; nùngphán-anvil.

ngb—kángbú-group ; léngbán-shoulder ; wángbo`n,EM-wind.

ngc—khángcét-dhoti ; móndo`ngcà,EM-butterfly ; sì`ngcép-wedge.

ngz—khángzég,EM-court ; kho`ngzi-anklet ; tóngzo`i-pipe.

nga—kángsi-gong ; núnngsit-wind ; thàngsáng-sword.

ng:h—láng:hò`i,EW-year ; lóng:hún-somersault ; póng:hútawl.

ngl—ho`nglà EM-cloth ; singh`-nerve ; yànglén-backbone.

ngm—ci`ngmi`-hillman ; hàngmò`i-a carpentary implement ; wángmò`-beyond.

ngn—khóngnáng pipal tree ; nóngna`ng,EM-sky ; tho`ngna`o-window

ngng—cínnggu,EM-god ; ka`ngngà-swan ; nùngngò`u-marble,

ngw—kho`ngwa`i,EM-foot hold ; la`ngwón,EM-incarnation ; tha`ngwa`i,EM-north.

ngy - cángyéng-test ; kóngyáng,EM-bamboo ; nóngyài-midnight

#### 1. 4. 1. 2. *Three Consonant Clusters*

**k + cc**

kkṛ - thi'kkṛi-a kind of bird

kkhr - o'kkhró-a kind of knot ; pákkhróbo-wide (emphatic).

kṛ - pi'kṛú a small baby

kthr - mùkthrúbi'-an insect

kpr - to'kpró'-a small plant

ksr - pùksri'-an insect

**p + cc**

pkhr - pho'pkhró'bo-fragile (emphatic) ; to'pkhró'bo-slow (emphatic).

ptr - ko'ptrèng-gin

**t + cc**

tkhr - cètkhró'bo-firm (emphatic) ; co'tkhró'bo-wet (emphatic).

ttṛ - mi'ttṛo ng-magic ; yèttṛó,EM right hand side.

**n + cc**

mkhr - co'mkhró'bo-simple (emphatic) ; lámkhró'bo-hungry (emphatic).

mpr - co'mprá-lemon ; lo'mprái-a kind of bird.

mbr - cùmbro'i-peach ; kbo'mbrángcà-wagtail ; so'mbrù-mole.

**n + cc**

nkhr - pônkhro'ng,EM basket ; so'nkhró'bo-weak (emphatic).

ntr - ko'ntrók,LW-sulphur ; mo'ntró',LW-incantation ; úntrók,EM-winter.

nthr - kúnthrá-thirty ; ti'nthro'k-earth worm.

ndṛ - phùndro'i-lathe ; sùndro'ng-ether ; úpindrà,EM-fuel of good quality.

## 30—Manipuri Grammar

ng+cc

ngkr—céngkrúk-an edible plant; kó'ngkró'-a bowl of hooka;  
méngkrúk-incense.

ngkhr—ci'ngkhró'ng,EM-hawk; ká'ngkhró'ng-wheel; lóngkhró'u-  
a technique of wrestling.

nggr—ká'nggrú-slate pencil; kónggréng-oyster; thín'nggrí,EM-  
diving in the water.

ngthr—ci'ngthráo-a kind of tree; lán'ngthró'i-a medicinal herb.

ngdr—kán'drúm-hockey ball; kóng'drúm-gourd; nón'ngdréng,  
EM-everyday.

ngbr—són'ngbró'i-a kind of flower

ngzr—nú'ngzrèng-small stone pieces

## 2 MORPHOPHONIMICS

2.0 Morphonemic changes in Manipuri are of two types viz. those at the junctural points and those within the morphemes. Changes at junctural points are few and perform derivative functions. Different types of vowel and consonant changes occur within the morphemes.

### 2.1 *Junctural Morphophonimic Changes*

2.1.0 Vowels in contact occur at the border points of the compound words. Most of such vowels are seen in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood. These vowels are marked by the following features :—

- (a) They are changed into separate vowels.
- (b) They are merged into single vowels.
- (c) They remain as separate vowels.
- (d) They are separated with—u glide or y-glide.

#### 2.1.1 ɔ

##### 2.1.1.1 ɔ+ɔ

ɔ+ɔ>ɔ in the emphatic verbal forms in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses in the general statement when the first—ɔ is the final phoneme of pɔ,



atonic syllable (marker of infinitive) and the second—*o* is also an atonic syllable (secondary prefix).

*ko'k + li + po + odu + ni' > ko'kliboduni-we/you/they pare cutting (emphatic).*

*kàp + li + po + osi' + ni' > kàplibosi'ni-we/you/they are shooting (emphatic).*

*tàk + lo'm + li + po + osi' + n'i' > tàklo'mlibosi'ni-we / you / they were teaching (emphatic).*

## 2.1.1.2 a + o > a

*a + o > a* in same compound words denoting cardinal numerals when—*a* is the final phoneme of the syllables and *-o* is an atonic syllable (secondary prefix).

*kúnthrá + omo + thóibo > kúnthrámathói-thirty one*

*kúnthrá + oni' + thóibo > kúnthráni'thói-thirty two.*

*kúnthrá + ohúm + thóibo > kúnthráhúmdói-thirty three*

*torá + omo + thóibo > torámathói-eleven*

*torà + oni' + thóibo > toráni'thói-twelve*

*torà + ohu'm + thóibo < toráhu'mdói-thirteen*

## 2.1.1.3 V + o > Vo

*V + o > Vo* in the preduplicated compound nouns and noun phrases when *V* is the final phoneme of the syllables and *-o* is an atonic syllable (primary/secondary prefix).

*a + o - oca' otho'k-foot stuff*

*ophà opu'n-arrest*

*i + o - oki okho'ng-fear*

*u + e - orù ohén-luxury*

*othù okài-emergency*

*e + o - okè omo'u-luxury*

*pé ohùm-three umbrellas*

*o + o - ohó oràk-leakage*

*só oni'-two keys*

*oi + e - oho'i osing experts*

*ora'i orà-mental reservation*

## 32 – Manipuri Grammar

- ou+ə—oɔ'ʉ ɔsáng—high officials  
oɔ'ʉ ɔpèn—fresh vegetables  
ai+ɔ—ɔkài ɔtói—wreckage  
ɔwái ɔkhúm—dialogue  
ao+ɔ—ɔháo ɔthúm sweat meat  
kào ɔhùm—three bulls  
oi+ɔ—ɔrói ɔkho'm—conclusion  
ɔsói ɔngám—ommission and commission  
ui+ɔ—hùi ɔsi`—this dog  
lɔ'm hùi ɔdù—that fox

### 2.1.1.4 ɔ+u, ɔ, oi, ui

In —ɔ+u, ɔ, oi, ui, this—ɔ may remain or be separated from these vowels with -w glide in the derived noun words when -ɔ is an atonic syllable (primary prefix) and these four vowels are the initial phonemes of the verb roots.

- ɔ+u—ɔ:únpo't ... ɔwúnpo't—dowry  
ɔ:ùppi` ɔróngbi` ... ɔwùppi` ɔróngbi`—an indoor game.  
ɔ+ɔ—ɔ.ónbɔ ... ɔwónbɔ—change  
ɔ:o`k ɔpá ... ɔwo`k ɔpá—undue interference  
ɔ+oi—ɔ:oiɔ ... ɔwóiɔ—truth  
ɔ+ui—ɔ:ùibɔ ... ɔwùibɔ—firmness

### 2.1.2.i

#### 2.1.2.1 ɔ+i>ə

ɔ+i>ə in the verbal forms in the negative present indefinite aspect and the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses in the general statement when -ɔ is the final phoneme of the two atonic syllables viz. tɔ, marker of negation and lɔ, marker of perfect aspect and -i is the marker of general statement.

- ɔt+tɔ +i>ɔt`tré—we/you/they do not go  
kɔ k+tɔ +i>kɔ`kté—we/you/they do not cut  
kɔ`k+lɔ +i>kɔ`klé—we/you/they have shaved  
tho`k+lɔ'm+lɔ +i>tho`klo'mlé—we/you/they had gone out

2. 1. 2. 2.  $\text{ə} + i > \text{əi}$

$\text{ə} + i > \text{əi}$  in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect — $\text{ə}$  is the final phoneme of the three atonic syllables (primary infixes) viz.  $\text{lə}$ ,  $\text{nə}$  and  $\text{thə}$  and  $-i$  is the marker of general statement,

$\text{hə'ng} - \text{lə} + i > \text{hə'ngləi}$  - he comes and asks

$\text{hài} + \text{lə} + i > \text{hàilə'i}$  - he comes and says

$\text{hàt} + \text{nə} + i > \text{hàtnə'i}$  - they kill each other

$\text{hə't} + \text{nə} + i > \text{hə'tnə'i}$  - they try

$\text{so'n} + \text{thə} + i > \text{so'nthə'i}$  he becomes weak (emphatic)

$\text{wán} + \text{thə} + i > \text{wánthə'i}$  - he faints

2. 1 2. 3  $i, e, \text{əi}, \text{ai}, \text{oi}, \text{ui} + i > i, e, \text{əi}, \text{ai}, \text{oi}, \text{ui}$

$i, e, \text{əi}, \text{ai}, \text{oi}, \text{ui} + i > i, e, \text{əi}, \text{ai}, \text{oi}, \text{ui}$  in the the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these six vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and  $-i$  is the marker of general statement.

$i + i - \text{li} + i > \text{li}$  - we/you/they narrate

$\text{pi} + i > \text{pi}$  - we/you/they give

$e + i - \text{ps}' + i > \text{pé}$  - we/you/they sob

$\text{tè} + i > \text{tè}$  we/you/they are docile

$\text{əi} + i - \text{lə'i} + i > \text{lə'i}$  - we/you/they buy

$\text{pə'i} + i > \text{pə'i}$  - we/you/they collect

$\text{ai} + i - \text{hài} + i > \text{hài}$  - we/you/they say

$\text{ngài} + i > \text{ngài}$  - we/you/they wait

$\text{oi} + i - \text{ko'i} + i > \text{ko'i}$  we/you/they walk

$\text{thói} + i > \text{thói}$  - we/you/they win

$\text{ui} + i - \text{kúi} + i > \text{kúi}$  - it lasts long

$\text{khúi} + i > \text{khúi}$  - it decays

2. 1. 2. 4  $a, o, u + i > a : i, o : i, u : i$

$a, o, u + i > a : i, o : i, u : i$  in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these three vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and  $-i$  is the marker of general statement.

## 34—Manipuri Grammar

**a+i—cà+i>cà : i-we/you/they eat**

**pá+i>pá : i-we/you/they read**

**h+i—hó+i>hó : i-it is hollow**

**po`+i>po` : i-we/you/they carry (the baby) on the back**

**p+i—pú+i>pù : i-we/you/they borrow**

**phù+i>phù : i-we/you/they beat**

### 2. 1. 2. 5. *i+i>i : i, iyi*

**i+i>i : i, iyi** in the reduplicated verbal modifiers expressing 'hardly' when the first -i is a primary prefix and the second -i is the initial phoneme of the verb roots.

**i`+in+to+no>i` : in indono .....i`yin indono-hardly wearing**

**i`+i`t+to+no>i` : i`t i`tono.....i`y i`t i`tono-hardly mending**

### 2. 1. 2. 6 *a, u, oi, ou, oi+i*

In a, u, oi, ou, oi+i, this -i may remain or be separated from these five vowels with -y glide when such vowels and -i occur in the compound noun words.

**a+i—khà : i` ..... khàyi`,EM bank of the river**

**ná : ín ..... náyin-ear ring**

**u+i—ú : ín ..... úyin-a kind of tree**

**oi+i—lo`i : i ..... lo`iyi-line**

**ou+i—thóu : i`nsín ..... thóui`nsín-instigation**

**oi+i—lo` : ín ..... lo`iyín,EM-attendant**

### 2. 1. 2. 7 *ou, ao+i*

In ou, ao+i, this -i may remain or be separated from these two diphthongs with -w-glide in the verbal forms in the present indefinite aspect when these two diphthongs are the final phonemes of the verb roots and -i is the marker of general statement.

**ou+i—koú+i>koú : i ..... koúwi-we/you/they call**

**toú+i>toú : i ..... toúwi-we/you/they do**

**ao+i—kaó+i>káo : i ... káowi-we/you/they forget**

**táo+i>táo : i ..... táowi-it floats**

2. 1. 2. 8 *i+u, o, oi, ui*

In *i+u, o, oi, ui*, this *-i* may remain or be separated from these four vowels with *-w*-glide in the reduplicated verbal modifiers expressing 'hardly' when *-i* is a primary prefix and these four vowels are the initial phonemes of the verb roots.

*i+o—i`* : o`k o`ktɔnɔ ... i`wo`k o`ktɔnɔ being hardly sufficient

*i`* : o`n o`ndɔnɔ...i`wo`n o`ndɔnɔ-hardly changing

*i+u—i`* : ún úndɔnɔ...i`wún úndɔnɔ-hardly giving anything as do-wry.

*i+oi—i* : oi oidɔnɔ ..iwoi oidɔnɔ-being hardly true

*i+ui—i`* : ùi ùidɔnɔ...i`wùì ùidɔnɔ-being hardly firm

2. 1. 2. 9 *a, u, oi, oi+i>ahi, uhi, oihi, oihi*

*a, u, oi, oi, -- i>ahi, uhi, oihi, oihi* in a few words.

*a+i—ná* : i`>náhi`-blood coming out of the nose

*nóng+yá+i`*>nóngyáhi`-rain water

*wà+i`*>>wàhi` a kind of worm

*u+i—cú+i`*>cúhi`-juice of sugarcane

*kù+i`*>kùhi`-a kind of dye

*oi+i--lɔ'i+i`*>lɔ'ihì`-honey in flower

*oi+i--khói+i`*>khóihì`-honey

2. 1. 3 *u*

2. 1. 3. 1 *u+u>u ; u*

*u+u>u* : *u* in a word

*ci`ngsú* : ú-teak

2. 1. 3. 2 *u+u>uhu*

*u+u>uhu* in a word

*lú+úp>lúhùp*-cap

2. 1. 3. 3 *e+u>e : u, eyu*

*e+u>e* : *u, eyu* in a word

*khé* : ú ... *khéyú*-a kind of tree

## 2. 1. 4 -O

## 2. 1. 4. 1 o+o&gt;ou

o+o>ou in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when -o is the final phoneme of the two atonic syllables (primary infixes) viz. nɔ and thɔ and -o is the marker of the imperative mood.

khə̀n+nɔ+o>khə̀nnɔ`u-(you) discuss (imperative)

ú+nɔ+o>únnɔ`u-(you) meet

cíng+thɔ+o>cíngthɔ`u-(you) pull down

cóng+thɔ+o>cóngthɔ`u (you) jump down

o+o>ou in the verbal forms expressing contempt or discourtesy in the imperative mood when -o is the final phoneme of cɔ, atonic syllable (marker of honorific first person) and -o is the marker of imperative mood

cə̀t+cɔ+o>cə̀tcɔ`u-(you) go

kə̀t+cɔ+o>kə̀tcɔu-(you) give

## 2. 1. 4. 2 i+o&gt;o

i+o>o in the verbal forms in the imperative mood expressing progression of verbal action when -i is the final phoneme of khi, marker of durative aspect end -o is the marker of the imperative mood.

kə̀k+khi+o>kə̀kkho` (you) go on cutting

sə̀k+khi+o>sə̀kkho`-(you) go on singing

phə̀m+khi+o>phə̀mkho`-(you) go on sitting

## 2. 1. 4. 3 i, e, oi, oi+o

In i, e, oi, oi+o, this -o is separated from these four vowels with -y glide in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when such vowels are the final phonemes of the verb roots and -o is the marker of imperative mood. In such case, -o may also occur as -u:

i+o-pi`yo` ... pi`yù-(you) give

thi`yo` ... thi`yù-(you) count

e+o-kə̀yo` ... kə̀yù(you) be neat and clean

tə̀yo` ... tə̀yù-(you) be docile

ɔi + c - lɔ̀'iyò ... lɔ̀'iyù-(you) buy  
 pɔ̀'iyò ... pɔ̀'iyù-(you) collect  
 ai + o - hà'iyò ... hà'iyù-(you) say  
 pà'iyò ... pà'iyù-(you) handle  
 oi + o - kò'iyò ... kò'iyù-(you) walk  
 thó'iyò ... thó'iyù-(you) win

#### 2.1.4.4 a+o>a : ɔ, awo

a+o>a : ɔ, awo in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when -a is the final phoneme of the verb root -o and -o is the marker of imperative mood.

cà + o`>cà : o` ... càwo`-(you) eat  
 pá + o`>pá : o` ... páwo`-(you) read  
 tà + o`>tà : o` ... tàwo`-(you) listen

#### 2.1.4.5 u, ɔ, ɔu, ao+o

In u, ɔ ɔu, ao+o, this -o may be merged with these four vowels or be separated from such vowels with -w glide in the verbal forms in the imperative mood when these vowel are the final phonemes of the verb roots and o is the marker of imperative mood

u + o - pù + o`>pù ... pùwo`-(you) borrow  
 sú + o`>sù ... súwo`-(you) work  
 o + o - ɔ + o`>o` ... o`wo`-(you) vomit  
 pɔ̀ + o`>pɔ̀ ... pɔ̀wo`-(you) carry the baby on the back  
 ɔu + o - kɔ̀'u + o`>kɔ̀u ... kɔ̀uwo`-(you) call  
 tɔ̀ + o`>tɔ̀ ... tɔ̀wo`-(you) do  
 ao + o - láo + o`>láo ... láowo`-(you) shout  
 táo + o`>táo ... táowo`-(you) fry

#### §.1.4.6 V+o

In V+o, this -o may remain or be separated from V with -w glide in the coordinated noun phrases when V is the final phoneme of the syllables and -o expresses 'and'.

### 38—Manipuri Grammar

a+o—ngà : o` sà : o` ... ngàwo` sàwo`-fish and meat  
i+o—mì : o` láí l ó ... mi`wo` láíwo`-person and god  
u+o—cú : o` cà : o` ... cúwo` càwo`-sugarcane and lac  
e+o—cè : o` ... cèwo` càwo`-paper and lac  
o+o—mo` o` mà : o` ... mo`wo` màwo`-flea and bug  
oi+o—ho`i : o` bi : o` ... ho`iwo` lo`iwo`-fruit and flower  
ou+o—phou o phi : o` ... phouwophiwo`-paddy and cloth  
ao+o—tháo : o` mǎi : o` ... tháowo` mǎiwo`-oil and fire  
oi+y—khói : o` mà : o` ... khóiwo` màwo`-bee and bug  
ui+o | hùi : o` kǎi : o` ... húiwo` kǎiwo`-dog and tiger

#### 2.14.7 i, oi, ai+o

In i, oi, ai+o, this -o may remain or separated from these three vowels with -w glide or -y glide in the compound noun words.

i+o—mì : óng ... mi`wóng ... mi`yóng-the particular person

oi+o—lo`i : ónbo ... lo`iwónbo ... lo`iyónbo-play in the mud

ai+o—sái : ón ... sáiwón ... sáiyón-incarnation

#### 2.1.5 -oi

##### 2.1.5.1 o+oi>oi

o+oi>oi in the emphatic verbal forms in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses and general statement when -o is the final phoneme of po, atonic syllable (marker of the infinitive) and oi is a copula verb.

lèp+li+po+ói>lèplibói-you/they are standing

no`k+li+po+ói>no`klibói-you/they are laughing

tàk+lo`m+li+po+ói>tàklo`mlibói-you/they were teaching

##### 2.1.5.2 i, oi+oi

In i, oi+oi, this -oi may remain or be separated from these two vowels with -w glide or -y glide.

i+oi—mì : ói ... mi`wói ... mi`yói-the particular person

oi+oi—kǎi : óibo ... kǎiwoibo ... kǎiyóibo-name of a legendary hero, 'kǎbui kǎiyóibo'.



## 2.2 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES

Internal morphophonemic change is an important feature of the vowels (both monophthongs and diphthongs). Such changes occur within the morphemes of the words. Vowels are changed into other vowels. Some vowels are in free variation with other vowels.

### 2.2.1 ɔ

#### 2.2.1.1 ɔ > a

Initial -ɔ followed by -ɔ, -a and -e > a.

ɔ/ɔ pɔ'n + tɔ + cɔ'nbo + mɔwɔng > pánzɔ'n—a goal scored in a game  
pɔ'n + tɔ + tɔ'mbo + mɔwɔng > pándɔ'm-aim

ɔ/a ɔ + ləppɔ + tɔ + páibɔ + khùtlái > aràmbái a weapon of Manipuri cavalry

ɔ/e hɔ'nyéngdɔbo > hàléngdɔbo-indifferent

Final -ɔ preceded by -o and -ai > a

o/ɔ - pónkhrɔ'ng > pólláng-basket

ai/ɔ - láipɔ'n > láibár-ambassador

ngáikhɔ'k > ngo'hàk-a little while

Medial -ɔ preceded by -a, -u, -o and -ɔi > a.

a/ɔ - màitá tɔ'mbo > màitábɔ-wash face

u/ɔ - kundo, LW + loi > kundalo-i-a kind of flower

o/ɔ - motho'k lo'kpo > motho'k kàro'kpo-attain full growth

ɔi/ɔ - mɔ'ì hɔ'nbo > mɔmɔ'ì sángbo-have a long tail

#### 2.2.1.2 ɔ > i

Initial -ɔ followed by -u, -ɔi and -ao > i.

ɔ/u - mɔrúng > lì'rúng-bow

ɔ/ɔi - ɔsɔ'ì > ì'sɔ'ì-song

ɔ/ao - ɔsáo > ì'ngà-name of a Manipuri month

Final -ɔ preceded by -ɔ and -a > i

ɔ/ɔ - hɔ'nù hɔ'nbo > hɔ'nù hɔ'nthì-old person

a/ɔ - márho'n > márzing-name of a sylvan deity

## 40 – Manipuri Grammar

Medial -ɔ preceded by -ɔ, -i, -u, -o and -oi>i.

o/ɔ—ɔtɔ̀t ɔwánthá>ɔsi`t ɔwánthá-windy season

lɔ́mkɔ́nbɔ>úrɔng khínbɔ-fix boundary pillar

i/c—mí tɔ́mbán>mí thi`bɔ̀ng-worthless person

u/ɔ—púrɔ́n,LW+ pɔ>púríɔ-multiplication

o/ɔ—cóngdɔ́mbɔ>cóngsinbɔ-rush forward

oi/ɔ—langgoi cɔnbɔ>kóisínbɔ-surround

### 2.2.1.3 ɔ -u

Final -ɔ preceded by -ɔ and -ao>u.

ɔ/ɔ—gɔ́ngdho`k,LW>kɔ́ntrúk-sulphur

ao/ɔ—kúráo ho`ng>kúrao húng-a kind of hand cuff

Medial -ɔ preceded by -ɔ, -a, -i, -ɔi and -ao>u.

ɔ/ɔ—ɔmɔ+ lɔ́k>ɔmúk-once

a/ɔ—kháɔ́ngnɔbɔ>khúrumbɔ-bow down

náɔ́ngdɔbɔ>nácùngdɔbɔ-indifferent

i/ɔ—phógizɔ́go`i>phágizúgài joke

ɔi/ɔ—lɔ́tɔ́nggài>lɔ́itùm-clod

ai/ɔ—sáigɔ́ng lɔ́ihɔ́nbɔ>sɔ́gúntɔ̀ùbɔ-burglary

### 2.2.1.4 ɔ>e

Medial -ɔ preceded by -a and -ao>e

a/ɔ—mɔhák phɔ́ngbɔ>hákthéngnɔbɔ-physical contact

ao/ɔ—wàrɔ́k tho`nbáo tɔ́mbɔ>wàrɔ́k watembɔ-exercise control  
and supervision

### 2.2.1.5 ɔ>o

Initial -ɔ followed by -ɔ, -i, and -ai>o.

ɔ/ɔ—mɔ́nglɔbɔ+ sɔ́nglɔbɔ+mɔphɔm>móngso`ng-thicket

nɔ́m+ nɔ+ngábɔ+mɔphɔ́m>nómngá-back support of bed-  
stead

o/i—bɔndi,LW>bóndi-prisoner

mɔ́ng+ ki+ mɔ+phɔ́m>móngphɔ́m-graveyard

o/ai—lɔ́ngmáizi`ng>nóngmáizi`ng-Sunday

Final ɔ preceded by -a and -ai > o

a/ɔ—mákhɔ'n, LW > mákhón-butter  
mi'tphátɔ'm > mi'húttho'ng-window

ai/ɔ—kháibo`k > kháibo`k-half

Medial ɔ preceded by -a, and -u > o.

a/ɔ—càhɔ`tpɔ > càtho`kpo-eat up  
kángtho'ng kángzáibo > kángkhóng cáibo-disorder  
lăimàngphɔ`mbo > láitóngbo-be in communion with the sylvan deity

u/ɔ÷cɔ'búto'rá, LW > cɔ'bútórá-a brick platform growing tulasi plant

## 2.2.1.6 ɔ > oi

Initial ɔ followed by -i > oi.

sɔ'yí > sɔ'í-a kind of tree

Final ɔ preceded by -i > oi

kɔ'rbír, LW > kɔ'bíro'í-a kind of flower

Medial ɔ preceded by -a > oi

ɔ'mábo'syá, LW > ámábo'ísá-new moon

## 2.2.1.7 Free variation of ɔ with oi

Initial ɔ followed by -y is in the free variation with -oi.

oyuk ~ oiýuk-morning

moyái ~ mo'iyái-impact

moyám ~ mo'iyám-many

moyán ~ mo'iyán-mixture

moyéng ~ moi'y éng-quantity

moyo'm ~ mo'iyò'm-bundle

moyo'n ~ mo'iyò'n-bud

sɔ'yéng ~ sɔ'iyéng-arm

## 2.2.1.8 ɔ > ou

Medial ɔ preceded by -oi > ou.

sáigong lo'ihò'nbo > sɔ'gún tɔu'mbo-burglary

## 42—Manipuri Grammar

### 2.2.1.9 Free variation of -o with -u

Initial -o followed by -w is in free variation with -u.

ɔwàbo ~ ɔúwàbo-sorrow

ɔwáng ~ ɔúwáng-north

ɔwúnpo't ~ ɔúwúnpo't-dowry

ɔwóibo ~ ɔúwóibo-truth

hɔ'wái ~ hɔúwái-pulse

thɔ'wái ~ thɔ'uwái-soul

thɔ'wán ~ thɔúwán-name of a Manipuri month

### 2.2.1.10 Loss of -o

EM -o is lost due to elision of the following unstressed morphemes :—

cɔ't—cɔ'tlo'm>lɔ'mbi'-road

hɔ'k—to'knɔhɔ'kpɔ>to'kpɔ-stop

khɔ'm—khɔ'mnɔ'u>nɔ'u-oar

khɔ'n—khɔ'nngàkpɔ>ngàkpɔ-guard

kɔ'nphɔ'ibo>phɔ'ibo-place breadthwise

khɔ'nggɔ'n>khɔ'ng-leg

lɔ'ng—pɔ'nlo'nglà>pɔ'n-bund

mɔ'n—mɔthɔ'umɔ'n>mɔthɔ'u-duty

mɔ't—ni'ngmɔ't>mɔni'ng-backside

ngɔ'm—ngɔ'mdáincɔ>táincɔ-have contact with

ngɔ'mthɔ'ngnɔɔ>thɔngnɔɔ-contiguous

lɔ'ingo'mbɔ>lɔ'ibo-live

thɔ'nggɔ'm>mɔthɔ'n-storey

phɔ'm—ko'tphɔ'm>ko't-barn

lùkphɔ'm>lùk-meal (honorific)

pɔ'n—pɔ'nei>ci'dái-corner

sɔ'm—sɔ'mpo'k>po'k-gray hair

tɔ'm—lèptɔ'm>lèp-height

po'tɔ'm>po't-thing

tɔ'ng—tɔ'ngngáibo>ngáibo-wait

càthɔ'ngnɔɔ>càbo-eat

## 2.2.2 a

### 2.2.2.1 a > ɔ

Initial -a followed by -a, -i, and -u > ɔ.

a/a—khàibán > mɔpán—exterior

sàmàng > mɔmàng—front side

a/i—pháni`k > pho`nèk—woman's garment

sà + kɪ + kài > sɔ`gài—a raised platform

a/u—cànùra > cɔ`nù—woman

sàmùk > sɔ`mùk—cow, bull

Final -a preceded by -a, -u, -ɔi and -ai > ɔ.

a/a—man + cà > mánzɔ`—husband

nàkpán > nàkkɔ`n—side

táng + cà > tángzɔ`—snake, EM

thá + cà > tházɔ`—moon, EM

yo`kcà > yo`kco`bi`—nurse

u/a—nàmúngsà > mùkso`n—hybrid

ɔi/a—lɔ`i + mà > lɔi`mɔ`—queen

pái + mà > páimɔ`—mind, EM

ai/a—i`kàikhàng > kàngkho`n—mosquito net

Medial -a preceded by -a, -ɔi and -ai > ɔ.

a/a—càk + càbo + kɪ + mɔmàng > càkco`màng forenoon

khà + phàkpo + ngà > khàbo`k—a kind of fish

lɔ`ipúng yàkàbo > lɔ`ipúng pho`mbo—sit in the open ground

ngà + ɔphàklobo + zàt > ngàpho`k—a kind of dried fish

ɔi/a—lɔ`i lánghɔ > lɔi`kɔ`tpɔ—offer flower to the deity

yùm + kɔ`i + sábo + númi`t > yùmsɔ`kɔ`iso`—wednesday

ai/s—lái + hàtnobo + lo`n > láihɔ`tlo`n—black magic

### 2.2.2.2 Free variation of -a with -ɔ

Initial -a followed by -ɔ and -ai is in free variation with -ɔ.

a/ɔ—kángnànbì ~ kɔ`ngnànbì—a kind of pitcher

khábráng ~ kho`bráng—both sides

khára ~ kho`rá—a small bamboo platform on the pond

a/ai—kángráibì ~ kɔ`ngráibì—a kind of worm

#### 44—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -a preceded by -u is in free variation with -ɔ.  
púcàlùk,EM ~ púzɔ`rùk,EM-basket

##### 2.2.2.3 a>i

Initial -a followed by -a, -i and -oi>i.

a/a—sàfà>píbà-son

a/i—càni`gkhàk>ci`khàk-remnant of food.

káiri`>li`ri`-bow string

a/oi—págo`i>pisum-eye brow

Final -a preceded by -ɔ, -a and -i>i.

ɔ/a—lɔ`mdáng>lɔ`mbi`-road

a/a—náyán>náyín-ear ring

i/a—álmiráh,LW>ɔ`mbári

mɔbi`ngà>mɔbani`-both of them

Medial -ɔ preceded by -ɔ, and -u>i.

ɔ/a—li`rén pàgo` tíngbo>li`tíngbo-fix up a row of canes

u/a—núng cánbo>núngsibo-love

##### 2.2.2.4 a>u

Initial -a followed by -ɔ, -i and -oi>u.

a/ɔ—kházɔ`ngnbo>khúrumbɔ-bow down

a/i—tàmdi`>ɔdùdi.-that (emphatic)

a/oi—tàloi>mɔtù-wife

Final -a preceded by -u, -ɔi and -ɔu>u.

u/a—cúná,LW>súnú-lime

ɔi/a—phɔ`irá>phɔ`irú-thigh

ɔu/a—lɔ`upàk>lɔúbùk-paddy land

Medial -a preceded by -ɔ, -i, -o; -ɔi and -ɔu>u.

o/u`—hɔ`ná hɔ`nú>hɔ`nú hɔ`nthi`-old person

i/a—lɔ`sínɡ tánbo>lɔ`mɔ`n khúmbɔ-revenge

o/a—nóngbánthá>nóngzúthá-rainy season

oi/a—màkláng:hɔ`i cámbɔ>khùt cúmbɔ-expert in shooting

eu/a—lɔúmànnɔbo>lɔúrúnnɔbo-conspiracy

2. 2. 2. 5 a > e

Initial -a followed by -i, -u and -e > e.

a/i—lángthì'nóbə>yéngthì'nóbə-inimical

a/u--wánglùk>mérùk-a small basket for measuring rice

a/e—árè>mérà-name of a Manipuri month

Final -a preceded by -ə, -a and -u > e.

ə/a—sə'myá>sə'mzet-comb

a/a—khángkhà>khámén-brinjal

lái wángià>láirén supreme god head

u/a—nùngngàcà>nùngzrèng-small stone pieces

Medial -a preceded by -u > e.

mə'iréng kàngbə>məmə'i thəkkətpə-raise tail

2. 2. 2. 6 a > o

Initial -a followed by a and -i > o.

u/a—sáwà>só-key

a/i—kwá : i>kódáng-spittle coming out of chewing betel nut and leaf

khári>khóngə'm-canal

Final -a preceded by -ə and -a > o.

ə/a—mì'tə'mbán>mì'thi'bo'ng-worthless person

a/a—nápá>nákóng-ear

Medial -a preceded by -ə, -u and -əu > o.

ə/a—mərəkci'n>thə'ngzi'n door frame

u/a—húndānbə>húndo'kpə-throw away

əu/a—láinoútábə>láitóngbə-be in communion with the sylvan deity

2. 2. 2. 7 a > oi

Initial -a followed by -u and -e > oi.

a/u—lángbùm>lo'ipún-union

a/e—kàngde >cə'itək-pieces of broken stick

## 46—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -a preceded by -o and -i>oi.

o/a—lo'n màbi>lo'n lo'ibi`-a rich woman

i/a—mi`rángcán>mi`ro`riho`-t-rogue

### 2. 2. 2. 8 a>ou

Initial -a followed by -a and -i>ou.

a/a—tháyâng>tho'unà-courage

a/i—càk+kí+mopi`>co`ubri`-break fast meal for children

Medial -a preceded by -a>ou.

a/a—lân kâbo>lân ho`ubo-revolt

### 2. 2. 2. 9 a>ai

Initial -a followed by -o, -e, and -o>ai

a/o—phánzo' ho'ibo>páibo ho'ibo-skilful in flying

a/o—lāngphèt>háiphèt-a little

a/o—láng:ón>sái:ón-incarnation

Final -a preceded by -u>ai

lùkláng>lùkmài-a kind of basket

Medial -a preceded by -o>ai.

po'ncáyo`t,LW>po'ncái-a local self governing body

### 2. 2. 2. 10 a>ui

Initial -a followed by -ai>ui.

háwáiro`i>hùiro`i-scout

### 2. 2. 2. 11 Loss of -a

-a in the unstressed morphemes of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these morphemes. Such elided morphemes are shown below :—

cà—cèngzà>cèng-rice

pho`kcă>pho`k-mat

há—hátho`ibo>tho`ibo-divert

hátho`kpo>tho`kpo-go out



- khà—khàzə'ngbo>co'ngzəbo—take shelter  
 ùtkhà>ùt-ash
- là—línlà>lín-snake  
 yángko'klà>yángko'k-winnowing fan
- mà—màláng>láng-net  
 tángmà>táng-limb
- nà—nàko'mbo'ng>ko'mbo'ng-edible fruit of a plant  
 nàto'mbo>to'mbo-learn
- pà—ci'bà>úci'-rat  
 kúmbà>kúm-year
- phà—phàhunbo>húnbo-throw
- càk—càkli'k>li k-necklace
- kàng—kàngdén>ten-bow
- láng—li'kláng>li'k-necklace
- mán—mántho'uri>tho'uri-rope
- nám—nám tù>tùrén-river
- sàn—sàn kho'ngbo>kho'ngbo-know  
 sànsombò>sèmbò-mend
- tán—tánmùlò'ng>lo'ng-yarn  
 tánphò'ngbo>phò'ngbo-get

### 2. 2. 3. *i*

#### 2. 2. 3. 1 *i>ə*

Initial -i followed by -ə, -i, -u, -oi and -əu>ə.

- i/ə—ní+to+lo+ko>no'trəgo or  
 ni+to+no>no'ttəno-except  
 ni+to+po>nottəbo-other than  
 phi+to'gi+thókpə+mothi>pho'di-rags
- i/i—i'ci'knúng>əci'kpə-calm
- i/u—i'núng>əhíng-night  
 mi'súngláng>mə'súngláng-for one's own sake
- i/oi—mi'ro'i mi'púng>mə'rbək-foreign country
- i/oi—krithói>əthói əhén-surplus
- i/əu—li'rouwà>məro'i-argument

Final -i preceded by -u, -o and ai > o.

u/i—khùtín > khúdo'm-example

o/i—sùmmi' > sùmbò'n a mould for pounding paddy with pistle

ai/i—láiyi'm > láiso'ng-temple

Medial -i preceded by -o, -a, -u, -o, ou and -ai > o.

o/i—osi' + wái + to > oswáido-over here

moni'nglo'n > monò'mmo' elder brother's wife (a word used only by the women)

a/i—ngàngpi'yá > ngàngbyà a talkative fellow

tho'wánmi'càk > tho'wánmo'càk-star

i/i—i'sing + si'tnobo + to'k > i'sto'k-a basket for scooping water

u/i—cùmmi'thàng > cùmthàng-rainbow

úringkón > úmo'ng-forest

o/i—opo'k li'hùi > opo'kasi-birth and death

nótini > lóto'ni-whore

ou/i—pho'mdo'u níngtho'u > ongo'm-o'tho'u-high officials

ai/i—i'káithi'bi' > i'káitho'bi'-a medicinal herb

## 2 2. 3. 2 Free variation of i with -o

Initial -i followed by -i, -u, -o and -oi is free variation with -o

i/i—i'míntho'ng ~ moníngtho'ng-back door

khízi'k ~ kho'zi'k-a little

i/u—i'yi'm, EM ~ oyùm, EM-we

i/o—i'bo'k ~ obo k-grand mother

i/oi—mi'rò'ibák ~ mo'rbák-foreign country

Medial -i preceded by -o, -i, -oi and -ai is in the free variation with -o:

o/i—mo'riphù ~ mo'rphù-eighty

i/i hizigang, EM ~ hizogang, EM-boat house

ai/i—ho'izingpo't ~ ho'izo'po't-a ceremoney on the day of betrothal

ai/i—laiyingthou, EM ~ laibongthou, EM-good

-i in the two primary infixes viz. ci'n and ci'nnə is also in free variation with -o.

thə'kci'nbo ~ thə'kco'nbo-gulp down

thə'kci'nnəbo ~ thə'kco'nnəbo-pretend to drink

## 2. 2. 3. 3. *i > a*

Initial -i followed by -u and -e > a.

i/u—li'thúbo > lángdo thúbo-fall in the net

i/e—timén > tá-spear

Final -i preceded by -o, -u and -ə > a.

o/i—dho'mki, LW > dho'mká-threat

mothi'k > mōthá-breast

u/i—trúti, LW > túká-fault

o/i—móti, LW > múktá-jewel

Medial -i preceded by -o, -a, -i, and -ə > a.

o/i—othi'di > wathi'-gossip

mobi'ngà > mōbani'-both of them

a/i—pàiri siri' > mōcà mōsù-offspring

i/i—hizi'gáng > hígāso'n<sub>g</sub>-boat house

əu/i—thə'usi'bo > thə'udábo-assign a duty

## 2. 2. 3. 4 *Free variation of -i with -a*

Initial -i followed by the sound group -ya is in free variation with -a.

kiyámlo'i ~ kyámlo'i-a kind of flower

kiyámbo ~ kyámbo-name of a Manipuri king

kiyám li'kpháng ~ kyám li'kpháng-a kind of neck/ace

kiyár, EM ~ kyár, EM pillow

thiyáng, EM ~ tháyáng, EM-courage

Final -i preceded by -a is in free variation with -a.

kumbi, EM ~ kumza, EM-year

## 50—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 2. 3. 5. i>u

Initial -i followed by -i and -u>u.

i/i—dibiyá, LW>túbiyá-a small vessel for keeping tobacco

i/u—tincúmba>tùkò'coba-hate

Final -i preceded by -i, -o, -oi and -oi>u.

i/i—cínbi>so'zibù-name of a Manipuri month

o/i—lónyi'm>yúm-house

oi/i—moinín>mò'ihúm-fire brand

oi/i—móiri'k>móibùng-conch

Medial -i preceded by -o, -i and -e>u.

a/i—osi'+kúm+nó>osúmno thus

osi'+mùk+to>osùkto-this much

osi'+ngò'i+to>osùngoido-at this time

moci óibo>morù oibo-basic

monin náibo>núngáibo-happy

i/i—monúng li'tingbo>loútúnoba-conspiracy

to'u:i'gidí>to'u i'gúmbosùng-but

e/i—hé i'khù>i'bùngo-gentleman

moréng si'nbo>morì'k cùmba-rich in details

### 2. 2. 3. 6 i>e

Initial -i followed by -i, -u and -o>e.

i/i—bhindí, LW>bhélo'ndri-lady's finger

ci'n+ki'+lo'ibàk>cèrbàk-edible rock pieces

i/u—sínbù+lúngbo+mi>séllúngbo, EM-name of a post

i/o—kiko't>kékù-an indoor game

Final -i preceded by -o, -a, -i, -e and -o>e.

a/i—mósin>mósén-each other

póring>póréng-line

a/i—kámbi>kálén-summer

pháni'k>pho'nèk-women's garment

i/i—si'ngmi't>si'ngcèp-wedge

e/i—hébi`>i`bémo`-lady

sèkpin>pé-a kind of umbrella

o/i—khómsi>so`mzet-comb

Medial -i preceded by -o, -a, -e and -o>e.

o/i—lo`mbi`+lén>lo`mbèn-road

sənm thitpə>sadə thetpə-fix flower etc on animal's back.

a/i—khági+ngə`mbə>khágémbə-name of a Manipuri king

e/i—hébi`>i`bémo`-lady

sekpin>pé-a kind of umbrella

o/i—khómsi>səzmzət-comb

## 2 . 2 . 3 . 7 i>o

Initial -i followed by -o and -a>o.

i/o—mircá' LW>móro`k-chilly

i/a—kiyáng>kórèk-water pot made of dried gourd

níngráng>nóngnáng (hórínóngnáng)-a kind of insect

Final -i preceded by -a and -u>o.

a/i—ákil, LW>ákón-intelligence

u/i—pàri` pùri`>pàrón pùrón ancestors

Medial -i preceded by -o>o.

osi`+lóm+ tə>so`mdə-towards this side

## 2 . 2 . 3 . 8 i>oi

Initial -i followed by -o, -i and -u>oi.

i/o—phí+no+sábo+po`t>phə`izá-fold of cloth supporting head load

i/i—sín+ki`+mə+càk+oíbo+po`t>so`izàk-fruit of a tree used in starching yarn

i/u—phí+pu+thadokləbo+mi>phoida-eunuch

Final -i preceded by -o, -a and -e>oi

o/i—sàyi`>so`i-a kind of tree

a/i—nàmi`>məmo`i-tail

e/i—ténbi`>ténzo`i-arrow

## 52—Manipuri Grammar

Medial -i preceded by -a and -oi>oi.

a/i—kàptíngcà>kàkphó'i-leech

oi/i—so'íringwái>so'ilo'íphó'm-site for laying fishing trap

### 2.2.3.9 i>ou

Initial -i followed by -a and -i>ou.

i/a—thi'yáng>tho'unà-courage

i/i—li'tíngbo>lóutúnobó-conspiracy

Medial -i preceded by -o>oi.

mohísá>mohó'usá-nature

### 2.2.3.10 i>ai

Final -i preceded by -o>ai,

dóli,LW>dólái-palanquin

Medial -i preceded by -i>ai.

f'íng + ki + co'phù>i'sáiphù-a pitcher for storing water.

### 2.2.3.11 i>ao

Medial -i preceded by -o>ao.

otíngbo>otáobó-fickle

### 2.2.3.12 Loss of -i.

-i in the unstressed syllables of same EM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

ci'—ci'khro'ng>khúnúkhro'ng-hawk

f'—i'káikhàng>kàngkho'n-mosquito net

i'núng>núngdáng-night

ki—kiyo'mbo>yo'mbo-fold up

krithói>othoi chen-surplus

ti'—ko'ucàli'bo>ko'ucobo-call

séri'>sén-money

pi`—pi`bùk>pùk-belly  
 si`ngbi`>si`ng fuel  
 thi`—linláthi`>lin-snake  
 so`ngyáthi`>so`ng-hut  
 so`udi>so-obstacle  
 ci`ng—ci`ngco`ro`i>co`ro`i-a kind of bird  
 hi`k—hàihikpo>hàibo-say  
 kàp;hi`kpo>kappo-shoot  
 mi`t—tángmi`t>táng-limb  
 nin—phùnínsing>lóúsing-intelligence  
 sik—tòusi`kpo>tòubo-dig

## 2.2.4 u

### 2.2.4.1 u>ɔ

Initial -u followed by -a, -ai and -oi>ɔ.

u/a—húngngà>hó'ngngà-crying of the babies  
 sùcà>mocà-offspring  
 u/ai—lúwái>ló'wái-forehead  
 u/oi—cùkó`i>zo'gói-dance

Final -u preceded by -ɔ, -u, -o, -oi and -ou>ɔ.

o/u—mò`nglùk>mòro`m-reason  
 to`ndún>to`ndo`n-glow worm  
 u/u—lú`túng>lúkhó`m-backside of the head  
 mòkhùtkhún>khùtphó`m-imprint of the hand  
 o/u—nóngbùm>nóngmò-the whole day  
 oi/u—mòro`ipúng>ló'iphó`m-residence  
 ou/u—lóúthúp>lóúno`m-deceit

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, -u and -o>ɔ.

o/u—mòtúyá>mòphó`m-place  
 o/u—níngón-sùcà>níngónmocà-children of the daughter

kúno, EM marker of the negative imperative mood and  
 súno, EM marker of 'let do' (third person) are changed into kò`nù  
 and so`nù respectively in the modern Manipuri.

## 54—Manipuri Grammar

cə̀tkúno` > cə̀tkə`nú, (you) don't go (imperative)

cə̀tsúno` > cə̀tsə`nú-let him/they go

### 2. 2. 4. 2. Free variation of -u with -ə

Final -u preceded by -ə, -a, -əu and -oi is in the free variation with -ə.

ə/u—tə`yùm, EM ~ tə`yo`m, EM-servant

a/u—i`sing yáphùm ~ i`sing yáphə`m-a kind of disease

kho`ido`u yáphùm ~ kho`ido`u yáphə`m-peace of mind

əu/u—thə`umú náomú ~ thə`umə` náomə`-contemporary

oi/u khóiyùm, EM ~ khóiyə`m, EM-god

Medial u preceded by -ə, -o is also in free variation with -ə.

ə/u—ədùwáido ~ ədwáido over there

ə/u—yo`sùbi` ~ yo`tsə`bi` a three legged utensil

### 2. 2. 4. 3 u > a

Initial -u followed by -ə and -u > a.

u/ə—cúnbə > cánbə-kind

pùkkho`n > wàkkho`n-idea

u/u—khùmú cə̀ppə > khàmén cə̀tpə-a kind of finely embroidered dhoti

phùrúp > kànglúp-group

Final -u preceded by -a and -i > a.

a/u—lə`mmàcúm > lə`msáng-street

i/u—mí`rə`i mí`pùng > mə̀`rbàk-foreign country

Medial -u preceded by -ə, -i and -oi > a.

ə/u—lə`mmùknəbə > lə`màngnəbə-lose one's way

sə`ndúbə > sə`nhàtpə-killing of the cow

tə`ngtúbə > tə`ngtábə-emerge a clear picture

i/u—mí`t cúbə > mí`t cà`nəbə-look each other eye to eye

mí`túphə`m > mí`hàtpə`m-scaffold

mí`túyà > mí`hàtpə`-murder

oi/u—kho ngdói húnbə > kho`ng sánbə-start



2. 2. 4. 4. *Free variation of -u with -a*

Final -u preceded by -ɔ is in free variation with -a.  
 mɔpúm,EM ~ mómán,EM-maternal uncle

2. 2. 4. 5 *u>i*

Initial -u followed by -ɔ, and -i>i

u/c—únthɔ'mthá>ínthɔ'mthá-winter  
 únthɔ'mbɔ>ínthɔ'mbɔ-feel cold  
 u/i—cùpci>ci`thèk-corner

Final -u preceded by -a, -i -u and -oi>i

a/u | lánbùm>lánmi-soldier  
 i/u—i`núng>ɔhíng-night  
 u/u—pùnúng>phùri`t-shirt  
 oi/u—khóiyú>khóihì-honey

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, -e and -o>i.

ɔ/u—lɔ'n kúɔ>lɔ'n pi`bɔ-giving of money  
 nɔkhúngɔ'i>óiríngɔ'i-while he/she is  
 c/u—sínglén cúnɔ>lɔ'i cínɔ-fix flower on the ear  
 o/u—nóngbùmlén>númi`tcùppo-the whole day

2. 2. 4. 6 *Free variation of -u with -i*

Initial -u followed by -a, -i and -e is in free variation with -i.

u/a—cùkhàk ~ ci`khàk-remnant of food  
 núngsá ~ níngsá-breathing  
 nùpà ~ ni`pà-man  
 úyán ~ íwán-pot for cooking curry  
 u/i—nùpi` ~ ni`pi-woman  
 nútí ~ nítí-every day  
 u/e—cúthèk ~ cithèk-corner  
 múngsén ~ míngsén-mirror

Final -u preceded by -oi is in free variation with -i.

khóiyùm,EM ~ khóiyɔ`m,EM-god

## 36—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 2. 4. 7 $u > e$

Medial -u preceded by -u and -oi > e:

u/u—khúmmú cə̀ppə > khámén cə̀tpə—a kind of finely embroidered dhoti

oi/u—lo'ibúnái > məbén—grand mother

### 2. 2. 4. 8 $u > o$

Initial -u followed by -u, -e and -o > o.

u/u—khùyú > khóng—leg

u/o—túrén + ki + məpàn > tórbàn—bank of the river

túrén + nə + lo'ibo + məphə'm > tórə'i—zigzag course of river

u/o—lúthóng > ko'kthóng—head load

khùdón > kho'ngdón—tip toe

Final -u preceded by -a, -i, -u and -o > o.

a/u—lángbùm > məpo'k—birth

yìmpùk > yùmko'k—each house

u/u—thúmlùk > thúmmo'k—basket

o/u—thúmsóbùng > thúmkhóng—salt-well

Medial -a preceded by -ə and -i > o.

ə/u—ədu + lóm + tə > ədo'mdə—towards that side

i/u—i'bùngo' + otónbo > i'bo'tón—a personal name

### 2. 2. 4. 9 $u > oi$

Final -u preceded by -a > oi.

lo'mmárù > lo'mkho'i—boundary

súngnə, EM-diminitive primary infix is changed into lo'ina in the modern Manipuri

ngàngsúnobo > ngànglo'inobo—reddish

### 2. 2. 4. 10 $u > ao$

Medial -u preceded by -i > ao.

i'núngsiyo'm > náoyo'm—amnion

2. 2. 4. 11 *u > oi*

Medial -u preceded by -i > oi

i`phùbò > i`ro`ibò-swim

2. 2. 4 12. *Loss of -u*

-u in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

khu—yùmkhù > yùm-house

mu—i`mú > i`-blood

loi`mú > i`ro`i-buffalo

tármúlò`ng > lò`ng-yarn

phu—phù`nín`sing > lóú`sing-intelligence

kum—tò`ukúmbò > tóú`bò-do

lum—mò`rùmpán > mópán-help

muk—khò`nmù`kpo > khò`nbò-erect a temporary shed

2. 2. 5. 1 *e > ə*

Initial -e followed by -e and -əu > ə.

e/a—lén`gno tén`bò > møyám tén`bò-gathering of the people

e/i—sè`knì`ng > mənì`ng-bottom

e/əu—lè`plo`u sín`bò > mò`hùt sín`bò-substitute

sé`dòu > sò`dò`u-pulpitation

Final e preceded by -ə > e.

wà`rə`mlén > wámò`cò`ng-gist

Medial -e preceded by -i and -oi > ə.

i/e—cì`kthém`no > cì`kthò`no-calmly

oi/e—lòikén`ba > lòi`cò`nbò-conquer a foreign country

te. EM locative marker is changed into to in the modern Ma-

nipuri.

nì`ngde > mənì`ngdò behind

2. 2. 5. 2 *e > a*

Final e preceded by -ə, -u, -o and -oi > a,

## 58—Manipuri Grammar

o/e—hə'kcéng>hə'kcàng·body

u/b—cùmlén>cùbá·both sides of the face

khùzéng>khùdáng·wrist

o/e—pónlén>pónláng·basket

oi/e—məmóiréng>móithàp·spine

Medial -e preceded by -a, -i and -oi>a.

a/e—mə'iri` pónnà thémbo>mə'i thàto·set fire

f/e—

oi/e—mə'i cénno·bo>mə'i cəkpo·burn

### 2. 2. 5. 3 Free variation of -e with -a

Medial -e preceded by -o is in free variation with -a.

b'plénká,EM ~ b'pwánká,EM—a room of the house

### 2. 2. 5. 4 e>i

Initial -e followed by -i, -u, -o, -ai and -oi>i.

e/i—hèbi`>i`bémə·lady

hèbi`khù>i`búngo`·gentleman

e/u—hémkhù>hi·boat

e/o—hèkto`kpo>hi`kto`kpo·disobey

e/ai—hèkngáibə>hi`kpo·loose

e/oi—sén:góibə>i`kàibə·shame

Final -e preceded by -a, -i and -o>i.

a/e—yáren>yári`·gum

i/e—i`khéng>i`ri`k·drop of blood

o/e—nóngdréng>núti·everyday

Medial -e preceded by -o>i.

məcém + mənào>məci`n mənào·brothers and sisters

məcém + məúpwà>məci`n məúpwà·elder sister and younger brother

mənəm + məmə'u>məni` məməù·mother-in-law and daughter-in-law

mərəng si`nbə>məri`k cùmbə·rich in details.

yáthə'ng cénbə>khà ci`kpo·bite lip

2 . 2 . 5 . 5 Free variation with -e with -i.

Initial -e followed by -a, -i and -ou is in free variation with -i.

e/a -phə̀nàt ~ phinàt-sandal  
 séphà.EM ~ siphà EM-cloud  
 yènnàk khúnbo ~ i`nàk khúnbo-rich  
 yènsáng ~ i`nsáng curry

e/i -céngzhì ~ cìng-hì-shampoo  
 yèrì ~ i`rì-soup

e/ou-théłhə́'u théłhə́'u ~ thínhə́'u thínhə́'u-often

Final -e preceded by -o, -u and -oi is in free variation with -i.

o/e-òsè ~ òsi`-this  
 u/e-kúmzég,EM ~ kúmzing,EM-turban  
 oi/e-khoi`zén,EM ~ khoi`zing,EM-mind

Medial -e preceded by -o, i and -oi is in free variation with -i.

o/e -məphə̀tlo`i,EM ~ məpi`zà,EM-friend  
 i/e -pi`rénhə́`i ~ pi`rinhə́`i-a kind of fruit  
 oi,e -məidengu,EM ~ məidingu,EM-king of the Meiteis.

2 . 2 . 5 . 6 e>u

Initial -e followed by u>u.

sèkcùp.>úcùp-spigot

Final -e preceded by -o and -oi>u

o/e -sónglén>so`rù-bone  
 oi/e-lo`iko`irén>kónnúng-royal palace

Medial -e preceded by -u, -ou and -ao>u.

u/e-nóngbùmlén>númi`tcùpə-the whole day  
 púnémbo>khúrúmbə-bow down

ou/e-lo`u cénbo>lo`u kúmbə-going to the paddy land for ploughing

ao/e-náothémsə`i>náosúm i`sə`i cradle song

yèkno,EM diminutive primary infix is changed into lúnə in the modern Manipuri.

## 60—Manipuri Grammar

ngó'uyèkbo>ngóúrúnobo-a little white

### 2. 2. 5. 7. e>o

Final -e preceded by -a and -u>o

a/e—lò'mmàthèt>lò'mdón-suburb

u/e—úrèk>úro`k-eqret

Medial -e preceded by -o>o.

o/e—kó'rélá,LW>káron-a kind of fruit

### 2. 2. 5. 8 e>oi

Final -o preceded by -a>oi.

málém>lò`ibàk-earth

Medial e preceded by -a>oi.

làpthètpo>nàtho`ibo conceal

### 2. 2. 5. 9 e>ao

Final -e preceded by -u>ao.

yùmlén>yùmzáo great house

### 2. 2. 5. 10 Loss of -e

-e in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

khén—nùngkhén>nùng-stone

lén—khóirénhì>«hóihì`-honey

pirén>pí-tear

pùnggo`irén>pùng mound

ném—sèmnémbo>sémbo-mend

téng—mò`itréng>mò`i-fire

thet—lò'mdáithèt>lò'mdái-outskirt

yeng—hó'yéngsi`t>hó'ngci`t-day after tomorrow

míyéngsén>míngsén-mirror

## 2.2.6 -o

### 2.2.6.1 -o>ɔ

Initial -o followed by -a, -i, -ou and -ai>ɔ.

o/i—khómsi>so'mzèt-comb

o/ou—sónglo'u>so'rù-bone

o/ai—kónggài>to'ngkhài-half

Final -o preceded by -o>ɔ.

sàyo`kkón>sàyo`kso`ng-zoo

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -a, -i, -ou, -ai and -ao>ɔ.

ə/o—ko'bó+no+lo'ibo+lo'ng>ko'bro'ng-silk

lóngno+khóngdo+loúbo+məwóng>lóngkhrə'u- a technique of wrestling

a/o—wàhómbo>wà ho'ngbo-ask

i/o—so'nági+khóng+yá+khá>so'nákhwa-a term of address to a Manipuri Rajkumar

séri`so'nbo>wà so'kpo-oath

ou/o—lo'u;ónbo>loúnombbo-deceive

ai/o—láiro`klén>láiro`mlén-heaven

ao/o—paóhómbo>paóthə'ngnəbo-make allegations

### 2.2.6.2. Free variation of -o with -ɔ

Initial -o followed by -ɔ, -a and -o is in free variation with -ɔ.

o/ɔ—póróm ~ po'ro`m-plan

o/ɔ—póllángkho`k ~ po'llángkho`k-cloth stand

pótháp ~ po'tháp-rule

o/o—tóróngkhóngcàk ~ to'róngkhóngcàk-a medicinal herb

Final -o preceded by -e is also in free variation with -ɔ.

khénzóng,EM ~ khénzo'ng,EM-vestibule

### 2.2.6.3 o>a

Initial -o followed by -o, and -oi>a.

o/o—dóctór,LW>dàktór

o/oi—yómlo`i>məyám-many

## 62—Manipuri Grammar

Final -o preceded by -ɔ and -e > a.

ɔ/o—pho'mdo'ng > pho'mbàk-a raised platform  
to'mlón > to'mpàk-valley

e/o—téngko'k > téngpàk-clod

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -a and -o > a.

ɔ/o—pho'madngkho'ng > pho'mbán-throne  
wàro'm photto tho'kpo > phottobo- tábo-misrepresent one as  
being unreasonable

a/o—wà pho'ngbo > wà tàkpo-disclose

o/o—kwágo'k hónbo > kwágo'k hánbo-give bribe  
po'tho'kpo > po'tthábo-take rest

### 2. 2. 6. 4 o > i

Initial -o followed by -a, -ou and -oi > i.

o/a—lónvámbi'cà > úri't-tailor bird

o/ou—nóngtho'u > níngtho'u-king  
nóngtho'urén > níngtho'urén-emperor  
nóngtho'úro'ibàk > níngtho'úro'ibàk-sky  
nóngtho'utúrénn > níngtho'utúrénn-milky way

o/oi—ko'nggo'i > kisi-knot

Final -o preceded by -ɔ > i.

konglon > kangsi-bell

Medial -o preceded by -i, -u and -ou > i.

i/o—i'rónnúnn > i'síng mǎnúnn-inside the water  
thi'bo'ngbi' > thi'ri'n-intestine

u/o—núnn:ónbo > núnn:síbo-love

ou/o—tho'udóngbo > tho'uzínbo-incite

### 2. 2. 6. 5 Free variation of -o with -i

Final -o preceded by -oi is in free variation with -i.  
moidon,EM ~ moining,EM-heel



2. 2. 6. 6 o>u

Initial -o followed by the simple vowels (monophthongs) and -oi>u.

o/ɔ—kho'ng+to+lo'ubo+məwóng>khùrɔ'u-obstacle

kho'ng+no+nètpɔ+po't>khùnɔt-pedal

kho'ng+no+tábo+məphə'm>khùbo'm-abode

thóngbo>thúngbo-reach

o/a—nóngzà>númit-day

nóngsá>núngsá-sunshine

o/i—kho'ng+ki+ɔcéngbo+sə'rùk>khùzég-ankle

nóngthín>núngthín-day time

o/u—khong+pu+tengnɔbo+pot>khudeng-tray

o/e—nóngdréng>núti-every day

o/o—tóngbón>túnggón-a small basket for keeping fish

o/oi—kho'ngdɔ'iphi>khùdɔ'i-towel

Final -o preceded by -ɔ, -i, and -ai>u.

ɔ/o—no'm+to+póbo+po't>no'mbùt-a bundle of thatch

i/o—kiko't>kékù-an indoor game

yaisa+ki+kon>yaiskun-name of a division of Imphal

ai/o—páibóm>páitú-bag

kúno',EM marker of negative imperative mood and súno',EM marker of 'let do' (third person) are changed to kɔ'nù and sɔ'nù respectively in Modern Manipuri.

ɔ'tkúnù>ɔ'tkɔ'nù-(you) don't go (imperative)

ɔ'tsúno'>ɔ'tsɔ'nù-let him/they go

Medial -o preceded by -ɔ, -i, -ɔu and -oi>u.

ɔ/o—sə'gólno+càbo+həwái>sə'gúlái-horse bean

i/o—yì'm,EM+móngbo,EM>i'múng-family

ɔu/o—kɔ'dəúnóngi>kɔ'rínúngi-for what reason

oi/o—láiko'i thóngbo>láiko'i thúngbo-suffering from ring worm

2. 2. 6. 7. Free variation of -o with -u

Initial -o followed by -a, -u, -e and -ao is in free variation with -u.

## 64—Manipuri Grammar

o/a—mórá ~ múrá, LW—a kind of stool  
nóngnáng, EM ~ núngnáng, EM—sky

o/u—póng:hút ~ púng:hút—pincers  
o/e—tóngzég, EM ~ túngzég, EM—boat  
o/u—kóráo ~ kúráo—a kind of tree

Final -o preceded by -ou is also in free variation with -u.  
mothoubong, EM ~ mothoubung, EM—court yard

### 2. 2. 6. 8 o > e

Final -o preceded by -o and -oi > e.

o/o—ko'ktho'n > kokyèt—turban  
oi/o—lo'iróng > lo'iténg—ornament

### 2. 2. 6. 9 Free variation of -o with -e

Initial -o preceded by -a is in free variation with -e.  
lónggà ~ lénggà—contemporary

### 2. 2. 6. 10 -o > oi

Initial -o followed by -o > oi.  
lónkho'ng yètpə > mərə'i yètpə—argue

Final -o preceded by -ə > oi.  
pə'tho'm > pə'ro'i—knot

### 2. 2. 6. 11 -o > ou

Initial -o followed by -u > ou.  
róhú, LW > ro'u—a kind of fish

Medial -o preceded by -i > ou.  
mĩ'róngkho'n > tho'ugo'n—attendance

### 2. 2. 6. 12 -o > oi

Medial -o preceded by -oi > oi.  
wə'ro'm lo'ikho'i lómbo > wə lóibo—settle a matter

### 2.2.6.13 Loss of -o

-o in the unstressed syllables of some BM words is lost due to elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

- ko't—cèpko'tlóng>lóng-a fishing trap  
 túngko't>mótung-afterwards  
 khón—lánbáokhón>lánbáo-report on the battle  
 páotàkkón>páotàk-advice  
 lón—lónlù>lù-a fishing trap  
 lónyĩm>yùm-house  
 móm—mómnu>nùpi-woman  
 nóng—nóngsò'gón>sò'gón-horse  
 óng—khó'nóng>khó'n-a weighing implement  
 nó'u:óng>nó'u-oar  
 só—thúmsóbùng>thúmkhóng-salt well  
 sóng—sòngkíbo>kíbo-fear  
 tón—tón phángnobo>phángnobo-bifurcate  
 wándón>i'wán-a pot for cooking curry  
 thong—lùktho'ng>lùk-meal (honorific)  
 • sò'kpántho'ng>sò'k-countenance

### 2.2.7 oi

#### 2.2.7.1 oi>>o.

Initial -oi followed by -o>>o.  
 cò'itho'ng>motho'ng-next

Final -oi preceded by a>>o.  
 khàlò'i>khónglò'm-ditch  
 mómánhò'i>mómánnobo-companion

Medial -oi preceded by -i>>o  
 cing+ki+loibak>cerbak-edible rocks pieces

#### 2.2.7.2 Free variation of -oi with -o

Initial -oi followed by -a, -i, -e, -o, -oi and -ai is in free variation with -o.

## 66—Manipuri Grammar

oi/a- -oi'hāk ~ yo'hāk-I

loi'káng ~ lo'káng-soot

oi/i- -ho'ri'khágo'k ~ ho'ri'khágo'k-stone apple

lo'iyí ~ lo'yí-line

oi/e- -ho'yèn ~ ho'yèn—a kind of fruit

ko'ithén ~ ko'thén-market

lo'iyéng ~ lo'yéng-tongue

oi/o- -lo'iyón ~ lo'yo'n-stem of young bamboo plant

oi/oi- -co'iro'i,EM ~ co'ro'i,EM-cloth

co'ikho'i ~ co'kho'i-full stop

lo'yo'i ~ lo'yo'i—a mallet for levelling floor

oi/ai- -ho'iyái ~ ho'yái—a kind of fruit

Medial -oi preceded by -o and -i is in free variation with -o.

o/oi- -lo'ngyo'izoi ~ lo'ngyo'zo'i-an implement for washing yarn

i/oi mi,tó'ilo'ibák ~ mo'itro'bák-country of the Meiteis

mi'ro'ibák ~ mo'rbák-foreign country

### 2. 2. 7. 3 oi > a

Final -oi preceded by -e and -oi > a

e/oi- -yèttro'i > yètnà-right hand side

oi/oi- -óitro'i > oínà-left hand side

Medial -oi preceded by -u > a.

u/oi- -khúnkho'iwái > khúndápho'm-area of colonisation

### 2. 2. 7. 4 Free variation of -oi with -a.

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with -a.

ko'nglo'i,EM ~ ko'nglà-capital

### 2. 2. 7. 5 oi > i

Initial -oi followed by -i > i.

kho'ibi'k > khíbi'k-many

Final -oi preceded by -o and -a > i.

o/oi - okábo + cōi > káci`-crook  
 oko`nbo + cōi > kóci-hook  
 khùtno + pàibo + cōi > khúrzi`-rein

a/oi - làk:hōi > cō`hi`-year  
 mábo`i > dári`-varandah

khō'ing, EM-primary infix expressing association is changed into minno in Modern Manipuri.

síkhō'ingbo > síminnoobo-die with a person

## 2. 2. 7. 6 Free variation of -oi with -i

Initial -oi followed by -i, -oi and -ou is in free variation with -i.

oi/i—mō`ithínzōi ~ mi`thínzōi-an implement for taking out burning charcoal

oi/oi—mō`itō'i ~ mi`tō'i-the Meiteis

mōitōiibak ~ mi`trō'ilo`ibāk-the country of the Meiteis

oi/ou—mō`ihō'urón ~ mi`hō'urón-genealogy

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with -i.

khàbo`i, EM ~ khàri`, EM-canal

wángbo`i, EM ~ wángbi`, EM-wine

## 2. 2. 7. 7 oi > u

Initial -oi followed by -u > u.

loikhum > lukhum-portion of the bed towards the head

## 2. 2. 7. 8 oi > o

Medial -oi preceded by -a > o.

làro`i làthùp > o`ro`n othùp secrecy

## 2. 2. 7. 9 oi > ai

Initial -oi followed by -oi > ai.

lo`ikhō'itábo > láikhái tábo emerge a clear picture

Final -oi is preceded by a > ai.

lángmo i > mōmài-face

## 68—Manipuri Grammar

66—

Medial -oi preceded by -a > ai

oi/a- yáko'íbo > yákaíbo-awake  
yáko'irón > yákaíron—a kind of song

oi/i- 2. 2. 7. 10 oi > oi

oi/e- Medial -oi preceded by -o > oi.

lo'ndo'inobo > lo'nkhóibo-speak with improper accent.

oi/o 2. 2. 7. 11 Loss of oi

oi/o. oi in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

oi/a co'i—co'iro'tpo—interval  
co'irèppo > lèppo—stop  
co'iro'inobo > lo'inobo—associate

o/oi co'izénnoobo > cénnobo—involve

i/oi wáico'i > wái—work  
cf. yáiso'ngbo free from work

ho'i—ho'iko'ubo > ko'ubo—short (as of cloth)

2. kha'i—kha'kkha'i > makhok handle

khúngkho'ibo > khóngbo—cry of the bird

e/o khóngkho'iwái > khóngpho'm—site for playing musical instrument  
oi/

lo'i—lèptro'i > lèp—height

u/c mo'i—naómo'i > hináo—canoe  
núngsámo'i > núngsá—sunshine

2. no'i—ngáono'ibo > ngáobo—mad

ko 2. 2. 8 ou

2. 2. 2. 8. 1 ou > o

Medial -ou preceded by -o > o

ti pho'mdo'u ningtho'u > ongo'm otho'u high officials

2. 2. 8. 2. *Free variation of -ou with -o*

Initial -ou followed by -i, -u, -a and -oi is in free variation with -o.

ou/i—louwái ~ lo'wái-forehead

ou/u—lo'ubúk ~ lo'búk-paddy land

ou/o—kho,ubo'm ~ kho'bo'm-throat

lo'uhón ~ lo'hón-young paddy plants for transplantation

ngo'ubóng ~ ngobóng-a kind of shawl

to'uwo't ~ to'wo't-a weaving implement

ou/oi—tho'uwoídobo ~ tho'woídobo-indifferent

Final -ou preceded by -a is in free variation with -o.

wánglo'u.EM ~ wángbo'n,EM-sky

Medial -ou preceded by -e and -oi is in free variation with -o,

o/ou—ténno'uwà ~ téno'wá-parrot

oi/ou—ho'ino'uzóm ~ ho'no'zóm-a kind of fruit

ko'do'u-marker of 'must' may also occur as 'ko'do'.

co'tko'do'uboni ~ co'tko'do'bani-we/you/they must go.

so'kko'do'uboni ~ so'kko'do'bo'bani-we/you/they must sing.

2. 2. 8. 3 *ou > a*

Initial -ou followed by -o > a.

koúro'ng > káro'ng-crook

Initial -ou followed by -o, and a > a.

o/ou - ko'nglo'u > ko'ngphán-dry land

a/ou - cáml'o'u > là-plantain leaf

Medial -ou preceded by -o, -i and -oi > a.

o/ou—mo'ho'u phobo > mo'sà phobo-healthy

i/ou—mi'tko'ri' ho'ubo > mi'tko'ri' kabo-angry with blood red eyes

oi/ou—lo'itso'yo't > yo'tpàk-spade

2. 2. 8. 4 *Free variation of -ou with -a*

Final -ou preceded by -oi is in free variation with -a.

hoíro'u,EM ~ háyá,EM-a hymn sung in Laiharaoba dance

## 70--Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 2. 8 5 -ɔu>i.

Final -ɔu preceded by -ɔ>i.

kə̀nhə̀'u>kən`thi`-spirit

tə̀klò'u>tə̀ksi`-sign of impatient rage

Medial -ɔu preceded by -ɔ>i.

kə̀'də́unóngi>kə̀'rinúnggi-for what reason

ho`ungái,EM primary infix expressing 'worth doing' is changed into ni`ngái in Modern Manipuri.

hàiho`ungái<hàini`ngái-worth saying

yéng:ho`ungái>yéngni`ngái-worth seeing

### 2. 2. 8. 6 -ɔu>u.

Final -ɔu preceded by -o>u.

sónglò'u>sò`rù-bone

Medial -ɔu preceded by -e>u.

lèplò'u sínbo>məhùt sínbo-substitute

### 2 2. 8. 7. Free variation of -ɔu with -u

Initial -ɔu followed by -i is in free variation with -u.

ho`uzi`k ~ húzi`k-now

### 2. 2. 1. 8 -ɔu>o.

Initial -ɔu followed by -e>o.

ho`urén>hórén-after a little while

### 2 . 2 . 8. 9. Free variation of -ɔu with -o.

Initial -ɔu followed by -o and -ai is in free variation with -o.

ɔu/o--pə`uro`n ~ póro`n-bolt

əu/ai--óuráibo ~ óráibo-read



2. 2. 8. 10 *ou>oi*

Final -ou preceded by -o>ci.

mərə'u>mərə'i-argument

Medial -ou preceded by ou>ei.

mərəu ləubə>mərəu lə'ibə-have mental reservation.

lə'unə,EM primary diminutive infix is changed into lə'ino in Modern Manipuri.

ngàngləunəbə>ngànglə'inəbə reddish

2. 2. 8. 11 *ou>ao.*

Initial -ou followed by -o>ao.

sə'umánbə>sáobə-angry

2. 2. 8. 12 *Loss of -ou*

-ou in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

kə'u—kə'utrángko'nə>ko'nə-bend

lə'u—məklə'urén>məmək-son-in-law,

páilə'urén>məbái-elder sister's husband

sənə'urén>məsèn-younger sister's husband

sə'u—kəosəú>kəo-a fishing trap

thə'u—thə'ukáobə>káobə-forget

thə'ukhámbə>khámbə dissuade

thə'unəkpə>nəkpə-hire

thəúthingbə>thingbə-prevent

məbúng thə'u>məbúng-elder brother (a term used by the females)

ti'nthro'k yángdə'u>ti'nthro'k-earth worm

ɣə'u—khəyə'u>kho'ng-leg

2. 2. 9 *ai*

2. 2. 9. 1 *ai>ə*

Initial -ai followed by ə, -e and -əi>ə,

## 72—Manipuri Grammar

ai/o—ngáikho`k>ngo`hàk-for a little while  
sáigo`ng lo`i ho`nbo>sogúntsubo-burglary

ai/o—khàicèt>mocèt-piece

ai/oi—háimo`i>momo`i-tail

Final -ai preceded by -a and -oi>o.

a/ai—càktáwái>càktápho`m-shelter of the birds

i`rànwái>i`rànphe`m-ferry

khúndáwái>khúndápho`m-area of colonisation

oi/ai—khóngkho`wái>khóngpho`m-site for the playing of musical instruments

### 2. 2. 9. 2 ai>a.

Final -ai preceded by -o, -a and -u>a.

o/ai—orài>li`klà-dew

a/ai—thángwái>owáng-north

u/ai—sùmài>sùmàng-court yard

Medial -ai preceded by -i, and -oi>a.

i/ai—i`kàikhàng>kàngkho`n-mosquito net

momi` páibo>pakho`tpo-nervous

oi/ai—sàgo`i ngáiro`ng>sàko`i náto`i-kinsmen

### 2. 2. 9. 3 Free variation with -a.

Initial -ai followed by -o, -e, -o and -ou is in free variation with -a.

ai/o—yáingo`ng ~ yángo`ng-tamaric

ai/e—láiyéng ~ láyéng-medical attendance

láiyengso`ng ~ láyéngso`ng-hospital

yàirèkpo ~ yàrèkpo-halt the night

yàirèkso`ng ~ yàrèkso`ng-restaurant

ai/o—màiyok ~ màyo`k-opposite

màiyoknobi ~ màyo`knobi-assistant midwife

màiyom ~ màyóm-screen

ai/ou—yáingou ~ yángou-a medicinal plant

Medial -ai preceded by -i and -u is in free variation with -a.

i/ai—phingáirùk ~ phingárùk-a covered basket

u/ai—thoraimoca ~ thoramoca-son of a whore

2. 2. 9. 4 ai>i

Final -ai preceded by i>i.

li`klái>li`kli-glass

sínnái>sínná worker

2. 2. 9. 5 ai>u.

Final -ai preceded by .o>u.

khóngnái>khóngdrúm-gourd

2. 2. 9. 6 at>e

Final -ai preceded by -a>e.

tángdái>làkyén-joint

Medial -ai preceded by -o>e

lò'mháibo>lò'mhénbo-obstinate

2. 2. 9. 7 Free variation of -ai with -e

Initial -ai followed by -o is in free variation with -e.

táibo'ngbán ~ téngbán-universe

2. 2. 9. 8 ai>o

Final -ai preceded by -o and -oi>o.

o/ai—nóngmái>nóngdón-sky

oi/ai—lò'ikù loirái>lò'ikùt lò'ito`ng-unlevelled ground

Medial -ai preceded by -o, -i and -oi>o.

o/ai—kò'dáiro'm>kò'dómdo-where

i/ai—niyáipi`>ningtho'u óngbi`-wife of the king

oi/ai—lò'ikù lò'irái>lò'ikùt lò'ito`ng-unlevelled ground

## 74—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 2. 9. 9 *ai > oi*

Final -ai preceded by -o and -a > oi.

o/ai—ci'ngno + kháibo + lo'm > ci'ngkho'i-north-east  
khwàngdo + ngáibo + cáng > khàngo'i-half, middle  
a/ai—wàhài > wàho'i word

Medial -ai preceded by -a and -i > oi.

a/ai—wàhàipo'réng > wàho'ipo'réng-sentence  
i/ai—sibogi + kàidóngpho'mdo + co'nlabo + mi' > sígo'izo'n-- a person  
on the point of death

### 2. 2. 9. 10 *Free variation of -ai with -oi.*

Initial -oi followed by -u is in free variation with -oi.

màimútón,EM ~ moi'mútónsón,EM-a kind of head gear

Medial ai preceded by -o is also in free variation with -oi,

ko'dáidogi ~ ko'idogi-from where  
ko'dáidono ~ ko'idono-where

### 2. 2. 9. 11 *Loss of -ai*

-ai in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

cái—cáico'tpa > co'tpo-wet

hái—háimo'i > momoi-tall

háisi'tpo > si'tpo-sweep

lái—ti'nái > ti'n-worm

ngái—ngáikhàngbo > khàngbo-endure

ngáino'knobo > no'knobo-mock at

tái—sùngdái > mosúng-one fourth

wái—wáiphàtpo > phàtpo-make a passage

wáithúngbo > thúngbo-reach

2. 2. 10 ao

2. 2. 10. 1 ao > a.

Final -ao preceded by -o > a.

osáo > i'ngngà name of a Manipuri month

Medial -ao preceded by -e > a.

pirén táobo > pítábo-shed tear

2. 2. 10. 2 Free variation of -ao with -a

Initial -ao followed by -a, -u, -o, -oi and -ou is in free variation with -a.

ao/a—na'owà, EM ~ náwà, EM-baby

yáowà, EM ~ vawà, EM-voice

ao/u—khaobúnái ~ khábùnái-attendant

ao/o—kháo'on ~ kháwón—a kind of shawl

náohóng ~ náhóng-cloth for comforting baby on the back

páokhón ~ pákhón-errand

páokho'ng ~ pákho'ng-riddle

ao/oi—tháomoi' ~ thángmoi'-lamp

ao/ou—yáoro'u, EM ~ yáro'u, BM-animal

2. 2. 10. 3 ao > u

Final -ao is preceded by i > u.

ci'ngzáo > ci'ngsù:ú-teak

2. 2. 10. 4 ao > ou

Initial -ao followed by -i > ou.

káobi' si'nglo'i > kóubi' si'ngnáng-reed

Final -ao preceded by -o > ou.

tho'ráo > háro'u-grass hopper

Medial -ao preceded by -o, -a and -ai > ou.

a/ao—ngà + oháobo > ngàho'u-a kind of fish

## 76—Manipuri Grammar

tádo+acáobo>táco'u-elder brother

thàng+acáobo>thàngzo'u-a kind of dao

a/ao—mài+cáobo+mi>màico'u, EM-scholar

### 2. 2. 10. 5 Free variation of -ao with -ou

Initial -ao followed by -e is in free variation with -ou.

káoéng ~ ko'uzéng-grass hopper

Final -ao preceded by -u is also in free variation with -ou.

sùknáo sóináó, EM ~ sùkno'u sóino'u, EM-offspring

### 2. 2. 10. 6 ao>ui

Initial -ao followed by -a>ui.

háokàp>húi-a measure of about eight inches

### 2. 2. 10. 7 Loss of -ao

-ao in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

háó—tənháo>tə'n-bread

páo—páohə'ngbo>hə'ngbo-ask

páono'knobo>no'knobo-mock at

páothémbo>thémbo-persuade

páoyábo>yábo-agree

### 2. 2. 11 -oi

#### 2. 2. 11. 1 oi>>o

Final -oi preceded by -a and -e>o.

a/oi—pángso'i>pánggo'n-strength

e/oi—téno'i>ténowà-parrot

#### 2. 2. 11. 2 oi>a

Initial -oi followed by -oi>a.

ko'izo'i>kàngzo'i-hockey stick

Final -oi preceded by -a>a.

ngàto`i>ngò`khà-a kind of fish

Medial -oi preceded by -ɔ>a.

phò`mmóimi`t>phò`mbán-coronation

2. 2. 11. 3. *Free variation of -oi with -a.*

Initial -oi followed by -ou is in free variation with -a.

hoirou,EM ~ naya,EM-a hymn sung in the Laiharaoba dance.

2. 2. 11. 4 *oi>i*

Initial -oi followed by -a>i.

lo`iyá to`myá>ci`ngyá to`myá-areas near the hills and the valley

Final -oi preceded by -ɔ, -a and -o>i.

ɔ/oi—lo`mlo`i>lo`mbi`-road

a/oi—lánlo`i>lánmi`-soldier

o/oi—kónggói>kísi-knot

2. 2. 11. 5 *oi>u*

Final -oi preceded by -ɔ>u.

lo`mlo`i>morùp friend

Medial -oi preceded by -ɔ>u.

moko`i phàbo>mopùm phabo-attain full growth

2. 2. 11. 6 *Free variation of -oi with -u*

Final -oi preceded by -a is in free variation with u.

pàklo`i,EM ~ pàktù,EM-turban

2. 2. 11. 7 *oi>e*

Final -oi preceded by -i>e,

phíro`i>phízèt-dress

Medial oi preceded by -ɔ and -ai>e.

ɔ/yi—lo`m thóibo>lo`m hénbo-obstinate

## 78—Manipuri Grammar

ai/oi—láithóizínlo`kpo>láiná hénzínbo-be in the critical stage of illness

### 2. 2. 11. 8 oi>o

Medial -oi preceded by -o, -o and -oi>o.

o/oi—sə`góihi`dák>sə`gónhi`dák-a medicinal plant

o/oi—sə`gón kho`nggóinabo>sə`góntóngbo-to ride horse

oi/oi—lo`iko`irén>kónnúng-royal palace

### 2. 2. 11. 9. Free variation of -oi with -o

Initial -oi followed by -a, -i, and -u is in free variation with -o.

oi/a—ho`iyá,EM ~ ho`yá,EM-acceptance

lo`iyáro`m ~ lo`yáro`m-areas of Manipur near the hills in the west

oi/i—khóihí` ~ khóihí`-honey

nóiningkhói ~ nóngningkhói-pheasant

oi/u—khóiyùm,EM ~ khóyùm,EM-god

lo`iyùmló`i ~ lo`yùmló`i-a kind of flower

lo`iyùmbó ~ lo`yùmbó,EM-husband

### 2. 2. 11. 10 oi>>oi

Initial -oi followed by -ou>>oi.

hóihó`u>sə`ihó`u-opening song

### 2. 2. 11. 11 oi>ai

Final -oi preceded by -i>ai.

phágí zə`gói<phágí zúgái-joke

Medial -oi preceded by -u and -e>ai.

u/oi—núngói sínóibo>núngái yáiphobo-prosperous

e/oi—sénkóibo>i`káibo-shame



**2. 2. 11. 12 Free variation of -oi with -ai**

Initial -oi followed by -ɔ, and -i, is in free variation with -ai.

oi/ɔ - moibo,EM ~ ɔmaibo,EM-priest

oi/i - moibi,EM ~ ɔmaibi,EM-priestess

**2. 2. 11. 13 Loss of -oi**

-oi in the unstressed syllables of some EM words is lost due to the elision of these syllables. Such elided syllables are shown below :—

hói—hóisèmbɔ>sèmbɔ-mend

hóiyáɔ>yáɔ-agree

ko`i—lùkko`i>lùk-meal (honorific)

pùnggo`irén>pùng-mound

sə`kko`i>sə`k-countenance

thóiko`ibo>thóibo-superior

kho`i -kho`isáobo>sáobo-angry

lo`i—yómlo`i>məyám-many

mói - móimi`t>mi`t-eye

sónmóibo>sónbo-praise

thói—tházɔthóibo>tházɔbo-belleve

wángthóibo>wangbo-high

yo i—yo`icanbo>cánbo-kind

yo`innobo>cánnobo-intimate

**2. 2. 12 ui**

**2. 2. 12. 1 ui>ɔ**

Initial -ui followed by -ai>ɔ.

həiyái>məyái-impact

Final -ui preceded by -i>ɔ.

li`hùi>mori`-link

## 80—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 2. 12. 2 *Free variation of -ui with -oi.*

Initial -ui followed by -i is in free variation with -oi.

púiding,EM ~ phóiding,EM-tkatch

### 2. 2. 12. 3 *Loss of ui.*

-ui in phúi, an unstressed syllable of some EM words is lost due to the elision of such syllable.

i`nphúi>i`n-fishing net

lùphúi>lù-a fishing trap

## 2. 3 INTERNAL MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS

Vowels in some loan words undergo morphophonemic changes in accordance with the rules governing these changes of the words in the native words. Such loan words are from the NIA languages.

### 2. 3. 1 ɔ

#### 2. 3. 1. 1 a>ɔ

Initial -a followed by -a, -i, -e and -o>ɔ.

a/a—badam>bɔ'dám-almonn

cangdal>cɔ'ndál-a chandala

gangza>gɔ'nzá-hemp

a/i—almirah>ɔ'mbári

a/e—flannel>phɔ'láli

a/o—andolon>ɔndolon-agitation

Final -a preceded by -ɔ>ɔ.

ɔmca>cámɔ'c-spoon

Medial -a preceded by -ɔ and -a>ɔ.

ɔ/a—khejana>kházɔ'ná-revenue

mosala>musola-spices

a/a—aratrik>árɔ'ti-waving of lights before a deity

2.3.1.2. *i* > *ɔ*

Final -i preceded by -a and -u > *ɔ*.

a/i—jati > zàt-people

u/i—musti > mùt-handful

2.3.1.3 *u* > *ɔ*

Final -u preceded by -a > *ɔ*.

jamun > zám black berry

Medial -u preceded by -ɔ, and -a > *u*.

ɔ/u—nomuna > nómoná-model

somudrɔ > somodru-sea

a/u—kanungo > káno'ngú-a revenue officer

2.3.1.4 *o* > *ɔ*

Initial -o followed by -a > *ɔ*.

sona > sɔ'ná-gold

2.3.2 *a*

2.3.2.1 *ɔ* > *a*

Initial -ɔ followed by -ɔ and -a > *a*.

ɔ/ɔ--ɔcar > ácar-pickle

ortho > áρθó-meaning

koɔrni > káti-scissors

khɔjana > kházo'ná-revenue

mɔkhɔn > mákhón-butter

pɔngkho > pángkhá-fan

ɔ/a--ɔna > áná-a coin

cɔkka > cákà-wheel

gɔdha > gádhá-ass

jɔgah > zágá-place

kolanɔmɔk > kálánímùk-a kind of rock sait

koɔtari > kátári-a kind of knife

rɔnda > rámdár-plane

## ৯২—Manipuri Grammar

Initial -o followed by -i, -u and -o > a.

o/i—omrito > amrito'-nectr

obir > ábér-a kind of red powder

omin > ámin-a revenue officer

bogica > bágán tea estate

bonsi > bási-flute

o/u—olu > álú-potátto

o/o—dōroga > dárúká-police

Final -o preceded by -o > a.

bondhok > bō'ndhán-mortgage

pongkho > pángkhá-fan

Medial -o preceded by -o, -u and -e > æ.

o/o—olkōtora > o'mpáká-betumen

bondh govi > bō'ndhán kóbí-cabbage

u/o kundo', LW + loi > kúndálo'i-a kind of flower

c/o—tejpotta > tézbāt-bay leaf

### 2. 3. 2. 2. i > a

Final -i preceded by -o, -u and -o > a.

o/i—dhomki > dho'mká-threat

u/i—muli > múlá-a kind of edible root

truti > túká-fault

o/i—longoti > léngótá-dress of the wrestler

moti > mùktá-jewel

Medial -i preceded by -o and -a > a.

o/i—bogica > bágán-tea estate

a/i—almirah > ombari

### 2. 3. 2. 3 u > a

Initial -u followed by -a and -u > a.

u/a—guvak > kwá-betel nut

u/u—hujur > házúr-sire

2. 3. 2. 4 e > a

Initial -e followed by -a > a.

e/a—chhena > sáná-a milk food

Medial -e preceded by i > a.

thikedar > thikádár-contractor

2 3. 2. 5 o > a

Initial -o followed by -o > a.

doctor > dáktór

Final -o preceded by i > a.

i—rikshaw > ri`ksà

Medial -o preceded by -a > a.

tarpoline > tripál

2. 3. 3 i

2. 3. 3. 1 o > i

Initial -o followed by -a, -i and -e > i.

o/a—nosa > nísá-intoxication

o/i—jónjir > zinzúr-a kind of gold necklace

o/e jolebi > zilibi-a kind of sweet meat

Medial -o preceded by -o, -a, -i and -u > i.

o/o—kotorni > káti-scissors

mōndora > mō'ndilá-a kind of cymbal

tabla > tōpila-small tambourine

a/o—kolanomok > kálánimùk-a kind of rock salt

salgram > sáligrám-a sacred stone worshipped by the Hindus.

i/o—firangi > firingi-Englishman

u/o—jurmana > zóri-fine

puron, LW + po > púrifo-multiplication

## 84—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 3. 3. 2 *a>i*

Initial -a followed by -a and -o>i.

a/a—chbata>sátin-umbrella

a/o—tarpoline>tripal

Final -a preceded by -o, -i, -u and -o>i.

o/a—jurmana>zorí-fine

i/a—almirah>o'mbári

sikka>sikí-a coin worth twenty five paise

u/a—khuta>khúti-post

o/a—jhola>zhúli-begging bowl

### 2. 3. 3. 3 *e>i*

Final -e preceded by -a>i

flannel>pho'láli

Medial -e preceded by -e>i.

jolebi>zilibí-a kind of sweet meat

Initial -e followed by -a is in the free variation with -i.

kéráni ~ kiráni-clerk

### 2. 3. 3. 4 *-o>i*

Initial -o followed by -a>i.

kho:a>khírsá-a milk food

Medial -o preceded by -u>i.

purohit>púrit-priest

### 2. 3. 3. 5 *Some sources of -i*

-i is also obtained from the following words :—

inch>inci

khan>khóni-mine

khar>khó'ri-alkaline

pokhōr>púkhri-pond,

2. 3. 4 u

2. 3. 4. 1 o > u

Initial -o followed by -o, -a and -u > u.

o/o — grōhōn > gūrōn-eclipse

o/a — mōsala > mūsō'lá-spices

prōbal > pūhān-coral

o/u — nōgun > lūgūn-sacred thread worn by the Hindus

Final -o preceded by -o, and -u > u.

o/o — gōngdhōk > kō'ntrūk-sulphur

kōlanōmōk > kālānīmūk-a kind of rock salt

u/c — hukmō > hūkūm-order

sōmudrō > sō'mō'drū-sea

Medial -o preceded by -o, -i -u and -e > u.

o/o — khōnjōri > khō'nzūri-a kind of drum

kōsttōri > kō'sturi-musk

i/o — bījōli > bīzuli-electricity

u/c — gudōri > gūdūli-a kind of quilt

sūrōngō > sūrūng-tunnel

e/o — kētōki > kētūki-a kind of flower

2. 3. 4. 2. a > u

Final -a preceded by -u > u.

cuna > sūnū-lime

Medial -a preceded by -o > u.

mōhōwōt > mō:wut-person in charge of elephant

2. 3. 4 3 i > u

Initial -i followed by -i > u.

ḍibiya > ūbīyā-a small vessel for keeping tobacco

Final -i preceded by -o and -i > u.

o/i — jōnjir > zinzūr-a kind of gold necklace

i/i — lici > lécū-a kind of fruit

## 86--Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 3. 4. 4 o>u

Initial -o followed by -c, -a and -i>u.

o/c—dholok>dhúlo`p-a kind of drum

mohar>múhór-a measure of one tola of gold

pokhori>púkhri-pond

o/a—godam>gúdam godown

joda>zúra-pair

jhola>zhúli-begging bowl

o/i—goli>gúli-globule

mosi>múzi-cobbler

moti>múkta-jewel

topi>túpi-cap

Initial -o followed by -a is in free variation with -u.

mórá ~ múra-a kind of stool

Final and Medial -o preceded by -o>u.

doroga>dárúka-police

jogtmohon>zog'múhón-a shed attached to the mandab

rosgola>rósgúlá-a kind of sweet meat

### 2. 3. 5 e

#### 2. 3. 5. 1 o>e

Initial -o followed by -o and i>e.

o/o—kshottriya>khétri-a kshatriya

khétrimoyum-name of a Manipuri family

o/i—longoti>léngótá-dress of a wrestler

#### 2. 3. 5. 2 a>e

Initial -a followed by a>e.

byapar>bépár-trade

byabhar>bébhár-good behaviour



2 3.5.3 *i > e*

Initial -i followed by -o, -a, -i and -u > e.

i/o khicori > khécí-a kind of cooked rice.

i/a—divali > dewáli-a Hindu festival

i/i—biri > bérí-a kind of cigarette

bhindi > bhélo'ndri lady's finger

lici > lécú-a kind of fruit

i/u—bigun > bénggún-bugle

Final -i preceded by -o and -a > e.

o/i—obir > ábér-a kind of red powder

kəmiŋ > kə'méz-shirt

təsbir > tə'sbér-photo

aŋi--napit > nápét-barber

2 3.5.4 *Free variation of -i with -e*

Initial -i followed by -a is in free variation with e.

hirá ~ hérá-diamond

kiráni ~ kéráni-clerk

2 3.6 -o

2.3.6.1 *o > o*

Initial -o followed by -o and -a > o.

o/c—omor > ómór-immortality

kəlom > kólóm-pen

nərok > nórók-hell

sərok > sórók road

tələb > tólo`p-salary

o/a—dosa > dósá-critical juncture

jəta > zótá-matted hair

kəmla > kómlá-orange

kortal > kórtál-cymbal

səva > sóbhá>assembly

təsla > tóslá-a kind of utensil

təmal > tómál-a kind of tree

Initial -o followed by -i, -u and -o > o.

o/i—bōndi > bōndi-prisoner

bōri > bōri—small lump of powdered pulse

dōkshina > dōkshinā—money given to the participants in a religious function

sōhi > sōi—signature

o/u—bōkul > bōkúl—a kind of flower

mōsuri > mōsóri—a kind of pulse

nōmuna > nōmō'nā—model

o/o—rōsgola > rōsgúlá—a kind of sweet meat

Final -o preceded by -o and -a > o.

o/o jōnggol > zō'nggón—forest

kōngbōl > kō'mpór—blanket

mōkshōn > mākshón—butter

mōnggol > mōnggol—auspiciousness

mōpdōp > mōpdōp—an open hall near the temple

ōmōr > ōmór—immortality

cōrōn > cōrón—leg

kōlōm > kólóm—pen

mōrhōm > mólóm—ointment

nōrōk > nōrō'k—hell

tōlōb > tólō'p—salary

a/o—brahmōn < bāmón—a Brahmin

cāmōr > cāmōr—a fan made of yak tail

gājōr > gājór—carrot

sāsōn > sāsón—administration

sīngāsōn > sīngásón—throne

Final -o preceded by -i, -u, e, 'o and oi > o.

i/o—kīrtōn > kirtón—a samkirtōn

mīrca > mōrō'k—chilli

nīyōm > nīyóm—rule

u/c—kūndō > kúndó—a kind of flower

sūnyō > súinó—zero

ɕ/ɔ—bɕsɔn>bɛ́sɔn-powdered pulse

resɔm>rɛ́sɔm-velvet

sebɔk>sébo`k-disciple

o/ɔ—dholɔk>dhulo`p-a kind of drum

mohɔr>múhór-a measure of one tola of gold

ɔi/ɔ—ɔinɔk>áno`p-spectacles

ɔ in some monosyllabic words > o.

bɔn>bón-forest

bɔr>bór-boon

kɔl>kón-machine

mɔn>món-mind

thɔg>tho`k-deceit

## 2. 3. 6. 2 a>o

Final -a preceded by -e>o.

bɛlna>bélón-a pastery roller

-a in some monosyllabic words > o.

khan>khóní mine

sradh>sóràt-saradha ceremony

## 2. 3. 6. 3. i>o.

Initial -i followed by -ɔ>o.

mirca>móro`k-chilli

Final -i preceded by -a>o.

akil>ákól-intelligence

nabalig>nábálo`k-mirror

## 2. 3. 6. 4 u>o

Initial -u followed by -a and -i>o.

u/a—dhura>dhórá-axle

jurmana>zóri-fine

u/l—chhuri>sóri-knife

Final -u preceded by -a>o.

sabun>sápôn-soap

## 90 – Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 3 6. 5 $e > o$ .

Medial -e preceded by -ə > o.

korela > káron – a kind of fruit

## 2. 4 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES IN THE CONSONANTS

Consonants form initial phonemes of the overwhelming majority of Manipuri syllables. Such initial consonants undergo many morphophonemic changes in the compound words. Unspirated voiceless stops and nasals form the final phonemes of a large number of Manipuri syllables. Such final consonants also undergo some important changes.

### 2. 4. 1 *Unspirated voiceless stops in syllable initial position*

#### 2. 4. 1. 1 *Voicing of unspirated voiceless stops.*

Unspirated voiceless stops are voiced in the unstressed syllables of the compound words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

$k > g$

hi + kàbo + sà'ng > hígàsà'ng – boat-house

kho'ng + kàobo + məwóng > kho'nggào – kick

nónə + kə'ubo + úcək > nónggə'ubi – pied cuckoo

sàgi + kàj > sà'gàj – a raised platform

sibəgi + kə'ido + cə'nlobə + mi' > sígə'izo'n – a sickly person

cə'i + ə + kə'nbo > cə'gə' – hook

lò'n + tho'mbo + kə'i > lò'n:go'i – treasure

sə'ng + ə + koibo > sə'nggo'i – an out house

thàng + ə + kə'nbo > thànggo'n – sickle

$p > b$

kháo + pubə + mənáj > kháobúnáj – attendant

thá + pánbo + númít > thábán – date

orəppədo + páiba + khútlái > arəmbái – a weapon of Manipuri cavalry

nə'mdo + póbo + pə't > nə'mbó – luggage

lò'udo + nə'mbo + pə'n > lò'nə'mbán – embarkment

mùk + càb + po't > mùkcàbi`-blotting paper  
tho'ugi + m + pú > tho'ubú -owner

t > d

kho`ng + táb + maphom > kho`ngdápho'm-shelter  
khùn + tó'mb + mawóng > khúdo'm-example  
nóngdónno + tó'mb + mawóng > nóngdo'm-fate  
po`nno + túppo + motáng > po`ndúp-chapter  
ténno + tóngb + po't > téndóng-quiver  
sén + otóngb + > séndóng-profit  
sén + otónb + > séndón-debt  
thánin:gi + m + túng > nindúng-waning moon

Voiceless unaspirated stops are also voiced in the initial unstressed syllables of a few compound words.

k > g

gúnzá --front tug of dhoti ; gúrung-upturn of the cart ; géhóri-a kind of fruit

p > b

hági--a kind of disease · bèrà-objection ; bo`rà-gunny bag ; bórói-plum.

t > d

dári-verandah ; dúhon-person in charge of water supply ; dó-lán-brick building ; dóná—a water vessel made of plantain leaf ; dósi`-wick

## 2 4 1. 2. Free variation of unaspirated voiceless stops with unaspirated voiced stops

Unaspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiced stops in some EM words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k ~ g

kángkə't ~ kánggo't-tax

## 92—Manipuri Grammar

khə'mkón ~ khə'mgón-wind

móikái ~ móigái-lip

únkói ~ ún:gói-mind

p ~ b

i'pingngà ~ i'bingngà-both of us

lɔ'ipɔ'n ~ láibár-ambassador

lói'pí ~ lóbi'-hill

múngbi ~ múngbi'-scasamum

únpi ~ unbi-mind

t ~ d

khùtin ~ khùdin-example

lóitám ~ lóidám-month

námtú > námdú-river

phə'mténgbo ~ phə'mdéngbo-sit

Initial -k and -p are in free variation with -g and -b respectively in some Modern Manipuri words when they are preceded by the vowels.

k ~ m

hə'ikrú ~ hə'igrú myrobalan

hə'ikréng ~ hə'igréng-a kind of tree

màiko'i ~ màigo'i-direction

p ~ b

hàpú ~ hàbú-rubbish

lɔ'ipák ~ lɔ'ibák-earth

úpák ~ úbák wood plank

Initial -k and -p are also in free variation with -g and -b respectively in the first syllables of a few Modern Manipuri words.

k ~ g

kíhóm ~ gíhóm-pine apple

kúdám ~ gúdám-button

p~b

pártin~bártin-bucket

pàzí~bàzí-father

### 2. 4. 1. 3 *Aspiration of unaspirated voiceless stops*

Unaspirated voiceless stops are aspirated in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k>kh

pàmbi`+okónb>pàkhón-a spice plant

yi`m,EM+kónb>ló`m>i`ngkhón-homestead land

p>ph

púnúng>phùrit-shirt

sipahi,LW>síphái-soldier

cf., súnúsíphái-name of a village

Unaspirated voiceless stops are aspirated in the verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of the primary infixes and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the vowels and consonants other than the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s.

k>kh

cóng+kò`t+p>cóngkhò`tp> jump up

kò`n+kò`t+p>kò`nkhò`tp> strong (emphatic)

kùp+kò`t+p>kùpkhò`tp>-make up

p>ph

cà+pàt+p>càphàtp>-be sceptic

ká+pàt+p>káphàtp>-break open

t>dh

cong+tok+p>conghokp> jump out

in+tok+p>inthokp> excommunicate

### 2. 4. 1. 4 *Some changes in unaspirated voiceless stops*

2. 4. 1. 4. 1 *k*

2. 4. 1. 4. 1. 1 *k>p*

*k>p* in a word when -*k* is preceded by -*ng*  
*téngko`k>téngpák-clod*

2. 4. 1. 4. 1. 2 *k>t*

*k>t* in a few words when -*k* is followed by the vowels.  
*kerosine, LW>térsing*  
*kónggài>to`ngkhài half*

2. 4. 1. 4. 2 *p*

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 1 *p>k*

*p>k* in a few words when -*p* is preceded by -*a* and -*k*.  
*ná:pà>ná:kóng-car*  
*nàkpán>nàkko`n-side*

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 2

*p>kh* in a word when -*p* is followed by -*u*.  
*púrúmbə>khúrúmbə-bow down*

2. 4. 1. 4. 2. 3 *Gemination of -p*

-*p* preceded by -*t* may remain with or without -*t* or be geminated causing elision of -*t*.

*khùtpài~khùtpài~khùppài-almnac*  
*khùtpú~khùtpú~khùppú-group*  
*pótpá~po`pá~po`ppá pair*  
*po`tpáng~po`páng~po`ppáng-donation*  
*yètpù~yèpù~yèppù-a weaving implement*

2. 4. 1. 4. 3 *t*

2. 4. 1. 4. 3. 1 *t>kh*

*t>kh* in a few words when -*t* is preceded by -*a* and -*u*.



lútúng>lúkbo'm-occiput  
ngátói>ngo`khà-a kind of fish

2. 4. 1. 3. 2 t>ph

t>ph in a word when it is preceded by -p.  
kàptingcà>kàkpho'i-leech

2. 4. 1. 5 Retention of unaspirated voiceless stops

Unaspirated voiceless stops remain in the stressed syllables of the compound words even if they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

k—ho`iko`k-water chest nut ; ho`ikón-orchard ; lo`lkón-garden ;  
láikùp-chicken-pox  
p—kho`ngpàk-foot ; lo`ipung-mound ; láipo`k-genius ; nùpà—  
man ; nùpi`-woman  
t—co`ito`p-affix ; ho`itùp-apple ; mi`to`p stranger ; so`ngto`p-por-  
tico ; thàngtùp-date palm

Unaspirated voiceless stops remain when they are preceded by the same consonants,

k—khùtkàppi-fillip ; li`kkón-cowry ; mi`tkùp-moment ; pùkko`i-  
store ;  
p—hi`kpi`-louse ; khùtpài-almanac ; khùtpú-group ; sèkpi-bat  
t—khùttùm-fist ; li`kto`m-a kind of necklace ; mùktábi`-fountain  
pen ; yèttùm-needle.

2. 4. 2 Unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position

Unaspirated voiceless stops form final phonemes of some syllables

final -k

cak-cooked rice ; ko`k-head ; lo`k-cough ; po`k-grey hair ;  
to`k-a wooden mallet

final -p

cùp-peg ; hùp-a kind of grass ; kàp-span ; pho`p-a raised  
platform ; tho`p-brain

**final -t**

khùt-hand; mi't-eye; po't-thing; ùt-ash; yo't-iron

**2. 4. 2. 1 Final -k**

**2. 4. 2. 1 Final  $k > p$**

Final - $k > p$  in some words when - $k$  is preceded by the vowels in the preceding syllables.

co'irák+pi'bó+lo'iso'ng>co'iráp, EM-the highest appellate court  
dholok, LW>dhúlo`p-a kind of drum

khùtno+ták+pó+cáng>khùdáp-handful

pó+ták+pó+mowóng>pótháp-rule

**2. 4. 2. 1. 2 Free variation of final  $k$  with - $p$**

Final - $k$  is in free variation with - $p$  in some words when it occurs in the last syllables of such words.

odúk~odúp-that much

osúk~osúp-this much

motho`k~motho`p-full growth

núngpo`k~núngpo`p-a kind of disease

phàdo`k~phàdo`p-prisoner

Final - $k$  is also in free variation with - $o$  in a word when - $k$  is followed by - $t$  in the last syllable of such word.

sùktù~sùptù-a beam resting on the posts of the house

**2. 4. 2. 2 Final - $p$**

**2. 4. 2. 2. 1 Final - $p > k$ .**

Final - $p > k$  in the word when it is followed by - $t$  in medial syllable of such word.

kàptíngcà>kàkpho'i-leech

**2. 4. 2. 2. 2 Final - $p > t$**

Final - $p > t$  in a word when - $p$  is followed by the same consonant in the last syllables of such word,

khómú cə̀pə>khámén cə̀tpə-a kind of finely embroidered dhoti.

#### 2. 4. 2. 2. 3 *Free variation of final -p with -m*

Final -p is in free variation with -m in a few words when it is followed by -l in the last syllables of such words.

kòplāk~kòmlāk-opposite side of the knee.

sùplāk~sùmlāk-multiplication table

#### 2. 4. 2. 3. *Final -t.*

##### 2. 4. 2. 3. 1 *Final t>r*

Final -t>r in some words when it is followed by -n.

cə̀t+nə+púngbə+hə̀i>cə̀rphón-a kind of fruit

khùt+nə+pàibə+cə̀i>khürzi-rein

khòt+nə+pə+cə̀i>khorzòi-slate pencil

khòt+nə+pə+məpāk+khòrbāk-slate

kòt+kúmbə+phù>kòrphù-a kind of utensil

##### 2. 4. 2. 3. 2 *Creation of -l glide*

Final -t creates -l glide in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when it occurs as the final phoneme of the verb root and is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

lìt+i>lìtlì-*we/you/they wear*

sìt+i>sìtlì-*we/you/they sweep*

sòt+o>sotlo-(*you*) *borrow (imperative)*

#### 2. 4. 2. 4 *Gemination of unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position.*

##### 2. 4. 2. 4. 1 *Gemination of final -k*

Final -k is geminated in some words when it is followed by -l and -n.

## 98.-Manipuri Grammar

pik+náo>pi'kkó'náo-a small baby  
dek,LW+na>tèkná-a kind of utensil  
tukna,LW>tùkko'ná-a kind of utensil  
thùk+lá>thùkkolá-an insignificant person

### 2. 4. 2. 4. 2 *Gemination of final -p*

Final -p may remain or be geminated in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when it is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

kàp+i'>kàp:i' ~kàppi'-we/you/they shoot  
kùp+i'>kùp:i' ~kùppi'-we/you/they cover  
lèp+o'>lèp:o' ~lèppo'-(you) stand (imperative)

### 2. 4. 2. 5 *Retention or elision of unaspirated voiceless stops syllable final position*

#### 2. 4. 2. 5. 1 *Retention or elision of final -k*

Final -k may remain or be elided when it is followed by -k and -kh.

**k+k**

cèkkón~cèkón-brick field  
li'kkon~li'kón-cowry  
ko'kkó'n~ko'ko'n-a kind of tree  
thàkko'n~thàko'n-canopy

**k+kh**

càkkhúm~càkhúm-kitchen  
lùkkhàk~lùkhàk-remnant of food taken  
o'kkhi'~o'khi'-dandruff  
o'kkhàk~o'khàk-a little  
o'kkhró'u~o'khró'u-a kind of knot

2. 4. 2. 5. 2 *Retention or elision of final -p.*

Final -p may remain or be elided when it is followed by the same consonant.

sèkpi~sèpi`-a kind of button

yèppú~yèpú-a weaving implement

2. 4 2. 5. 3 *Retention or elision of final -t*

Final -t may remain or be elided when it is followed by the unaspirated voiceless stops, -th and -c.

t+k

khùtkàppi`...khùkáppi`-fillip

mi`tkop ... mi`kòp-wink

mi`tkùp...mi`kùp-moment

t+p

khùtpú...khùpú...khùppú-group

po`tpá...po`pá ...po`ppá-pair

po`tpáng...po`páng...po`ppáng-donation

t+t

khùttùm...khùtùni-fist

o`ttí...o`tí-deceit

pèttúwà...pètúwà-an insignificant fellow

t+th

mi`tho`u...mi`tho`ù-sty

po`tthí...po`thí-plan

po`ttho`k...po`tho`k-product

t+c

ko`tci`...ko`ci`...ko`cci`-hook

yo`tco`i...yo`co`i...yo`cco`i-iron rode

yo`tcàbi`...yo`càbi...yo`ccàbi`-magnet

**2. 4. 2. 6 Retention of unaspirated voiceless stops in syllable final position**

An unaspirated voiceless stop remains in the syllable final position when it is followed by the same consonant which is the initial phoneme of the formative affixes.

**k+k**

càk+kə>càkkə-with the cooked rice

mùk+kúmno>mùkkúmno-like ink

sə`k+kè>sə`kkè-let us sing

**p+p**

kàp+pə>kàppə-shoot

lèp+pi`+i>lèppi`-you/they stand (honorific)

tho`p+pú>tho`ppú-the brain (accusative)

**t+t**

khùt+tə>khùtto-to the hand

mi`t+təgi>mi`tto<sub>g</sub>i-from the eye

sèt+tə`k+pə>sètto`kpə-sétto`kpə-tear up

**2. 4. 3 Aspirated voiceless stops**

**2. 4. 3. 1 Deaspiration of aspirated voiceless stops**

Aspirated voiceless stops are deaspirated in a few words when they are preceded by vowels and nasals.

**kh>k**

dərkəst,LW>də`rkəs-petition

ko`ktə+khə`nbə+pəmbi`>ko`kkə`n-a kind of tree

lakh,LW>lək

lāngkhóngzi`>ki`si`-knot

tkə`ktə+khə`nbə+pə`t>thəko`n screen

**ph>p**

həfta,LW>həpta-week

phánzo hə`ibə>páibə hə`ibə-skilful in flying

th>t

osthi, LW>asti-a ceremony before the saradha ceremony  
u'tki+mo+thi'>u'tti'-alkaline

-kh and -th are deaspirated in the verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of some monosyllabic primary infixes and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s and ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops.

kh>k

pho'k+khài+pɔ>pho'kkàibɔ-break open  
sat+khài+pɔ>sàtkàibɔ-blossom  
sik+khài+pɔ>si'kkàibɔ-scratch

th>t

hèk+tho't+pɔ>hèkto'tpɔ-pluck  
phùk+tho't+pɔ>phùkto'tpɔ-root out  
sèt+tho't+pɔ>sètto'tpɔ-tear up

#### 2. 4. 3. 2 Free variation of aspirated voiceless stops.

Aspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiceless stops in a few words when they occur as the initial phonemes of the first syllables of such words.

kh~k

khò'idén~kò'ithén-market  
khángsi~kángsi-bell

ph~p

phoiding, EM~puiding, EM thatch

th~t

mohàktho'kto~mohàkto'kto-during one's life time  
so'náhàktho'kto~so'náhàkto'kto-during the reign of the king

## 102—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 4 3. 2. 2 *Free variation of ph with -th*

-ph is in free variation with -th in a word when it occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllables of such word and is followed by -a.

pho'izúp~tho'izúp-a shawl used in sleeping

### 2. 4. 3. 3 *Voicing of aspirated voiceless stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are voiced in some words when they occur as the initial phonemes of the first unstressed syllables of such words.

kh>gh

ghi-cyst ; ghúmtí-a canopy on the bullock cart ; ghutí-a kind of kite ; ghór-enthusiasm

ph>bh

bháló-bravo ; bhúm,EM-a ball made of sand ; bhũgo'tí-typhoid fever

th>dh

dhátú-a kind of disease ; dhúmén-a performance by the drummers.  
dhútù-sound of blowing conch

### 2. 4. 3. 4 *Deaspiration and voicing of aspirated voiceless stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are deaspirated and voiced in some words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh>g

phí+gi+kháo>phígáo-a kind of bag

so'n+ki+khóm>so'nggóm-milk

sén+ki+káo>sénggáo-purse

thábu+khàibo+mo'wóng>tho'gài-measure of two cubits

khóm+kho'kpo+láiná>khómgo`klái-ricket

mì'róngkho'n>tho'ugón-attendance on the high officials

si'ng+khàirobo+pàklobo+zàt>si'nggàibàk-fuel of good quantity



**ph>b**

otángbo + phán>tàngbo'n-seat

níngtho'uno—pho'mbo + phán>pho'mbán-throne

sàphà>pi'bà-son

**th>d**

hí + thénbo + mapho'm>hícén-wharf

kho`ngdo + thábo + po't>khùdá-seat

lò'mmàthèt>lòmdón-suburb

phàrogo + tho`k:hó'ndobo + mi`>phàd`ok-prisoner

phi + thàdo`klobbo + ini`>pho'idà-eunuch

phigi + mo + thi`>pho'di`-rags

tho'u + thábo + mowóng>tho'udá-duty

tórádo + chúm + thóibo + mōsi`ng>tóráhúmdói-thirteen

nóngtho'u>nóngdón sky

sén + thóiro`kpo + cáng>séndói-interest on the invested capital

-kh and -ph are deaspirated and voiced in the emphatic verbal forms when they occur as the initial phonemes of some monosyllabic emphasisers and are preceded by the verb roots beginning with the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s and ending with the vowels and nasals.

**kh>g**

sú + khài + po>súgàibo-pound

thú + khài + po>thúgàibo-break

théng + khài + po>thénggàibo-dash against

**th>d**

phú + tho't + po>phúdo'tpo-beat

sò'm + tho't + po>sòmdo'tpo-make short

sú + thèk + po>súdèkpo-pound

## 2. 4. 3. 5 Deaspiration and voicing or voicing of aspirated voiceless stops

Aspirated voiceless stops may be deaspirated and voiced or voiced in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

**kh > g, gh**

cíngkhá > zlnggá'...zínggho'-corrugated iron sheet

móséngkhá > mósínggá...mósíngghá-bile

síngkháro'i > sínggáro'i...sínggháro'i-a kind of flower

**ph > b, bh**

kho'nggi + mǝ + phǝ'm > khúbǝ'm...khùbhǝ'm-abode of sylvan deity

phi;gi + mǝ + phǝ'm > phibǝm...phibhǝ'm-condition

lǎnnǎnbǎ + kho'nggi + mǝ + phǝ'm > ǝrànkhubǝ'm... ǝrànkhubhǝ'm-salvation

**th > d, dh**

mǝpú + tho'u > mǝbùdǝ'u...mǝbùdhǝ'u-grand father

sǝ'n + kí + tho'ng > sǝ'ndǝ'ng...sǝ'ndho'ng-south west

tádo + tho'n > tádo'n...tcdho'n-elder brother

#### 2. 4. 3. 6 *Free variation of aspirated voiceless stops with unaspirated voiced stops and aspirated voiced stops.*

Aspirated voiceless stops are in free variation with the unaspirated voiced stops and aspirated voiced stops in a few words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

**kh ~ g ~ gh**

hǝ'irángkho'i ~ hǝ'iránggo'i ~ hǝ'iránggho'i-a kind of fruit

f'ngkhón ~ hǝ'nggón ~ hǝ'ngghón-homestead land

thúmkhóng ~ thúmgóng ~ thúmgghóng-salt well

**ph ~ b ~ bh**

thíphaipot ~ thibaipot ~ thibhaipot-one going to latrine frequently

thi'phǎiphǝ'm ~ thi'bǎiphǝ'm ~ thi'bhaiphǝ'm-latrine

**th ~ d ~ dh**

khùthǝ'kto ~ khúdǝ'kto ~ khùdhǝ'kto-instantly

khómthrókpi`~khómdro`kpi`~khómdhro`kpi-a medicinal plant  
thátho`k~thádo`k~thádho`k-the youngest child

#### 2. 4. 3. 7 Retention or aspirated voiceless stops

Aspirated voiceless stops remain in many words when they are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kh

mài+khúmba+phi>màikhúm-veil  
páo+khúmba+mowóng>páokhúm-reply  
wà+khò`nba+mowóng>wàkhò`n-idea  
hò`i+o+khà+po>hò`ikhà-apricot  
cùppo+m+khàk>cùkhàk-remnant of food taken  
káng+m+khò`ng>kángkhò`ng-wheel  
thang+mc+khum>thangkhum-sheath  
páo+nínba+m+khón>paónínkhón-rumour

ph

cò`ino+phùba+mowóng>cò`iphù-blow  
innoba+phi>innophi-a kind of shawl  
láino+pháoba+wà>láipháo-gospel  
thàng+phèngnoba+`nùng>thàngphèngnùng-whet stone  
i`sing+lánnoba+m+pho`m>i`rànphe`m-ferry  
lá+i+lo`iba+m+pho`m>láipho`m shrine  
náowà+lo`iba+m+pho`m>náopho`m-placenta

th

kho`u+thò`nba+láiná>kho`uthò`nbi`-goitre  
i`sing+ko`ngba+thá>i`ko`ngthá dry season  
nóng+cúba+thá>nóngzúthá rainy season  
ko`kto+thò`nba+phi>ko`kthò`n-turban  
ko`kto+thángba+po`t>ko`kthóng-head load  
po`ndo+thúngba+mopho`m>po`nthúngpho`m destination

## 2. 4. 4 c

## 2. 4. 4. 1 c&gt;z

c>z when -c forms the initial phoneme of the unstressed syllables of the compound words and is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

nóng+cúbo+thá>nóngzúthá-rainy season

páo+cénbo+məwóng>páozen-message

po'ndo+cénbo+məwóng-pánzo'n-goat

ci'ng+o+cáobc>ci'ngzáo-mountain

kón:gi+mə+ci'n>kónzi'n-corner

ngà+léngnobo+cə'i>ngaréngzə'i-spit

sà+phù:nobo+cə'i>sàzə'i-whip

téndo:gi+kàplo'kpo+cə'i>ténzə'i-arrow

tho'ng+lo'nnobo+cə'i>tho'nglo'nzə'i-bolt

c>z in a few words when -c occurs in the initial unstressed syllables of such words.

zo'gói-dance; zo'mpho't-a carpentary implement; zo'r zo'r-gradual increase in the water level; zúri-drainage; zúwán-yoke

## 2. 2. 4. 2 Free variation of -c with -z.

-c is in free variation with -z in some EM words when -c is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

ko'céng~ko'zéng-sword

lài'ci~lái'zi'-direction

núngcén~núngzén-love

ngo'ucà~ngo'uzà-pulse

táocíng~táo'zíng-fruit

tángcà~tángzà-snake

tóngcéng~tóngzéng-boat

## 2. 4. 4. 3 c&gt;s

c>s in a few words when -c is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

lò'mmácúm>lò'msáng-street

nàkko'ndo+cíthobo+khóng>nàsíkhóng-side channel

pickari,LW>péskári-a kind of pump

-c in the two primary infixes viz., cín and cèk is changed into -s in the verbal forms when -c is preceded by the verb roots beginning with the vowels and the consonants other than the aspirated voiceless stops, -h and -s.

i'n+cín+pó>i'nsínbo-instigate

lák+cín+pó>làksínbo-control

lò'ng+cèk+pó>lò'ngsèkpo-throw away

#### 2. 4. 4. 4 *Gemination of -c*

-c is preceded by -t may remain with or without -t or be geminated causing elision of -t.

khùtcúp~khùcup~khùccúp-an ornament for the babies

ko'tci'~ko'ci'~ko'cc'i-hook

nàtcó'i~nàcó'i~nàccó'i-a weaving implement

pó'tcói'~pó'cói'~dó'ccói-items of small articles

yo'tcói'~yo'cói'~yo'ccói'-iron rod

yo'tcàbi'~yocàbi'~yo'ccàbi'-magnet

#### 2. 4. 4. 5 *Retention of -c*

-c remains in the stressed syllables of the compound words even if it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

kàci'-hook; kùcú,EM-court; nàcó'n-centipede; nácóm-nose-gay; sácá-frame; yácó'n-rein

-c also remains when it is preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops.

hò'kcáng-body; kò'kéng-ant; pùkcén-mind; yo'kco'bi-nurse;  
yo'tcàbi'-magnet; yo'tcói'-iron rod

## 108—Manipuri Grammar

### 2.4.5 s

#### 2.4.5.1 s>c

s>c in some words when -s is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

hə'yéngsi't>hə'ngci't-day after tomorrow

khə'dángdə+sətpə+phi>khə'dángcèt-a kind of towel

khwàngdə+sətpə+phi>khàngcèt-dhoti (honorific)

wàdogi+səttokpə+sə'rùk>wàcèt-split bamboo

-s in sínno, primary infix is changed into -c in the verbal forms when -s is preceded by the verb roots beginning the aspirated voiceless stops. -h and -s and ending with the unaspirated voiceless stops.

hèk+sínno+pə>hèkcínno-bə-pretend to pluck

phə't+sínno+pə>phə'tcínno-bə-pretend to stitch

so't+sínno+pə>so'tcínno-bə-pretend to borrow

#### 2.4.5.2 s>z

s>z in some words when -s is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

məsà+sénbə+məwóng>sàzén-physical exercise

phi+sètnəbə+zàt>phízèt-dress

phi+sùpnəbə+zàt>phə'izúp-a shawl used in the sleep

phi:nə+sábə+po't>phə'izá fold of cloth supporting head load

so'n+sénbə+nəhà>so'nzénnohà-cowboy

sùm+si'tnəbə+pə'p>sùmzi't-broom stick

thàng+sábə+yùmnàk>thàngzə'm-blacksmith

#### 2.4.5.3 Free variation of -s with -z.

-s is in free variation with -z in some words when -s is preceded by -t and -n

khùtsi'n tho'uràng~khùzi'n tho'uràng-arrangement

khùtsi't khùnàntho'k~khùzi't khùnàntho'k-incidental fall of something from the hand

khùtsù khùtlái~khùzú khùtlái-weapon  
 püsémbo~dúzémbo-bring  
 sénséng~sénzéng-bell metal  
 yènsáng~hènzáng-curry

#### 2. 4. 5. 4 Retention of -s

-s remains in many words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

ì'sing + sì'tnɔbɔ + pɔ't > ì'sto'k-a basket for scooping water  
 kɔktɔ + setpɔ + phi > kɔkset-head gear for the women  
 khùtnɔ + súbɔgi + mɔmɔ'n > khùtsúmɔ'n-wage  
 náowà + sùmbo + mɔphɔ'm > náosùm-cradle  
 túm + sɔ'tnɔbɔ + pɔ't > túmsɔ't-pincers  
 thá + síbɔ + númɪ't > thási-new moon  
 thàng + ɔ + sáŋgbɔ > thəŋgsáŋg-sword  
 ɛàk + thónɡnɔbɔ + sɔ'ŋ > ɛàksɔ'ŋ-kitchen  
 láɪ + lɔ'ɪbɔ + sɔ'ŋ > láɪsɔ'ŋ temple  
 láɪnɔ + yéŋnɔbɔ + sɔ'ŋ > láɪyéŋsɔ'ŋ-hospital  
 sà + yɔ'knɔbɔ + sɔ'ŋ - sàyo'ksɔ'ŋ-zoo

#### 2. 4. 6 h

##### 2. 4. 6. 1 Occurance of -h with unaspirated voiceless stops

-h preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops remains without changing such consonants into the aspirated voiceless stops.

k+h  
 ɛàk:hàɔ-a kind of paddy  
 ɛàk:hén-fasting  
 kɔ'k:hɔ'n láɪhɔ'n-eldest son

p+h  
 ìèp+hɔ'n + pɔ > ìèp:hɔ'nɔ-make stand  
 tɔ'p+hɔ'n + pɔ > tɔp:hɔnɔ-make slow

t+h

ko't:híng-rust

khùt:híng-smell of hand

yo't:híng-hand cuff

#### 2. 4. 6. 2 Retention of -h

-h remains when it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

lái+hàtnobo+moro'n>láihò'tlo'n-black magic

lèm+hò'ubo+mòkhàk>lèmhò'ukhàk-remnants

mi'+hàtnobo+mòphò'm>mi'hàtphò'm-execution ground

wà+hò'udo'kpo+mòwóng>wàhò'udo'k-introduction

wà+hò'ngbo+mòwóng>wàhò'ng-question

céngdogi+lò'ubo+mò+hi>céng;hi-shampoo

khóidogi+lò'ubo+mò+hi>khóihì-honey

lò'mdo+lò'ibo+hùì>lò'mhùì-fox

lù+káinobo+hi>lùkáihi-a small canoe

lò'ibàkki+mò+háo>lò'iháo-soil

#### 2. 4. 7 1

##### 2. 4. 7. 1 l>n

-l>n in some words when -l is preceded by -e and -ng.

ko'ubi`si`nglò'i>ko'ubi`si`ngnáng-reeds

séli>sén-money

-l>n in a word when -l occur in the first syllable of such word.

lò'ngmáizi`ng>nóngmáizi`ng-Sunday

##### 2. 4. 7. 2 l>ng

-l in the two secondary suffixes viz., lén and lói is changed into -ng when -l is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

i'+lén>i`ngén-name of a Manipuri month

kháng+lén>kángngén-beam

síng+lén>síng ngén,EM-flower



thing + lén > thingngén-bund

ho'ng + lo'i > ho'ngngo'i-frog

kèng + lo'i > kèngngo'i-an edible herb

lo'i + lo'i > lo'ngo'i sand

ngáng + lo'! > ngángngo'i, EM-another name of Moirang clan

### 2. 4. 7. 3 Free variation of -l with p, -m and -ng.

-l may remain or be in free variation with -p, -m and -ng in the verbal forms when -l occurs as the initial phoneme of some primary infixes and is preceded by such consonants.

p + l

ko'p + lo + i > ko'ploi ~ ko'ppo'i-he comes and cries

kàp + lo + i > kàplé ~ kàppé-he has been shot

m + l

pho'm + lo'm + i > pho'mlo'mi ~ pho'mmo'mi-he sat

sèm + lo'mdái + to > sèmlò'mdáido ~ sèmmo'mdáido-on the eve of repair

ng + l

ho'ng + lingo'i + to > ho'nglingo'ids ~ ho'ngngingo'ido~ while he is asking

yéng + lú + i > yénglù-i ~ yéngngú:i-he goes and sees

### 2. 4. 7. 4 l > r

-l > r when -l occurs as the initial phoneme of the unstressed syllables of compound words and is preceded by the vowels

í'sing + lánno'bo + mapho'm > í'rànpho'm-ferry

lo'u + lúngbo + lo'iso'ng > lùrúngso'ng-royal department in charge of agriculture

ngà + làkpə + úcək > ngàràkpi`-king fisher

ngà + léngno'bo + co'i > ngàréngzo'i-spit

tho'u + làngbo + mowóng-tho'uràng-arrangement

## 112—Manipuri Grammar

cóino+lo`nbo+məro`n>cóiro`n-ravings

i`singdo+lo`ibo+məwóng>i`ro,i-eddy

i`singgo+lo`inobo+sà>i`rc`i-buffalo

kho`ngdo+lo`úbo+məwóng>khùro`u-obstacle

sàdo+síbo+li`k>so`ri`k-bell

-l>r in a few words when -l occur in the initial unstressed syllables of such words.

rási`-beauty; rúi-a kind of shawl; ro`ro`-a word address to the cattle asking them to stop.

### 2. 4. 7. 5 Retention of -l

-l remains as the initial phoneme of the stressed syllables of the compound words even if -l is preceded by the vowels.

kábo`i-country liquor; kálén-summer; kólí-dwarf; lólá-ass;  
so`láí-clan; sólá-gunny bag

-l remains when it is preceded by the unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

k+l—o`klá-perch; pho`kláng-wall

p+l—cùpli`-rein; lèplo`i-screw auger

t+l—khùtlái-weapon; po`tlói-custom of Rasa dance

m+l—kho`mlo`i,EM-land of death; khómlén,EM-sleep

n+l—pónláng-basket; sénlèp-capital invested

ng+l—kànglùp-group; kho`nglo`i-followers

### 2. 4. 8 r

#### 2. 4. 8. 1 r in syllable final position

-r occurs as the final phoneme of a few EM monosyllabic words.

cár—door; ghór-enthusiasm; hár-manure; már-foot print;  
pár-rifle

-r also occurs as the final phoneme of the last syllables of some words.

cínár-milon; háibár-a kind of ear ring; láibár,EM-ambassador;  
línhár-a medicinal herb; nóngdár-mica; úlár upturn of cart;  
úzár-disorder.

#### 2. 4. 8. 2 Intrusive -r

Intrusive -r occurs after the unaspirated voiceless stops, -c and -m when such consonants are preceded by the vowels and nasals.

càk + mɔ + pi > cə`ubri`-break fast for the babies.  
 káng + mɔ + khóng > kángkhro`ng wheel  
 lo`ibák + ɔkákpo > lo`ikro`k crevice  
 lo`ibák + cènggumbo > lo`icrèng-small earth particles  
 nùng + cènggumbo > nùngzrèng-small stone particles  
 ngà + púmgu`mbo > ngàprúm-mud eel  
 pi`kpo`do + tú:gumbo > pi`ktrú a small baby  
 ɔso`ngbo + lo`i > so`ngbro`i a kind of flower  
 khóm + tho`kpo + pàmbi` > khómthro`kpi` a medicinal plant  
 ci`ndo + khado + tho`kpo + mowóng > ci`nthro`k kháthro`k slip of tongue

#### 2. 4. 9 w

##### 2. 4. 9. 1 Elision of -w

-w is elided from some words when it is preceded by the nasals.

càktánwài > càktápho`m-shelter of birds  
 i`ránwái > i`ránpho`m-ferry  
 so`gónno + càbo + ho`wái > so`gúlái-horse bean  
 sáwá > só key

##### 2. 4. 9. 2 Retention of -w

-w remains in some words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

ho`wái-pulse; i`wàn-pot for cooking curry; lo`wái-fore-head; láiwà-gospel; pèttúwà-a small baby; pɔswán-a skirt of muslin; so`twán,EM-name of a post; téno`wà parrot

## 114. -Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 4. 10 y

#### 2. 4. 10. 1 Elision of -y

-y is elided from some words when it is preceded by the vowels, unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals.

yì'm,EM+chánbo>i'mphál-name of the capital city of Manipur

yì'm+kónbo+məphə'm>i'ngkhón-home stead land

yì'm+móngbo EM>i'múng-family

hə'yéngsi't>həngci't-day after tomorrow

míyéngsén>míngsén-looking glass

sə'yì>sə'ì-a kind of tree

#### 2. 4. 10. 2 Retention of -y

-y remains in many words when it is preceded by the vowels and nasals.

cáng+yéngbo+məwóng>cángyéng-test

mì'tno+yéngbo+məwóng-mì'tyéng-view

náowà+yo'mbopo't>náoyo'm-amnion

lə'ng+yo'ínobə+cə'ì>lə'ngyo'izo'ì-a weaving implement

lái'ná+yéngnəbə+sə'ng>láiyéngsə'ng-hospital

sà+yo'kpo+sə'ng>səyo'ksə'ng-zoo

yùmdə+yo'kpo+sà>yùmyo'ksà-domestic animal

náho'ndəbə+yái>nádoyái-disease-proof stone

sího'ndəbə+yái>sídoyái-death-proof stone

### 2. 4. 11 Nasals in syllable initial position

#### 2. 4. 11. 1 Geminanion of nasals.

Nasals may remain or geminated when they are preceded by the vowels (monophthongs).

m~mm

càmo~càmmo-one hundred

làməi~làmməi-leaf of a book

lúmàng~lúmmàng-sinciput  
sàmú~sàmmú-elephant

n~nn

khunù~khúnnù-pigeon  
mì`nnái~mì`nái-servant  
mì`núngsi~m`innúngsi-sympathy  
ngànù~ngànnù-duck

ng~ngng

ɔngàng~ɔngngàng-baby  
mɔngà~mɔngngà-five  
mɔngài~mɔngngái-matrimonial relation  
mɔngán~mɔngngán-light

## 2. 4. 11. 2 n

### 2. 4. 11. 2. 1 n>m

-n>m in a word when -n is preceded by the same consonant.

sinnnái>sínmi`-worker

### 2. 4. 11. 2. 2 n>l

-n>l in a few words when -n occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllables of such words.

nótíni,EM>lótíni-whore  
nɔgun,LW>lúgún-sacred thread worn by the Hindus  
nilam,LW>lílám-auction

### 2. 4. 11. 2. 3 Free variation of -n with -l.

-n is in free variation with -l in a few words when -n occurs as the initial phoneme of the first syllable of such words.

no'hán~lo'hán-day before yesterday

nóngdái~lò'ngdár-mica

nóngmái~lò'ngmái-name of a Manipuri clan

### 2. 4. 11. 3 Retention of nasals

Nasals remain when they are preceded by the diphthongs and unaspirated voiceless stops.

**m**

lái'mò'n-chronic disease ; phóúmámbi`-aniseed ; thaómò`i-lamp ;  
lùkmài-a round basket ; nóngkhàkmò`i,EM-thunderbolt

**n**

hò`ino`u-mango ; lò`uno`m-deceit ; mainou,EM-disciple ; kò`k-  
no`m-fillet, khùtnèk-hired person ; sùpnò`m-violent imposition

**ng**

hò`ingán-jam ; mò`ingán-light ; yáingò`ng turmeric ; tò`knga-  
rumour

-m and -n remain when they are preceded by -ng

**ng+m**

hàngmò`i-a carpenter's instrument ; lánghmò`i-wild fire ; nóng-  
mò`i-rifle

**ng+n**

khóngnáng-pipal tree ; sì`ngnang-recd ; thàngphèngnùng-whet  
stone.

### 2. 4. 12 Nasals in syllable final position

Nasals occur as the final phonemes of the syllables,

m—cum-lizard ; lò'm-land ; sò'm-hair ; yùm-house

n—kò'n-utensil ; khùn-village ; pàn-arum ; tén-bow

ng—kàng-mosquito ; nóng-rain ; sì'ng-fuel ; yóng-monkey

2. 4. 12. 1 *Final -m*

2. 4. 12. 1. 1 *Final variation or final -m with -ng.*

Final -m may remain or be in free variation with -ng when -m is followed by -kh, -g -p, -ph and -b.

m + kh

i`mkhón ~ i`ngkhón-homestead land

lò'm khùnù ~ lò'ngkhùnù-dove

m + g

kómguṭ ~ kóngguṭ-pit

khómgo`klái ~ khónggo`klái-ricket

m + p

lò'mprái ~ lò'ngprái-a kind of bird

mócómpàk ~ mócóngpàk-etiqate

m + ph

pómpphrí ~ póngphrí-rags

pómpphái ~ púngphái-a medicinal herb

m + b

sò'mbro'i ~ sò'nbroi'-a kind of flower

sò'mbo'nlo'ri ~ sò'ngbo'nlo'i-a kind of flower

2. 4. 12. 2 *Final -n*

2. 4. 12. 2. 1 *Free variation of final -n with -m*

Final -n may remain or be in free variation with -m in some words when -m is followed by -p, -ph and -b.

n + p

ko`npak ~ ko'mpàk-a kind of utensil

sénpàk ~ sémphák-tray  
yénpàk ~ yémphák-a kind of umbrella

n + ph

ci'nphén ~ ci'mphén-gift of the gab  
ko'nphù ~ ko'mphù-cistern  
sénphù ~ sémphù-coffer

n + b

lánbo'n ~ lámbo'n-fort  
pàmbi ~ pàmbi-plant  
yémbi ~ yémbi-hen.

#### 2. 4. 12. 2. 2 Free variation of final -n with -ng.

Final -n may remain or be in free variation with -ng when -n is followed by -k, -kh and -g.

n + k

ci'nkùpsén ~ ci'ngkùpsén-spittoon  
ténkàpphò'm ~ téngkàpphò'm-arena for shooting competition

n + kh

lánkhóng ~ lángkhón-trench  
pò'ngkhó'i ~ pò'ngkhó'i-limit  
pàngkhò'k ~ pàngkhò'k-arum

n + g

lò'n:gò'í ~ lò'nggò'í-treasure  
sò'n:gón ~ sò'nggón-cowshed  
sò'n:góm ~ sò'nggóm-milk

#### 2. 4. 12. 2. 3 Free variation of final -n with -l.

Final -n is in free variation with -l in the monosyllabic words.



ci`n~ci`l-mouth  
 lán~lál-battle  
 pɔ`n~pɔ`l-bund  
 sɛn~sɛl-money  
 tɛn~tɛl-bow

Final -n is also in free variation with -l when -n occurs in the last syllables of the compound words.

lɔ`ipɔ`n~lɔ`ipɔ`l-earth wall  
 lɔ`ipàn~lɔ`pàl-flower plant  
 sɔ`mbɔ`n~sɔ`mbɔl-fence  
 thánin~thánil-full moon  
 tho`nggán~tho`nggál-gate

Final -n is also in free variation with -l when -n is followed by -h.

ci`nhài~ci`lhài-oral statement  
 kúnhúmdói~kúlhúmdói-twenty three  
 línhà~lílhà-young one of the snake  
 mánhɔ`i~málhɔ`i-apricot  
 sɛnhá~sɛlhá-price  
 wánhɔ`usɔ`ng~wálhɔ`usɔ`ng-kitchen

#### 2. 4. 12. 2. 4 Final -n>nl, ll

Final -n followed by the vowels (monophthongs) may remain or be changed into -nl or ll.

ci`n:ɔ`knɔɔ...ci`lɔ`knɔɔ...c`llo`knɔɔ-meeting of the birds  
 lɔ`n:ɔ`nbɔ...lɔ`nlo`nbɔ...lɔ`llo`nbɔ-trade  
 pɔ`n:ɔ`nnɔɔ...pɔ`nlo`nnɔɔ...pɔ`llo`nnɔɔ-change of the sides of the two rival teams in a game.  
 sin:ɔ`nnɔɔ...sinlo`nnɔɔ...sillo`nnɔɔ-choice of wrong profession

Final -n may remain or be elided or changed into l when -n is followed by -l.

lónlù...lónlù...lólù...lólù-EM-a fishing trap  
 lónlém...lónlém...lólém,EM house

## 120—Manipuri Grammar

kónlùp...kólùp ..kóllùp neighbouring area  
pò'nlàngkho'k...pò'làngkho'k...pò'llàngkho'k-cloth stand  
pónlóí...pólóí...póllóí end  
pónláng...póláng . póláng-basket  
sò'nùp...sò'lùp...sò'llùp-herd of cattle

Final -n is changed into -nl or -ll in the verbal forms in the present indefinite tense and imperative mood when -n occurs as the final phoneme of the verb roots and is followed by -i, marker of general statement (present tense) and -o, marker of imperative mood.

cèn+i>cènlí . cèllí-he runs  
kho'n+i>kho'nli . kho'llí-he thinks  
yén+o>yénlo'...yélló'-(you) distribute

### 2. 4. 12. 2. 5 Final -n>r.

Final -n>r in a few words when -n is followed by <sup>\*</sup>-p, -ph, -th and -s.

fansi,LW>phársí hanging by neck till death  
ko'n+pándobò+zàt>ko'rphàn a kind of utensil  
ko'n+phù+kumbò+zàt>ko'rphù-a kind of utensil  
tán+thá:nobò+káng'í>tárko'ng,EM a kind of musical instrument

### 2. 4. 12 3. Final -ng

#### 2. 4. 12. 3. 1 Final -ng>r.

Final -ng>r in a few words when -ng is followed by the unaspirated voiceless stops.

ci'ng+ki+lò'ibàk>cèrbàk edible rock pieces  
khóng+tàk>khórdàk-name of a river  
khóng+po't>kórbo't-a kind of plantation  
tong+po't>tórbo't-white gourd

#### 2. 4. 12. 4. 1 Gemination of final nasals

Final nasals other than -n may remain or be geminated when they are followed by the vowels (monophthongs).

**m + v**

kóm:ín...kúmin—a kind of woman's dress  
 kúm:ón...kummon-annual sradha ceremony  
 khóm:ínbi`...khómmínbi`-wet nurse  
 ló'mló'k...ló'mmo'k-wild bear

**ng + v**

ci`ng:ú...ci`ngngú,EM-god  
 hóng:ú...hóngngú-elephant's ears  
 kho`ng:úp...kho`ngngúp-shoe  
 lán:ón...lángngó`n,EM-incarnation  
 lóng:úp..lóngngúp-a fishing trap  
 níng:ón...níngngón-daughter  
 nóng:ín :róngngín-a kind of bird  
 si`ng:út...si`ngngút-a kind of reed

-m and -ng may remain or be geminated in the verbal forms when they are followed by the vowel (monophthongs).

**m + v**

phó`m + í > phó`m`í...phó`mmí-we/you/they sit  
 tó`m + o` > tó`m`o`...:ó`mmo`-(you) learn (imperative)

**ng + v**

khó`ng + í > khóng:i...khó`ngngí-we/you/they know  
 tóng + o` > tóng:o`...tóngngo`-(you) ride (imperative)

**2. 4. 12. 4. 2 Retention or elision of final nasals**

A final nasal phoneme may remain or be elided when it is followed by the same consonant.

**m + m**

cómmo`ng...cómo`ng,EM-palanquin  
 húmmái...húmaí-fan  
 ìmmúng...ìmúng-family  
 phó`mmúng...phó`múng-bed  
 sùmmàng...sùmàng-courtyard

**n + n**

ho'nnùbi'...ho'nùbi'-old woman

lo'nnái...lo'nái-private affair

kónnúng...kónúng-royal palace

so'nnáo...so'náo-calf

sínnái...sínái, EM-worker

**ng + ng**

kángngó'u...kángó'u a kind of dish

kángngà...kángà swan

mómàngngó'ì...mómàngó'ì-long ago

nùngngó'u...nùngó'u-marble

nùngngà...nùnga-a kind of fish

#### 2.4.12.4.3 Retention of final nasals

A final nasal phoneme remains when it is followed by the same consonant which is the initial phoneme of some formative affixes.

**m + m**

ohùm+mùk>ohùmmùk-about three

cò'm+mò'nbo>cò'mmò'nbo-too simple

**n + n**

lo'n+nò>lo'nnò-secretly

tán+ni'ng+pò>tánníngbò-wish to earn

**ng + ng**

cèng+ngàk+to>cèngngàkto-only the rice

míng+ngàkto>míngngàkto-only the name

## 2.5 MORPHOPHONEMIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS IN LOAN WORDS

Consonants in some loan words from the NIA languages undergo morphophonemic changes.

2. 5. 1 *k*

2. 5. 1. 1 *g > k*

—*g* in the initial and final positions > *k*.

gongdhok > kə'ntrək-sulphur

gufa > kúphá-cave

guvak > kwá-betel nut

govi > kóbi`-cabbage

deg > dèk-a kind of utensil

mug > múk-a kind of pulse

sag > sák-a kind of dish

thag > tho`k-deceit

doroga > daruka-police

2. 5. 1. 2 *Some sources of -k*

There are also the following sources of *-k* :—

kh > k-dorkhast > dər'rkás-petition

b > k-button > kúdám

t > k-olkotora > ɔɪnpə'ká-bitumen

2. 5. 1. 3 *Elision of final -k*

Final *-k* in some words is elided when it is followed by the same consonants.

cəkkɾə > cəkrə-disc

cəkka > cáká-wheel

cəkki > cə'kri-grinding stone

sikka > síki-a coin worth twenty five paise

tikki > tiki-small round cake made of charcoal powder

2. 5. 2 *g*

2. 5. 2. 1 *k > g*

—*k* in the initial and intervocal positions > *g*.

ku:a > gúhá-well

## 124. -Manipuri Grammar

kumbhir>gúmbhir-alligator

thakur>thágú-a word of address to a Brahman gentleman

### 2. 5. 2. 2 *kh>g*

There is an instance of -kh>g,

khukhuri>khúgri-a kind of dao

### 2. 5. 3 *kh*

#### 2. 5. 3. 1 *ksh>kh*

-ksh in the loan words>kh

ksher>khir- milk-rice

kshur>khúr-razor

məkshon>mákhón-butter

poriksha>párikhá-examination

sakshi>sákhī-witness

dəkshina>dókhiná-money given to the participants in a religious function

jəkshma>zóngkhár-a kind of disease

### 2. 5. 4 *p*

#### 2. 5. 4. 1 *b>p*

-b in the initial and medial positions >p.

balti>pártin-bucket

babu>bápú-a term of address to Brahmin a gentleman

kəngbəl>kə'mpór-blanket

kəbəz>kə'pə'c-hinges

sabun>sápón-soap

təbla>tə'pilá-a small tambourine

#### 2. 5. 4. 2 *Some sources of -p*

There are also the following sources of -p:—

k>p-əkətəra>ə'mpə'ká-bitumen

f>p—hofta>háptá-week  
t>p - curut>cúrùp-cigarette

2. 5. 5 b

2. 5. 5. 1 p>b

-p in the initial and medial positions >b.

pəkouri>bórá-a kind of fried food  
pera>bérá-a kind of sweet meat  
tezpotta>tézbàt bay leaf

2. 5. 6 t

2. 5. 6. 1 t>d

-d in the initial and medial positions >t

dof>to'pho't a kind of drum  
daku>tákú-robber  
dada>tádo-elder brother  
deg>tèk-a kind of utensil  
dibiya>túbiyá-a small vessel for keeping tobacco  
pudina>pútíná-an edible herb

2. 5. 6. 2 Some sources of -t

k>t - kerosine>térsing  
th>t—osthi>o'sti-a ceremony before the sraddha ceremony  
dh>t—sraddha>sóràt-sraddha ceremony

2. 5. 7 s

2. 5. 7. 1 c>s

-c in the initial and medial positions >s.

cuna>súnú-lime  
pickari>péskári-a kind of pump

## 126—Manipuri Grammar

### 2. 5. 8 h

#### 2. 5. 8. 1 Elision of -h

-h in the final and medial positions of a few words is elided.

mərḥəm>mólóm liniment

purohit>púri't-priest

səhi>sói signature

kohlu>kó'ú mould

kəcəhri>kə'cə'ri-court

məhavət>mə:ut-elephant-driver

təhsil>tə'sil-a revenue division

### 2. 5. 9 l

#### 2. 5. 9. 1 r>l

-r in the three positions >l.

rumal>lúmán-handkerchief

rupəya>lúpà rupee, silver

ərḥər>ərḥəl-a kind of pulse

gudəri>gúdúli-a kind of quilt

laru>lálú-a kind of sweet meat

sutəri>sutəli-yarn

darcini>dálcíni-cinnamon

kharij>kho'lás-discharge of the prisoner

mərḥəm>mólóm-liniment

#### 2. 5. 9 2 n>l

-n in the initial position >l.

nəgun>lúgún sacred thread worn by the Hindus

nilam>lílám-auction

### 2. 5. 10 y

#### 2. 5. 10 1 Replacement of -y -by -i

-y preceded by -a is replaced by -i. Thus the sound group -ay is replaced by -ai, one of the six diphthongs.



kayda > káidá-mode  
 ray > rái-judgement of a court  
 cirayta > círáitá-a kind of spices  
 dayitvo > dáí-responsibility  
 ilayci > yélláici-cardamom  
 poncayot > pō'ncái-a local self governing body

## 2. 5. 10. 2 Elision of -y

-y preceded by -o, -o, -b, dh, -s and -n is elided.

oy-rupya > lúpá-rupee, silver  
 oy-koyla > kóilá-coal  
 by-byapar > bépár-trade  
 byabhar > bébhár-good behaviour  
 dhy-sandhya > sō'ndhá-twilight  
 sy-omabasya > ámábō'isá-new moon  
 ny-sonyasi > sō'inási mendicant  
 sunnyo > súinó-zero

## 2. 5. 11 w

### 2. 5. 11. 1 Elision of -w

-v preceded by -s is elided.

svor > sór-breathing  
 svorgo > sō'rgō'-heaven  
 onusvor > o'núngsár-an alphabet  
 isvor > ísór-god  
 nagesvor > nagesór-a kind of flower  
 bisvorgo > bisō'rgóa-an alphabet

## 2. 5. 12 n

### 2. 5. 12. 1 ng > n

-ng > n when -ng occurs as the initial phoneme of the initial syllables of some compound words and is preceded by -o and -i

o+ng

congdon > cō'ndón-sandal

## 128—Manipuri Grammar

gongdhok > ko`ntrùk-sulphur

gongja > go`nzá-hemp

jongjir > zinzúr- kind of gold necklace

koingci > kánci-wood planks supporting the roof of the house

khongju*i* > khonzúri-a kind of drum

songtori > so`ntri-watchman

i + ng

singdur > sindúr-vermilion

---

## **3. MORPHOLOGY**

### **3.0 WORDS**

#### **( Parts of Speech )**

Some classifications of the Parts of Speech are shown in the text books on Manipuri grammar. The defect of such classifications is the division of Manipuri verbs into the two so-called Parts of Speech viz., Adjective and Verb. This defect is corrected. The following eight fold system of Parts of Speech is used for the sake of convenience :--

- |               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Noun      | (5) Adverb                    |
| (2) Pronoun   | (6) Conjunction               |
| (3) Verb      | (7) Relational (Postposition) |
| (4) Qualifier | (8) Interjection              |

### **3.1 NOUNS**

Nouns in Manipuri are declinables. They distinguish the categories of Gender, Number and Case.

#### **3.1.1 GENDER**

Gender is a semantic-cum-grammatical category. Nouns are divided into three classes viz , (a) animate human nouns (b) animate nonhuman nouns and (c) inanimate nouns.

Animate nouns both human and non-human are in the masculine, feminine and common genders. Inanimate nouns are considered neuter.

Nouns of masculine gender do not correspond to all the nouns of feminine gender. Only the male denoters have their corresponding female denoters. Thus formation of female denoters from the male denoters is discussed here.

## 130—Morphology

### 3. 1. 1. 1 *Male and Female denoters of the human nouns.*

Male denoters in *pə* derived from the primary stems have their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

#### *Masculine*

opo`kpo-father  
 ho`nũbo-old man  
 hĩngcàbo-monster  
 hũránbo-thief  
 i`sò`ihò`nbo-lead singer  
 kò`súbbo-man of bad reputation  
 lo`lo`nbo-trader  
 lo`mbóibo-monk  
 lo`imàbo,EM-king  
 lúcingbo-leader  
 mómánnòbo-friend  
 pámmúbbo-beloved

#### *Feminine*

opo`kpi`-mother  
 ho`nũbi-old woman  
 hĩngcàbi`-monstress  
 hũránbi`-thief  
 i`sò`ihò`nbi`-lead singer  
 kò`súbì`-whore  
 lo`lo`nbi`-trader  
 lo`mbóibi`-nun  
 lo`màbi`,EM-queen  
 lúcingbi`-leader  
 mómánnòbi`-friend  
 pámmúbì`-beloved

A few male denoters in *pə* derived from the nominal stems have their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

#### *Masculine*

oso`ibo,EM-songster  
 hàobo-hill man  
 máibo-priest  
 nùpà-man

#### *Feminine*

oso`ibi`-songstress  
 hàobi`-hill woman  
 máibi`-priestess  
 nùpi`-woman

Nouns in *pə* denoting male members of some Manipuri families derived from the primary stems form their female denoters by changing *pə* into *pi`*.

#### *Masculine*

élangbo-male member of the  
 Elangbam family  
 khùmò`nthémbo-male member  
 of the Khumanthem family  
 láisrò`bo-male member of the  
 Lassram family

#### *Feminine*

élangbi`-female member of the  
 Elangbam family  
 khùmò`nthémbi`-female member  
 of the Khumanthem family  
 láisrò`bi`-female member of the  
 Laisram family

A few proper nouns in *pɔ* derived from the primary stems form their female denoters by changing *pɔ* into *pì* or *nù*.

| <i>Masculine</i>           | <i>Feminine</i>  |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| ongo'ubo (ngo'u-white)     | ongo'ubi/ngo'unù |
| caobo (cao-great)          | caobi/coonù      |
| tonbo (ton, junior in age) | tombi/tónnù      |

A few proper nouns in *pɔ* derived from the nominal stems have their female denoters by changing *pɔ* into *pì*.

| <i>Masculine</i>           | <i>Feminine</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| naobo (naowa, EM-baby)     | naobi           |
| yainobo/yaimo (yai-middle) | yaimobi         |

(2) ngo'u, male and mo, female

Male denoters in ngo'u have their female denoters in mo.

| <i>Masculine</i>    | <i>Feminine</i>           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| i'bungó-gentleman   | i'bemo-lady               |
| mo'idin'gu, EM-king | mo'ito'i lo'imo, EM-queen |

(3) pung, male and mo, female

A few nouns in pung form their female denoters by replacement of pung by mo.

| <i>Masculine</i>      | <i>Feminine</i>                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| laibungtho'u, EM-God  | lairemmo, EM-Goddess             |
| mobung-elder brother  | monomo-wife of the elder brother |
| yambung-elder brother | matomo-wife of the elder brother |

(4) tho'u, male and len, female

A few nouns in tho'u form their female denoters by the addition of len after dropping tho'u.

## 132~Morphology

### *Masculine*

po'ntho'u, EM-father  
láibo'ngtho'u. EM-king  
mobùdho'u-grand father

### *Feminine*

po'lém, EM-mother  
lo'imo'rén, EM-queen  
yomlen, EM-grand mother

### (5) i'bùngó, gentleman and i'bémo, lady

Some human nouns distinguish males and females by using i'bùngó, gentleman and i'bémo, lady after such nouns.

### *Masculine*

bámóni'bùngó-a Brahmin  
gentleman  
láisi'bùngó-god  
mocà:i'bùngó-son  
monào:i'bùngó younger brother  
(honorific)  
mosù:i'bùngó-grand-son  
so'ná:i'bùngó-a Manipuri  
Rajkumar

### *Feminine*

bámón i'bémo-a Brahmin lady  
láisi'bémo-goddess  
mocà:i'bémo-daughter  
monào:i'bémo-wife of younger  
brother  
mosù:i'bémo-grand daughter  
so'ná:i'bémo-a Manipuri  
Rajkumari

### (6) mocà-male and co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-woman

Male and female members of clans, communities, regions, countries etc. are formed by adding mocà, male and co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi', woman after such clans, communities etc.

### *Masculine*

mo'itoimocà-male member of  
Meitei community  
pángo'n mocà-male member of  
Muslim community  
khùmó'n mocà-male member of  
Khuman clan  
móirángmocà-male member of  
Moirang clan

### *Feminine*

mo'ito'ico'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-  
male member of Meitei commu-  
nity  
pángo'n co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-  
male member of Muslim commu-  
nity  
khùmó'n co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-fe-  
male member of Khuman clan  
móiráng co'nù/ni'ngón/nùpi'-  
female member of Moirang clan

*Masculine*

ĩmphál mǎcà-male resident  
of Imphal  
ǎwà mǎcà man of Burma

*Feminine*

ĩmphál cǎ'nù/nǐ'ngón/nùpi'-female  
resident of Imphal  
ǎwà cǎ'nù/nǐ'ngón/nùpi'-woman of  
Burma

Male and Female members of Manipuri families are also formed by using mǎcà, male and cǎ'nù/nǐ'ngón, female after such families.

*Masculine*

ko'izǎ'm mǎcà-male member  
of Koiyam family  
láisrǎ'm mǎcà-male member of  
Laisram family

*Feminine*

ko'izǎ,m cǎ'nù/nǐ'ngón-female  
member of Koiyam family  
láisrǎ'm cǎ'nù / nǐ'ngón- female  
member of Laisram family

## (7) nùpà-male and nùpi'-woman

Some human nouns distinguish males and females by using nùpà-male and nùpi'-female after such nouns.

*Masculine*

mǎcà nùpà-son  
monào nùpà-younger brother  
monái nùpà-male servant  
mǎsù nùpà-grand son

*Feminine*

mǎcà nùpi'-daughter  
monào nùpi'-wife of younger brother  
monái nùpi'-maid servant  
mǎsù nùpi'-grand daughter

## (8) Gender of some loan words (human nouns)

Some loan words retain their male and female denoters.

*Masculine*

bo'isno'p-a Vaisnaba gentle-  
máháráz-king  
thágú-a Brahmin gentleman

*Feminine*

bo'isno'pi'-a Vaisnaba lady  
máháráni-queen  
thóuráni a Brahmin lady

## (9) Nouns with different forms in the masculine and feminine

A number of nouns have different forms in the masculine and feminine.

## 134.-Morphology

### *Masculine*

mokù-father in law  
 momán, EM; mámo', LW-uncle  
 (maternal)  
 mōpon-father's elder brother  
 mōpù-grand father  
 mōto'n; khura, LW-father's  
 younger brother  
 mōtao'-friend (male)  
 mōwà-husband  
 pākho'ng-boy  
 pákhra'-widower

### *Feminine*

mōnēm-mother-in-law  
 mōnè-aunt (maternal)  
 mōmhan-wife of father's elder brother  
 mōbèn-grand mother  
 mō'ndón-wife of father's younger  
 brother  
 mōtā-friend (female)  
 mōtù-wife  
 lō'isábi'-girl  
 lúkhra'-widow

#### (10) Nouns without the corresponding female denoters.

Some nouns have no corresponding female denoters.

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| híro'i-boatman       | mōnàoyo'k, EM-priest |
| hùiro'i-scout        | ózá, LW-teacher      |
| lō'umi-peasant       | pánzì astrologer     |
| lánmi'-soldier       | sinmi'-worker        |
| máico'u, EM-scholar  | wákmo, EM-writer     |
| màino'u, EM-disciple |                      |

#### (11) Nouns without the corresponding male denoters

Some nouns have no corresponding male denoters.

|                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| pkhúngbi'-barren woman    | mōpi'-royal nurse  |
| cánnobi'-beloved (female) | mōrúmbi'-concubine |
| khàbi', EM-priestess      | náoro'ibi-midwife  |
| lónnobi'-co-wife          | yo'kcabi'-nurse    |
| màiyō'knobi'-wid. wife    |                    |

#### (12) Nouns of common gender

There are some nouns of common gender which denote both the males and females.



|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| oho'n-old person    | mərùp friend        |
| ongàng-baby         | mĩ-person           |
| ci'ngmĩ-hill tribal | mĩ'co'ng-supporter  |
| khò'nglo'i-follower | mĩ'nái-slave        |
| lái-god             | rohà-youth          |
| lámhá-rival         | pákhónloi-messenger |
| mónáj-servant       | sàgò'i-relative     |
| mápù-cwner          | sánnorò'i-player    |

### 3. 1. 1. 3 Male and Female denoters of animate nonhuman nouns.

Animate non-human nouns are in the common gender.

A few non-human nouns in pə are in the masculine gender. They form their female denoters by changing pə into pì.

#### *Masculine*

kàobə, EM-bull  
lábo-male  
yénbà-cock

#### *Feminine*

mánbì, EM cow  
mopi-female  
yénbì-hen

All the animate non-human nouns of common gender distinguish males and females by using lábo, male and omóm/mopi, female after such nouns.

#### *Masculine*

hùi lábo-dog  
kángə lábo-gender  
nóngsà lábo-lion  
o'k lábo-boar  
so'gón lábo-horse  
so'n lábo bull  
wàhónglábo-peacock

#### *Feminine*

hùi omóm/mopi-bitch  
kángə omóm/mopi-goose  
nóngsà omóm/mopi-lioness  
o'k omóm/mopi-saw  
so'gón omóm/mopi-mare  
so'n omóm/mopi-cow  
wàhóng omóm/mopi-pea hen

A few animate non-human nouns have entirely different forms in the masculine and feminine

#### *Masculine*

céng, EM-cock  
kàorén, EM-bull

#### *Feminine*

gódì, EM/thúmbáo, EM-hen  
mùkmù, EM-cow

### 3. 1. 1. 4 *Genders of the inanimate nouns*

Inanimate nouns are in the neuter gender

A few inanimate nouns in po/púng-male marker are considered to be in the masculine gender.

kóro'uhó'nbo, EM-sun

màlo'ngbo, EM-wind

thábúngtón, EM-moon

A few inanimate nouns are also in the masculine gender taking lábo-male.

owáthobi` lábo-papaw plant bearing male flower

úro'iróm lábo—a dye plant bearing male flower

The following inanimate nouns are considered to be in the feminine gender.

lo'ibák-country

málém-earth

lo'ibák-country and málém-earth may be defined by the human nouns in the feminine gender.

mómà lo'ibák mother country

málém lo'imo-mother earth

tho'mbál-lotus and tho'ró-lily are also considered to be in feminine gender. They are used as the proper names of the females. tho'mbál and tho'ró defined and followed by some stative verbal qualifiers (attributive adjectives) in pi', female marker are also used as the proper names of the females.

tho'mbál-lotus

tho'mbál ongoúbi`-white lotus

tho'mbál ongàngbi`-red lotus

tho'mbál oso'ngbi`-green lotus

tho'ró-lily

tho'ró ongoúbi`-white lily

thoró oso'ngbi`-green lily

thorózáobi`-great lily

### 3. 1. 2 Number

3. 1. 2. 0 *There are two numbers viz., Singular and Plural*

3. 1. 2. 1 *Singular Number*

There is no the marker of the nouns in the singular. Thus the singular of the nouns is shown by the absence of the plural markers.

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| ongàng          | baby           | ongàngsing    |
| híngcàbò        | monster        | híngcàbòsing  |
| lò'mbóibò       | monk           | lò'mbóibòsing |
| lò'ipàn         | flower plant   | lò'ipànsing   |
| nùpi`           | woman          | nùpi`sing     |
| pàmbi`          | plant          | pàmbi`sing    |

3. 1. 2. 2 *Nouns in the plural*

3. 1. 2. 2. 0 *Plural morphemes*

Plural morphemes are shown below :—

- (1) kho`i—(a) epicene plural marker  
(b) replative epicene plural marker  
(c) emphatic replative plural marker
- (2) mǝkho`i—(a) emphatic replative plural marker  
(b) emphatic additive plural marker
- (3) sá — (a) emphatic replative plural marker
- (4) sing—(a) plural marker  
(b) emphatic additive plural marker

3. 1. 2. 2. 1 *si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker occurs with many nouns in the following groups—

- (1) human and non-human nouns of both the genders
- (2) human and non-human nouns of common gender
- (3) inanimate nouns in the neuter gender

## 138—Morphology

### *Examples :—*

- (1) hìngcàbòsing—the moesters  
lò'mbóibòsing—the monks  
yénbàsìng—the cocks  
hìngcàbì'sìng—the monstresses  
lò'mbóibì'sìng—the nuns  
yénbì'sìng—the hens
- (2) hùisìngnò—the dogs  
láisìngnò—the gods  
mì'sìngnò—the persons  
thèbòsingnò—the rabbits
- (3) hò'ìnc'úsìng—the mangoes  
thò'bi'sìngnò—the cucumbers  
yùbi'sìngnò—the cocoanuts

sìng, plural marker occurs with some of the nouns in the following groups :—

- (1) verbal nouns
- (2) suffixed nouns
- (3) honorific nouns

### *Examples :—*

- (1) ohénbòsing—surpluses  
opò`nbòsing obstacles  
opámboosing—desires  
oránbòsing—mistakes  
oro`nbòsing—secrets  
othìngbòsing—restrictions  
owàtpò'sìng—deficiencies
- (2) suffixed nouns  
ohò`nsìng—old persons  
ongàngsìng babies  
conànsìng—oats  
còrùsìngnò—straws  
mòkùsìngnò—owls  
mòhàsìngnò larvae

- (2) torèngsingno-spinning wheels  
toyúmsingno,EM-servants
- (3) honorific nouns  
khàngcèt'singno-the dhotis  
ko'ktho'nsingno-the turbans  
mápùro'ibo'singno-the husbands  
mo'mkhàngsingno-the shawls  
sò'nggàisingno-the houses  
tánlòisingno,EM-the wives

sing, plural marker occurs with a few nouns in the following groups :—

- (1) preduplicated compound nouns
- (2) postduplicated compound nouns
- (3) onomatopoeic compound nouns

*Examples :—*

- (1) preduplicated compound nouns  
oháo othúmsing-sweet meats  
owàt opásing-deficiencies  
kairen kaizaosing-finely decorated coffins  
lò'ng á lò'ngzi'nsing-clues  
mohò'i móróng'sing-corns  
mòkhò'n mòthénsing-varieties  
póro'm pómi'tsing-plans
- (2) postduplicated compound nouns  
bùdù tètùsing-fools  
càrón sùrónsing-posteries  
sàmarò'k ngàmòro'ksing-hybrids  
sónó phónó'sing-fools  
thóúmú naómúsing-contemporaries
- (3) onomatopoeic compound nouns  
ohò'n lò'mò'nsing-the elders  
lái : gúrúsing the superiors  
pántho'i páoro'using the proverbs  
prò'mán pántho'ising-the proofs

sàgò'i náto'ising the relatives  
 sákhi` sáboódsing-the witnesses  
 thúmo`k tái:úksing-the baskets

5. 1 2. 2. 1. 2 *Optional deletion of si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker may remain with or deleted from the following nouns : –

- (1) nouns defined by the cardinal numerals, kho`ro'-some, moyám, many, pùmnómok, all etc.
- (2) nouns defined by the reduplicated verbal qualifiers
- (3) nouns coordinated with omósùng. 'and'.

*Examples :—*

- (1) i`bùngósing móri`no/i`bùngó móri`no-four gentlemen  
 i`bémosing kho`ro`no/i`bémo kho`ro`no-some ladies  
 məcəsing moyámnai məcə moyámnno-many of his children  
 mórúpsing pùmnómokno/mórúp pùmnómokno- all the friends
- (2) háoro háorobo i`nsángsing/i`nsáng-the delicious curries  
 pònglo pònglobo mi`sing/mi`-the foolish persons
- (3) ho`i omósùng lo`ising/ho`i : lo`i-the fruits and flowers  
 hùi omósùng yénsing/hùi:yén-the dogs and hens.

3. 1 2. 1. 1. 3 *Deletion of si'ng, plural marker*

sing, plural marker is deleted in the following nouns in the plural :—

- (1) subjective complements followed by ni`/lá, "be".
- (2) nouns used as the direct objects of the verbs like hàp, appoint, kho`n, elect etc,
- (3) nouns coordinated with -o "and".

*Examples –*

- (1) oi`khài sinmi` ni`-we are workers  
 mo`kho`i pò`nóit` lá-are they scholars

- (2) *khúnzásingno mǎ'kho'ibú ho'nzo'bo kho'nlè*-The villagers have elected them *honzobas*.  
*so'rkárno mǎkho'ibú cúránthábo háplè*-The government has appointed them spies.
- (3) *ho'i;ó lo'i: ó*, fruit and flower  
*hùl;ó yén : ó*, dogs and hens

### 3. 1. 2. 2. 1. 2 *Nouns in the emphatic plural*

Emphatic plural is expressed when sing. plural marker is replaced by the three emphatic plural markers viz , *kho'i*, *mǎkho'i* and *sá*. It is also expressed when sing. plural marker occurs with *mǎkho'i*, emphatic additive plural marker.

#### (1) *kho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker

*kho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few human and personal nouns in the Vocative case.

| <i>plural forms</i> | <i>emphatic plural forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>      |
|---------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>i'bùngósing</i>  | <i>i'bùngókho'i</i>          | oh ! gentlemen       |
| <i>i'bémósingbú</i> | <i>i'bémǎkho'i</i>           | oh ! ladies          |
| <i>i'nàosingbú</i>  | <i>i'nàokho'i</i>            | oh ! younger brother |
| <i>tádo'singbú</i>  | <i>tádo'kho'i</i>            | oh ! elder brothers  |

#### (2) *sá*, emphatic replative plural marker

*sá*, emphatic replative plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few personal and human nouns in the Vocative case. In such case, these human nouns take *mǎcà*, male.

| <i>plural forms</i>      | <i>emphatic plural forms</i> | <i>meaning</i>           |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>i'cò'nsing</i>        | <i>i'cò'nsá</i>              | oh ! my younger sisters  |
| <i>i'càsing</i>          | <i>i'càsá</i>                | oh ! my children         |
| <i>i'nàosingbú</i>       | <i>i'nàosá</i>               | oh ! my younger brothers |
| <i>lo'ibákmǎcàsingbú</i> | <i>lo'ibákmǎcàsá</i>         | oh ! citizens            |

#### (3) *mǎkho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker

*mǎkho'i* functions as (a) emphatic replative plural marker and (b) emphatic additive plural marker replacing and occurring with sing. plural marker.

## 142—Morphology

### (3/1) məkho'i, emphatic replative plural marker

məkho'i, emphatic replative marker may replace sing, plural marker when emphasis on the plurality is intended.

| <i>plural forms</i> | <i>emphatic plural forms</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|---------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| lɔ'mhùising         | lɔ'mhùì məkho'i              | the foxes      |
| nùpi'sing           | nùpi'məkho'i                 | the women      |
| úcèksing            | úcèkməkho'i                  | the birds      |
| wáho'ngsing         | wáho'ngməkho'i               | the peacocks   |

məkho'i, emphatic replative plural marker remains with the nouns defined by the cardinal numerals kho'ró', some, mɔyám, many or pùmno'mo'k-all and ɔdù, those/osi', these while sing, plural marker may remain with or be deleted from such nouns.

hɔ'ino'u kho'ró'osi' məkho'ino, some of these mangoes  
 lɔ'imɔyám osi' məkho'ino, many of these flowers  
 mi'pùmno'mo'k ɔdù məkho'ino, all of those persons  
 úcèk mɔri' ɔdù məkho'ino, those four birds

### (3/2) məkhoi, emphatic additive plural marker

məkho'i, emphatic additive plural marker occurs with sing. plural marker in the nouns defined by ɔdù, those/osi', these. In such case, məkho'i is preceded by sing and ɔdù/osi'.

| <i>plural forms</i> | <i>emphatic plural forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| hɔ'ising ɔsi'       | hɔ'ising ɔsi'məkho'i         | these fruits    |
| ising ɔsi'          | ising ɔsiməkhoi'             | those thatches  |
| lɔ'ising ɔdù        | lɔ'ising ɔdù məkho'i         | these flowers   |
| ú:sing ɔdù          | ú:sing ɔdù məkho'i           | those trees     |

### 3. 1. 2. 2. 2 Nouns in the epicene plural

Epicene plural expresses one and his group.

kho'i functions as epicene plural marker and replative epicene plural marker.

#### (1) kho'i, epicene plural marker

kho'i, epicene plural marker occurs with the following types of nouns :—



- (a) a few human nouns of relationship
- (b) human nouns in *pə* and *pi`* denoting male and female members of some Manipuri families
- (c) proper nouns

*Examples :—*

- (a) *məpàkho`ino*-the father and his group  
*məwàkho`ino*-the husband and his group
- (b) *láiśrə`bi` khoi`no*-the female member of the Laisram family and her group  
*to`izámbo kho`ino*-the male member of the Toijam family and his group
- (c) *rámkho`ino*-Ram and his group  
*syámkho`ino* -Syam and his group

*kho`i*, epicene plural marker remains with the nouns of the above types defined by the cardinal numerals, *kho`rə`*, some, *khwàì*, all, *məyám*, many etc.

*məpàkho`i məngàno*-the father and five members of his group  
*láiśrə`bikho`i khwàino*-the female member of the Laisram family and all the members of her group  
*rámkho`i məyámno*-Ram and many members of his group

(2) *kho`i*, replacive epicene plural marker

*kho`i*, replacive epicene plural marker may replace sing. plural marker in a few human and personal nouns when epicene plurality is intended.

| <i>plural forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>    | <i>epicene plural forms</i> |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>i`bùngósingno</i> | the gentlemen      | <i>i`bùngókho`ino</i>       |
| <i>i`bèmósingno</i>  | the ladies         | <i>i`bèməkho`ino</i>        |
| <i>məcəsingno</i>    | the elder sisters  | <i>məcəkho`ino</i>          |
| <i>məyámbośingno</i> | the elder brothers | <i>məyámboəkho`ino</i>      |
| <i>ózáśingno</i>     | the teachers       | <i>ózákho`ino</i>           |

3. 1. 2. 2. 1 *Nouns in the emphatic epicene plural*

**kho'i**, epicene plural marker expresses emphatic epicene plural occurring with one or both of the two emphatic additive plural markers viz., (a) **məkho'i** and (b) **sing**.

(1) **kho'i+məkho'i**

**kho'i**, epicene plural marker occurs with **mə-kho'i**, emphatic additive plural marker and case marker. In such case, **kho'i** is followed by **məkho'i** and case markers

| <i>epicene plural<br/>forms</i> | <i>emphatic epicene<br/>plural forms</i> | <i>meaning</i>            |
|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <b>məpəkho'no</b>               | <b>məpəkho'iməkho'ino</b>                | the father and his group  |
| <b>məwəkho'ino</b>              | <b>məwəkho'iməkho'ino</b>                | the husband and his group |

(2) **kho'i+sing+osi'odù**

**kho'i+sing+osi'odù+məkho'i**

**kho'i**, epicene plural marker occurs with **sing**, emphatic additive plural marker or **sing** and **məkho'i** in the nouns with the case markers defined by **odu**, **that/osi'**, **this**.

(a) **kho'i+sing**

**i'bùngókho'ising osi'no**-this gentleman and his group

**i'bəməkho'ising osi'no**-this lady and her group

**məyàmbəkho'ising odùno**-that elder brother and his group

(b) **kho'i+sing+məkho'i**

**məcékho'ising osi'məkho'ino**-this elder sister and her group

**məcə'nkho'ising osi'məkh'ino**-this younger sister and her group

**máməkho'ising odù məkho'ino**-that uncle and his group.

## 3. 1. 3 Case

3. 1. 3. 0 Manipuri nouns express case relations without undergoing any change in their forms. Thus the formal change in the nouns cannot be the basis for deciding the cases in Manipuri, though such change is recommended by the modern descriptive linguists as the basis for case classification.

Supposed relation of the nouns with other words in the sentence is the traditionally accepted basis for deciding the cases. On such basis, cases in the Manipuri are considered to be eight. In such consideration, the case markers are taken as the integral parts of the nouns and thus the case forms are treated as the various forms of the nouns. An attempt is made here to outline the basic features of the eight cases on the basis of the traditionally accepted case systems.

Markers of the cases in the Manipuri other than those of the dative and ablative are the monosyllabic forms. Markers of the dative and ablative are the compounds of the markers of the genitive and locative. Markers of the eight cases are shown below—

| <i>Case</i>                  | <i>marker</i> | <i>meaning</i>  |
|------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 (a) nominative             | ϕ (zero)      | (subject)       |
| 1 (b) agentive               | nɔ            | (subject)       |
| 2 accusative                 | ϕ (zero), pú  | (object)        |
| 3 (a) Instrumental           | nɔ            | by, with        |
| 3 (b) mediative              | nɔ            | by, through     |
| 3 (c) comitative             | kɔ            | with            |
| 4 genitive                   | kí            | of, 's          |
| 5 locative                   | tɔ            | in, at, to      |
| 6 Dative                     |               |                 |
| 6 (a) possessive dative      | kí            | possession      |
| 6 (b) intensive dative       | kidɔmɔ`k      | for             |
| 6 (c) purposive dative       | kidɔmɔ`k      | in order to(do) |
| 6 (d) indirect object-dative | tɔ            | to              |
| 7 Ablative                   | tɔgí          | from, than      |
| 8 Vocative                   | pú            | calling         |

Nouns in both the numbers do not undergo any change in their forms when they take case markers. Such markers are simply added to the singular/plural forms of the nouns. Thus the case forms of the nouns are simple and regular. Initial consonants of some case markers viz., —k, —p and —t are voiced when these case markers are added to the singular nouns ending with the vowels and nasals. Such consonants are also voiced when these case markers are added to the nouns' in the plural.

## TYPICAL DECLENSIONS

| <i>cases</i>        | <i>singular</i>            | <i>plural</i>                   |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>nominative</b>   | mi`/mi`nɔ, person          | mi`sing/mi`singɔ, persons       |
| <b>accussative</b>  | mi`/mi`bú, person          | mi`sing/mi`singbú, persons      |
| <b>instrumental</b> | cèkno-with the brick       | cèksingnɔ-with the bricks       |
| <b>genitive</b>     | mi`gi-of the person        | mi`singgi-of the persons        |
| <b>locative</b>     | mi`dɔ-to the person        | mi`singdɔ-to the persons        |
| <b>dative</b>       | mi`gidomɔ`k-for the person | mi`singgidomɔ`k-for the persons |
| <b>ablative</b>     | mi`dogi-from the person    | mi`singdogi-from the persons    |
| <b>vocative</b>     | ózábú-oh ! teacher         | ózásingbú-oh ! teachers         |

3. 1. 3  $\phi$ , *nominative**nɔ, agentive*3. 1. 3. 1  $\phi$ , *nominative*

$\phi$ , nominative occurs with the subjects of the stative verbs (predicative adjectives).

hɔ`inɔú thúmi`-the mango is sweet

lólá pɔ`ngi`-the donkey is foolish

lɔ`mhùì singi`-the fox is wise

mádhɔ`p ngàorɔ`mlè-Madhop had been mad

syám làirɔ`l-Syam is poor

$\phi$ , nominative occurs with the subjects of some transitive and intransitive verbs.

lɔ`i sàtli`-the flower blooms

lɔphù lɔ`ikóndɔ hɔ`uri`-the plaintain tree grows in the garden

sínmi` thɔ-bɔ`k sùri`-the worker is doing the work

syám párà páro`mlè-Syam had read his lesson

$\phi$ , nominative also occurs with the following :—

- (1) complement of an intransitive verb
- (2) complement of transitive verb
- (3) apposition to anyone to the above

*Examples -*

- (1) mádho`p ló`umi` ni`-Madhop is a peasant  
mósi` yúm ni`-this is a house
- (2) khúnzàsingno rámbú lúcingbo kho`nlè-the villagers have  
elected Ram their leader  
sò`rkárno syámbú kiráni hàplè-government has appointed  
Syam the clerk (1)
- (3) moshàk módhúgi monào gópál ni`-he is Modhu's younger  
brother Gopal  
mó`ntrínò mōcànùpà syámbú ózá hàplè-the minister has  
appointed his son Syam the teacher

3. 1. 3. 1 2 *no, agentive*

*no, agentive* is obligatory for the subjects of some types of the verbs.

*no, agentive* occurs with the subjects of the verbs expressing causation and physical contacts and with the subjects of the verbs occurring in the two coordinate clauses of the compound sentences.

## (1) causation

módhúnò rámbú cithi odù ího`nli`-Modhu has the letter  
written by Syam

mádho`pno syámbú phi sùho`nli`-Madhop gets that cloth  
washed by Syam

## (2) physical contact

mádho`pno módhúbú kho`ngpàkno kàowi`-Madhop kicks  
Modhu

syámno rámbú mùknà thá:í`-Syam defeats Ram in the  
wrestling

1. Complement of the transitive verbs never takes the accusative marker. Such complement is different from the nouns in the accusative case with a  $\Phi$  marker, because in the later case, the  $\Phi$  may be replaced by the variant pú. Objective complement is thus considered to be formally in the nominative.

## (3) two coordinate clauses

módhúno nò'k:i', mádho`pno kò'ppi`-Modhu laughs and Madhop cries  
 rámnò mú:i', syámno ngo'uwi`-Ram is black and Syam is white

no, agentive occurs with the subjects of following verbs :—

- (1) Verbs of the subordinate adjective clauses in pò, who/that and pógí, of why/where.
- (2) Verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in pò odù, what and pò odúk, as much as.

*Examples :—*

- (1) módhúno pábo láiri`k-the book that Modhu reads  
 mádho`pno sáso'mbo yùm-the house that Madhop built  
 rámnò kodáido kò'pò'mbogi wàri`-the story of where Ram cried  
 syámno koro'mno sáobogi wàri`-the story of how Syam is angry
- (2) múhónno hàiríbo odù-what Muhon is saying  
 ózánò tàkò'mbo odù-what the teacher taught  
 mádho`pno síngbo odúk rázéndi síngdè-Rajen is not as much wise as Madhop is  
 rámnò pò'ngbo odúk gópáldi pò'ngdè-Gopal is not as much foolish as Ram is

no, agentive also occurs with the subjects of the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses in língo'ido, while, pógúmno, just as ... so and póni`no, since.

mádho`pno gópál kò'uríngò'ido while Madhop is calling Gopal  
 mómánnò móbásíngbù ngàk sénobogúmno-just as the mother looks after her children

rámnò syámbù phùro'mlobonì`no-since Ram had beaten Syam

(no, is also instrumental marker which will be discussed later)

3. 1. 3. 2 *phi, pu', accusative*3. 1. 3. 2. 1 *phi, accusative*

*phi, accusative* occurs with the objects of the following types of the transitive verbs :—

- (1) many of the transitive verbs of the simple sentences
- (2) transitive verbs of the simple sentences and co-ordinate clauses expressing the Passive Voice without the subject.

*Examples :—*

- (1) *hùino cāk cā:i*—The dog eats the cooked rice  
*hō'udo'ngnō sō'nggóm thō'k:i*—The cat drinks the milk  
*mádhúno kói ko'k:i*—Modhu shaves his beard
- (2) *hùránbō phārè*—The thief has been caught  
*hōnùbi' hātlo'mlè*—The old woman had been killed  
*lòu yón:goni', íngkhón lō'igoni'*—The paddy land will be sold and homestead land will be bought  
*thō'bo'k sùgoni', khùtsùmo'n phō'nggoni'*—The work will be done and the wage will be got

3. 1. 3. 2. 2 *pu' accusative*

*pú, accusative* occurs with the objects of the transitive verbs of the simple sentences expressing (1) force, (2) encounter and (3) physical contact provided such objects precede the other words in the sentence.

*Examples :—*

- (1) force  
*gópálbú rámnō kho'ngpākno káowi'*—Ram kicks Gopal  
*módhúbú syámno cō'ino phū:i'*—Syam beats Modhu with the stick
- (2) encounter  
*kómólbú mádhō'pno kàngzō'i thōi*—Madhop defeats Komol in hockey  
*rámúbú syámno mùknà thā:i'*—Syam beats Ram in wrestling

(3) physical contact

mācābú māmāno cūppi`-The mother kisses her child  
módhúbú syámno kónli`-Modhu embraces Syam

pú, accusative also occurs with the following types of the objects of the transitive verbs in the simple sentences :—

- (1) objects occurring with the subjective complements
- (2) Indirect objects of the transitive verbs expressing appointment, causation etc
- (3) pronominal direct objects expressing persons

*Examples :—*

(1) objects with the subjective complements

mádhopno módhúbú mōnāo oīno lo`ino`i-Madhop treats Modhu as his younger brother  
rāmno syāmbú po,ndi`t oīno lo`ūwi`-Ram treats Syam as a scholar

(2) Indirect objects

khúnzāsingno módhúbú lúcingbo khs`nlè-The villagers have elected Modhu their leader

lo`ibākmōcāsingno rámbú níngtho`u hāplo`mi`-The citizens made Ram the king

módhúno rámbú cithi`iho`nli`-Modhu has the letter written by Ram

syámno gópálbú láiri`k phong:honli`-Syam gets the book published by Gopal

(3) pronominal direct objects

mádhopno mōhākpú káurè-Madhop has forgotten him  
módhúno mōhākpú ko`uri`-Modhu is calling you

(pú is also Vocative Case marker which will be shown later).

3. 1. 3. 3 *Instrumental, mediative, comitative*

*no, instrumental, mediative*

*ko, ko`lo`ino`no, comitative*

3 1. 3. 3. 1 *no, instrumental*



**no**, instrumental shows the instrument used in the consummation of the verbal action or the parts of body used in performing such action.

módhúno kólómno i-Modhu writes with the pen

mádhopno thàngno ho'i kho'k:i'-Madhop peels the fruit with the knife

múhónno mami'tmo'kno úro'klè-Muhon has seen with his own eyes

máláno gitábú kho'ngpàkno kàowì'-Mala kicks Gita

**no**, instrumental is used to show the following:—

- (1) cause, reason, origin
- (2) components with which things are made

*Examples—*

(1) mádhop kénso'rno si-Madhop dies of cancer  
rám mo'ino po'klè-Ram has been burnt with fire

(2) máláno lo'ibàkno cophù sá:i'-Mala makes the pot with earth  
rádháno lo'ngno phi sá:i'-Radha weaves the cloth with yarn

### 3. 1. 3. 3. 1 b *no*, mediative

Case marker—**no** has a mediative sense.

mádhopti' so'ngárinó lák:i'-Madhop comes by the bullock cart

rádhádi' hino co'tkhi'-Radha went by boat

syámdi' érópléno lák:i'-Syam comes by aeroplane

### 3. 1. 3. 2 *ko*, *ko lo'inono*, comitative

**ko** and **ko lo'inono**-comitative show accompaniment of/by non-abstract things or persons. They occur with the verbs in **mi-nno**, accompaniment.

máláno sántigo/sántigo lo'inono co'tmínno'i-Mala goes with Santi.

## 152—Morphology

mádhò'pno módhúgə/módhúgə lo'ínəno lo'imíəno'i-Madhòp  
lives with Modhu

ko occurs with the verbs in no, interaction.  
rámno syámgo kbo'tno'i-Ram quarrels with Syam  
rázénno gópálgo phúnno'i-Rajen fights with Gopal

### 3. 1. 3. 4 to, locative

to, locative is used in the sense of (1) in, inside, within, (2)  
at, (3) on, upon and (4) to.

#### (1) in, inside, within

i'mà i'múngdə lo'i-Mother is inside the house  
nóngpo'kto númí't tho'kə'i-The sun rises in the east.

#### (2) at

mádhò'p móirángdə láklè-Madhòp has come Moirang  
rám khuráido thúnglè-Ram has arrived at Khurai •

#### (3) on, upon

módhú cəúkrido túmlí-Modhu sleeps on the chair  
tébo'ldə láiri'k əmo lo'i-There is a book on the table

#### (4) to

mo'ntrino módhúdə həi-The minister says to Modhu  
rámno Syamdo wəhə'ng ədù ho'ngi'-Ram asks that ques-  
tion to Syam

### 3. 1. 3. 4. 1 to, mediative

Case marker—to has the mediative sense—'through, along'.  
módhúno mi'húthə'ngdə lo'íkón yéngi'-Modhu looks at the  
garden through the window

ə'n:gárinə lo'mbi' pəringdə cə'tli-The bullock cart goes along  
the road

### 3. 1. 3. 5 Genitive (possessive and qualificatory)

(a) ki', possessive genitive

(b) ki, qualificatory genitive

### 3. 1. 3. 5. 1 *ki'*, possessive genitive

*ki*, possessive genitive precedes the possessed nouns in both the numbers which occur with or without the Case markers.

(1) nouns in *ki* without Case markers

*málági láiri`k*-Mala's book

*mádhobígi li`k*-Madhabi's necklace

*nohárónsinggi phági*-jokes of the youths

*sinmi`singgi khùtsùmo`n*-wage of the workers

(2) nouns in *ki* with Case markers

*cohi` mori`gi ongàngdo*-to the four year old child

*lùpà oni`gi hò`ido*-to the fruits worth two rupees

*nùnggi yùmdo*-in the house of stone

*i`singgi mori`ktogi*-from the drop of water

*láiri`kki lámàidogi*-from the page of the book

*ùmo`nggi po`ttho`ktogi*-from the product of the forest

*ki* precedes some Relational words derived from the nominal stems with *mo*, secondary prefix and *to*, locative (See Chapter on Relational words ).

*kimòhùtto*, instead of ; *hò`igi mòhùtto*, instead of fruit

*kimòni`ngdo*, behind ; *yùngi mòni`ngdo*, behind the house

*kimòpándò*, outside ; *i`ngkhólgì mòpándò*-outside the homestead land

*kimòro`mdo*, about, concerning ; *lálgi mòro`mdo*, about the war

*kimòri`do*, in respect ; *cádinggi mòri`do*, in respect of expenditures

*kimòtungdo*, after, behind ; *thá omogi mòtungdo*, after one month

*kimòtho`kto*, on, in addition to, besides ; *mòdùgi mòtho`kto*, in addition to that

*kimòtho`ngdo*, next ; *rámgi mòthongdo*, next to Ram

### 3. 1. 3. 5. 2 *ki'* qualificatory genitive

Qualificatory genitive has *ki*.

*hò`ikón:gi hò`ising*, fruits of the orchard.

khún:gi lòumi'sing, peasants of the village

lò'ikón:gi lóising-flowers of the garden

móiránggi sínmi'sing-workers of Moirang

### 3. 1. 3. 6 *Dative (possessive, intensive, purposive, indirect object)*

- (a) ki, possessive dative
- (b) kídomò'k-intensive dative
- (c) kídomò'k-purposive dative
- (d) to, indirect object—dative
- (e) to, destinal dative

#### 3. 1. 3. 6. 1 *ki' possessive dative*

ki, possessive dative shows possession which is possessed by a possessor and expressed by such possessive verbs as lò'i, ngài, pán etc. expressing "have, had" etc.

módhúgi kólóm òmo lò'i-Modhu has a pen

mádhò'pki monào koyá lóibogè-How many younger brothers has Madhop ?

rámgi mocè òmotò ngài-Ram has only one elder sister

syámgi mocànùpà òmotò ngài-Syam has only one son

sàmúgi momò'i òmo pánli-The elephant has a tail

#### 3. 1. 3. 6. 2 *ki'domò'k. intensive dative*

kídomò'k, intensive dative is a compound of ki, possessive dative, to, only and mò'k, emphasiser.

mádhò'pno mocànùpàgídomò'k ghò'ri òmo lò'i-Madhòp buys a watch for his son

páonà brázò'básino morò'ibàkkídomò'k mothowài kò'tlò'mi'-  
Paona Brajabasi laid down his life for the country,

kídomò'k, intensive dative may be compressed into ki when the nouns in kídomò'k is preceded by the subject or object or both of the sentences.

rámno yùm òmo məcàgídomò'k/məcági sáro'mi'-Ram built a house for his son.

syámno thábo'k koyá sinmí'singgi-domo'k nó'mlō'mi'-Syam  
did many works for the workers

### 3. 1. 3. 6. 3 *ki'domək, purposive dative*

kidomək, purposive dative functions as the emphasiser. It may be added to the verbal modifiers in nobo, purpose of verbal action for the sake of emphasis on such modifiers.

cə'tnəbo/cə'tnəbəgigomə'k-in order to go

kə'knəbo/kəknəbəgidomə'k-in order to cut

kidomək, purposive dative may compressed into ki.

sə'knəbo/səknəbəgidomək//sə'knəbəgi-in order to sing

tə'knəbo/tə'knəbəgidomək/tə'knəbəgi-in order to grind

### 3. 1. 3. 6. 4 *Indirect object-dative*

to, Indirect object-dative occurs with the Indirect objects of some Transitive verbs like kə't/pi', give, sinno, hand over. In such case, direct objects of these transitive verbs take  $\phi$ , accusative.

módhúno khúnzàsingdo lùpà cəmo kə'tli-Modhu donates one  
hundred rupees to the villagers

mádho'pno rámdo kómá pi'-Madhop gives an orange to Ram  
sə'gónđo sə'zi'k pi'zosi'-Let us give grass/fodder to the horse  
syámno məcə'ndə só sinno'i-Syam hands over the key to his  
younger sister

Indirect object—dative in to occurs with the prominal objects in pú, accusative.

rámnə mōhākpú púlistə ùtli-Ram shows him to the police  
syámno məkho'ibú mō'ntrido sinnorə'mi'-Syam left them to  
the care of the minister

### 3. 1. 3. 6. 5 *Destinational dative*

to, destinational dative occurs with the destinational nouns associated with the verbs of motion, like lək, come, thung, arrive etc.

débén ho'yéng káncípúrdó lákkoni`-Deben will come to Kanchipur tomorrow

gópno nohán móirángdo thúnglo'mi`-Gopal arrived at Moirang the day before yesterday.

to, destinational dative may be replaced by  $\phi$  (zero) when the destinational noun in to is associated with a few verbs of motion. This  $\phi$  should be confused with  $\phi$ , accusative because it cannot be replaced by pu, accusative.

zítén ngosi i'mpháldo/i'mphál cō'tkoni`-Jiten will go to Imphal today.

zōtin hoyéng móirángdo/móiráng jo'uro'kpo yái-Jotin may proceed upto Moirang tomorrow.

### 3. 1. 3 7 Ablative (Separative and Comparative)

toḡi, ablative is a compound of to, locative and ki, genitive.

(a) toḡi, separative ablative

(b) toḡi, comparative ablative

#### 3. 1. 3. 1 toḡi', separative ablative

toḡi. separative ablative shows spatial or temporal separation.

mádhō'pno tho'nggándogí cēnlo'mi`-Madhop ran from the gate úḡdogí únà kénli-leaves fall from the tree

#### 3- 1. 3. 7. 2 toḡi', comparative ablative

toḡi, comparative ablative shows the following :—

(a) cōmparision between two persons or things

(b) comparison with reference to more than two persons or things

(c) comparison with reference to some adverbs

*Examples :—*

(a) mōsi'no mōḡḡdogí hénno phō'i`-This is better than that  
thàngdogí kólómno mōti'k mōgún hénli-The pen is mightier  
than the sword

- (b) comparison with reference to more than two persons/ things  
 módhuno ɔngàngsɪngdɔgi i'hén hénno pho'i-Modhu is the best of all boys  
 mɔsɪno pùmnɔmo`ktɔgi pɪ`k:i`-This is the smallest of all
- (c) comparison with reference to adverbs  
 mádhò`pno rázéndɔgi hánnɔ lák:i`-Madhop comes earlier than Rajen  
 rámnɔ syámdɔgi kónno thúngi`-Ram arrives later than Syam

tɔgi, ablative is used to show the following :—

- (a) components with which things are made  
 (b) difference between two persons or things

*Examples :—*

- (a) mádhò`pno sɔ`nggómɔdɔgi ghi` ləuwi` Madhop extracts ghi out of milk  
 nùpi`sɪngno lɔ`sɪngdɔgi lɔ`ng náí-Women spin yarn out of cotton
- (b) mɔsɪ`dɪ` mɔdùdɔgi khénno`i-This is different from that  
 i`ɪ`ɪgdɪ` sɔ`nggómɔdɔgi khénno`pho`m tho`k:i-Water should be different from milk

tɔgi, ablative is also used to show the following :—

- (a) spatial or temporal starting point  
 (b) temporal duration with reference to the continuous verbal action of the present and past tenses

*Example :—*

- (a) i`mphaɪdɔgi káncipúr pháobɔ débéno kho`ngno cɔ`tli-Deben goes on foot from Imphal to Kanchipur  
 khún ɔsɪ` bɪsnúpúrdɔgi kho`rɔ` thàpɪ`-This village is at a distance from Bisnupur
- (b) ɔyùktɔgi mádhò`p láiri`k páro`klɪ-Madhop has been reading since morning  
 hákúmdɔgi módhú ɔsɪ`dɔ lɔ`ɪrɔ`k i-Modhu has been staying here since last year

3. 1. 3. 1 *pu'*, vocative

*pu'*, vocative occurs with the human nouns in both the numbers

*i'bùngo'bú*, oh ! gentleman

*i'beməbú-oh* ! lady

*mərùpsingbú-oh* ! friends

*mə'ntrisingbú oh* ! ministers

3. 1. 3. 9 *Emphatic Case Markers*

Emphatic Case markers signify emphasis on the meanings of some Case markers without any modification to such meanings. They may be classified into the following groups :—

- (1) Emphatic replative Case markers replacing the Case markers
- (2) Emphatic additive replative Case markers occurring with and replacing the case markers

3. 1. 3. 9. 1 *Emphatic Replative Case markers*

*ko*, comitative and *to*, locative/mediative function as the emphatic replative Case markers. *kho'i/sá*, emphatic replative plural marker is also used as the emphatic replative Case marker.

1. *ko*, emphatic replative Case marker

*ko*, emphatic replative Case marker may replace *togi*, ablative when *togi* expresses the difference between the two persons or things.

*mosi'di` mɔdùdogi/mɔdùgo khénno`i*-This is different from that

*sə'nggómdi` i'singdogi/i'singgo khénno'pho'm tho`k:i`*-milk should be different from water.

2. *to*, emphatic replative Case marker

*to*, emphatic replative Case marker may replace *no*, mediative



módho'pti' sò'on: gá'ino/sò'n gárido lák:i' - Madhop comes by the bullock cart

rádhádi' hí'no/hído cò'tkhi-Radha went by boat

rámdi' éróplénno/éróplendo lak:i'-Ram comes by aeroplane

### 3. *kho'i/sá, emphatic replacive Case marker*

*kho'i/sá*, emphatic replacive Case marker may replace *pú* in a few personal and human nouns in the plural. In such case, *sá* occurs with the personal nouns in *mócà*, male.

#### (a) *pú/kho'i*

| <i>general forms</i><br><i>in pu'</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i><br><i>in kho'i</i> | <i>meanings</i>          |
|---------------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| i'bùngósíngbú                         | i'bùngókho'i                             | oh ! gentlemen           |
| i'bémósíngbú                          | i'bémókho'i                              | oh ! ladies              |
| i'nàósíngbú                           | i'nàókho'i                               | oh ! my younger brothers |
| tádósíngbú                            | tádókho'i                                | oh ! my elder brothers   |

#### (b) *pú/sá*

| <i>general forms</i><br><i>in pu'</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i><br><i>in sa'</i> | <i>meanings</i>                        |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| i'cò'nsíngtú                          | i'cò'nsá                               | oh ! my younger sisters                |
| i'sènsíngbú                           | i'sénsá                                | oh ! husbands of my<br>younger sisters |
| lò'ibàkmócàsíngbú                     | lò'ibàk mócàsá                         | oh ! citizens                          |
| khágímócàsíngtú                       | khágímócàsá                            | oh ! citizens of China                 |

### 3. 1. 3. 9. 2 *Emphatic Additive Replacive Case Markers*

*nó*, agentive/instrumental/mediative and *pú*, Accusative/Vocative function as the emphatic additive replacive Case markers. *dí*, a bound morpheme is also used as the emphatic additive replacive Case marker.

1 *nó*, emphatic additive replacive Case marker

1 (1) *nó* occurring with *pú*, to etc.

*nó*, emphatic additive replacive Case marker occurs with the nominal forms in the co-ordinate clauses of the compound sentences with the following Case markers:—

## 160—Morphology

- (a)  $\phi$ , accusative
- (b) pú accusative
- (c) to, locative

Examples :—

- (a)  $\phi$ , accusative + no

ho'ino'u/hc'ino'uno dāmúno cà:i', gi'hóm/gi'hómno dórén-  
no cà i'-Damu eats the mango and Doren eats the pine-  
apple

so'iréng/so'iréngno kábino í, wàréng/wàréngno po'ndi'tno  
i-Poet writes poem and scholar writes prove

- (b) pú, accusative + no

módhúbú/mádhúbúno phùrè, débéntú/déhnébúno phàrè-  
Modhu has been beaten and and Deben has been arrested  
rámbú/íámbúno ko'nlè, syámbú/syámbúno hàtlè Ram has  
been saved and Syam has been killed

- (c) to, locative + ro

máládo/máládono sén thà:i, rádhádo/rádhádono cithi thà:i'-  
Money is sent to Mala and letter is sent to Raucha  
mòdhúdo/módhúdono wàho'ng mòngà ho'r<sub>gi</sub>i', mádho'p'o/  
mádho'ptono korisù ho'ngdè-Two questions are asked to  
Modhu and nothing is asked to Madhop

1 (1/2) no, occurring with  $\phi$ , nominative and to<sub>gi</sub>, ablative

no may occur with the nominal forms of the simple sen-  
tences with  $\phi$ , nominative and to<sub>gi</sub>, ablative

- (a)  $\phi$ , nominative + no

módhú/módhúno càk cà:i'-Modhu takes the meal  
múhón/múhónno pára páre-Muhon has read his lesson.

- (b) to<sub>gi</sub>, ablative + no

i'mpháldogí/i'mpháldogino no'mból phàobo módhúno m-  
kho'ngno co'tli-Modhu goes on foot from Imphal to Nam-  
bol.

bisnúpúrdogí/bisnúpúrdogíno káncipúr pháobo mádhò'pno so'n:garíno lák:i'-Madhop comes by the bullock cart from Bisnupur to Kanchipur.

no, also occurs with the nominal forms of the coordinate clauses in togí, ablative

káncipúrdogí/káncipúrdogíno mi'hút mongà lák:i'-Bisnúpúrdogí/bisnúpúrdogíno omotà láktè-Five representatives come from Kanchipur but none comes from Bisnupur.

mocèdogí/mocèdogíno kólóm omo pho'ngi', moyàmbodogí/moyàmbodogíno korísù pho'ngdè-He gets a pen from his elder sister and nothing from his elder brother

## 1 (2) no replacing ka lo'inono, comitative

no, emphatic additive replative plural marker may replace ka lo'inono, comitative when ka lo'inono shows accompaniment of/by abstract feelings.

módhúno kho'ràng kho'ísáobogo lo'inono/kho'ràng kho'ísáono motom lènlí Modhu spends his time with anxiety

mádhò'pno nínngzing mǎngzingnobogo lo'inono/ nínngzing mǎngzingnobogo thobok tóúwì'-Madhop does the work with hesitation

rámno korém kotháínobogo lo'inono/korém kotháínono wà ngàngi'-Ram speaks with derision

## 2 pú, emphatic additive replative case marker

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with the nominal forms of the interrogative sentences with the following case markers :—

- (a)  $\phi$ , nominative
- (b)  $\phi$ , accusative
- (b) kidomò'k, intensive dative
- (d) no, agentive
- (e) no, instrumental
- (f) togí, ablative

*Examples :—*

- (a)  $\phi$ , nominative + pú  
 módhú/módhúbú cə̀tkə́dɔ́rá - Will Modhu go ?  
 mádhə̀p/mádhə̀ppú láklə́mbə́rá Did Madhop come ?
- (b)  $\phi$ , accusative + pú  
 cək/cəkpú cə́rə́bɔ́rá - Have you taken your meal ?  
 párá/párábú pá́rə́mlə́bɔ́rá - Had he read his lesson ?
- (c) kídə́mɔ̀k, intensive dative + pú  
 módhúgídə́mɔ̀k/módhúgídə́mɔ̀kpú kə́rɪ́gi ɡhə́'ri lə́'igə́dɔ́gə̀ -  
 Why will you buy the watch for Modhu ?  
 nə́rə́'ibə́kkídə́mɔ̀k/nə́rə́'ibə́kkídə́mɔ̀kpú nə́'ngnə́ kə́rɪ́ tɔ́u-  
 rə́bɔ́gə̀ - What have you done for your country ?
- (d) nə́, agentive + pú  
 mádhə̀pnə́/mádhə̀pnə́bú rámbú pá́ngə́bɔ́rá - Does Madhop  
 help Ram ?  
 módhúnə́/módhúnə́bú syám phú́rə́mbə́rá - Did Modhu beat  
 Syam ?
- (e) nə́, instrumental + pú  
 sórinə́/sórinə́bú kó́i kə́'kpə́rá - Do you shave your beards  
 with the knife ?  
 thə́ngsə́ngnə́/thə́ngsə́ngnə́bú síng khə́igə́dɔ́rá - Will you cut  
 the fuel with the sword ?
- (f) tɔ́gi, ablative + pú  
 ɡópə́ldɔ́gi/ɡópə́ldɔ́gibú sən phə́'nggə́dɔ́rá - Will you get  
 money from Gopal ?  
 mádhə̀ptɔ́gi/mádhə̀tɔ́gibú pá́otək lə́'urə́bɔ́rá - Have you  
 taken advice from Madhop

## 2 (2) pú, replacing kí, possessive genitive

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker may replace kí, possessive genitive when kí precedes the possessed nouns denoting the parts of body.

módhúgi makhùt/módhúbú makhùt kónáno thúdèkpogé-Who breaks Modhu's hand ?

mádho`pki mako`k/mádho`ppú mako`k gópáno thugàirè-Gopal has broken Madhop's head.

syámgi mənà/syámbú mənà ló'iroborá-Have you squized Syam's ear ?

## 2 (3) pú occurring with or replacing to, locative

pú, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with to, locative in the nominal forms of the interrogative sentences.

dámùdò/dámúdóbú cithi thàkhróborá-Had you sent the letter to Damu ?

débéndò/débéndóbú syámno kori hàibogè-What does Syam say to Deben

pú may replace to, locative when to occurs with the nominal adjuncts referring to the objects of the transitive verbs.

mádho`pto/mádho`ppú rá`nno ko`kyèt yètpi`-Ram fixes the turban on Syam's head

mómànò mœàdò/mœàbú tûpi ùppi`-The mother fixes the cap on her child's head.

## 3 dî, emphatic additive replative case marker

### 3 (1) dî occurring with kidomò`k, nò, to, tógi etc.

dî, emphatic additive replative case marker occurs with the nominal forms of the negative sentences with the following case markers :—

- (a)  $\phi$ , nominative
- (b)  $\phi$ , accusative
- (c) kidomò`k, intensive dative
- (d) nò, instrumental
- (e) to, locative
- (f) tógi, ablative

### Examples —

#### (a) $\phi$ , nominative + dî

módhú/módhúdî cá tho`ktè-Modhu does not drink tea.

málá/máládî párà pádè-Mala does not read her lesson

- (b) Ø, accusative + di  
 dāmúnò pho'u/pho'udí wándè, cèng/cèngdí wánli-Damu  
 does not buy the paddy but buys the rice.  
 débénno pho'u/pho'udí táidè, thúm/thúmdí táí-Deben does  
 not sell the paddy but sells the salt.
- (c) kídómò`k, intensive dative + di  
 módhúgidómò`k/módhúgidómò`ktí mɔpànò kòrisù tɔúbí`dè-  
 The father does not do anything for Modhu  
 mɔrɔ`bàkkídómò`k/mɔrɔ`bàkkídómò`ktí nóbínno kòrisù  
 nò`mdè-Nobin works nothing for his country
- (d) nò, instrumental + di  
 lɔ`ikho`mnò/lɔ`ikho`mnòdí láidí sáɔnɔdè-No one makes  
 doll with mud  
 thàngnò/thàngnòdí kói ko`knòdè-No one shaves his beards  
 with knife
- (e) tɔ, locative + di  
 módhúdo/módhúdòdí gópálnò cithí thàro`mlói-Modhu will  
 not send the letter to Gopal  
 múhóndo/múhóndòdí dāmúnò kòrisòmòtò ho`ngdè- Damu  
 nothing ask to Muhon
- (f) tɔgí, ablative + di`  
 rámdɔgí/rámdɔgídí` sɛn pho`nglói-You will not get money  
 from Ram.  
 syámdɔgí/syámdɔgídí cithí láklói-No letter will come from  
 Syam

### 3 (2) di`, replacing or occurring with kí, nò and pú

di`, emphatic additive replacive Case marker may replace or occur with kí possessive genitive, nò, agentive and pú, accusative when such Case markers occur with the nominal forms in the negative sentences.

- (a) kí possessive genitive and di`  
 dāmúgí/dámúdí/dámúgídí mɔcànùpà tɔ`itè-Damu has no  
 son

módhúgi/módhúdi`/módhúgidi` mɔpà lɔ'itè-Modhu has no father

yónggi/yóngdi`/yónggidi` moci` pándè-Monkey has no horn

(b) nɔ, agentive and di`

débénno/débéndi`/débénodi` rámbú phùde- Deben does not beat Ram

dórénnɔ/dóréndi`/dórénnodi` syámbú pángdè-Doren does not help Syam

rámno/rámdi`/rámnodi` modù tɔúdè-Ram does not do that

(c) pú, accusative and di`

múhónbú/múhónbi`/múhónbúdi` hùino c`kìtè-The dog does not bite Muhon

módhúbú/módhúdi`/ módhúbúdi` híngcàbono hàtlè- The monster does not kill Modhu

nóbinbú/nóbinbi`/nóbinbúdi` syámno káodè- Syam des not forget Nobin

## 3.2 Pronoun

Pronouns are a closed class. They do not distinguish genders and are thus used in both the masculine and feminine genders. Pronouns may be classified into the following types :—

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Personal pronouns      | 6. Separative pronouns    |
| 2. Reflexive pronouns     | 7. Distributive pronouns  |
| 3. Reciprocal pronouns    | 8. Interrogative pronouns |
| 4. Demonstrative pronouns | 9. Indefinite pronouns    |
| 5. Determinative pronouns |                           |

### 3. 2. 1 Personal Pronouns

#### 3. 2. 1. 1 Personal Pronouns in the singular

Personal pronouns in the singular are monosyllabic forms. They are shown below :—

ɔ'i, I

nɔ'ng, you(singular)

mà, he/she

o`i càk càrì, I am taking my meal

nò`ng hayéng cò`ikédorá-Will you go tomorrow

mà ngosi` lákkoni`-He will come today

Personal pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative. Such pronouns in the nominative, accusative, genitive and dative take only the markers of these cases.

o`igi-mine

b`igidomò`k-for me

nò`nggi-your (singular)

nò`nggidomò`k-for you

màgi-his/her

màgidomò`k-for him/her

Personal pronouns in the locative and ablative take ngo`n, secondary infix and markers of these cases.

o`ingo`ndo-to me

o`ingo`ndagi-from me

nòngo`ndo-to you

nòngo`ndagi-from you

mòngo`ndo-to him/her

mòngo`ndagi-from him/her

### 3 2 1. 1. 1 *Emphatic forms of the personal pronouns in the singular*

Emphatic forms of the personal pronouns in the singular are formed by adding hàk. secondary suffix to the personal pronouns. Such forms are declined in the cases other than locative and ablative.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| o`igi                | oi`hàkki              | mine           |
| o`igidomò`k          | oi`càkkidomò`k        | for mine       |
| nò`nggi              | nòhàkki               | your           |
| nò`nggidomò`k        | nòhàkkidomò`k         | for you        |



|            |               |             |
|------------|---------------|-------------|
| màgi       | mohàkki       | his/her     |
| màgidomo`k | mohàkkidomo`k | for him/her |

### 3. 2. 1. 1. 2 *Honorific forms of the personal pronouns in the singular*

Honorific form of the first person in the singular is formed by prefixing *nónái*, your servant to *o`i*, I. *nónái* is used as the honorific form of the third person. *oso`m* (proximate) and *odo`m* (remote) are the honorific forms of the second person.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>honorific forms</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>o`i</i>           | <i>nónái o`i</i>       | I              |
| <i>no`ng</i>         | <i>odo`m/oso`m</i>     | you (singular) |
| <i>mà</i>            | <i>nónái</i>           | he/she         |

*nónái o`i*, I in the locative and ablative take *ngo`n* and the markers of such cases. *oso`m/odo`m*, you and *nónái*-he/she are declined in the two cases without *ngo`n*.

*nónái o`i`gi*-mine  
*nónái o`i`ngo`ndo*-to me  
*odo`mgi/oso`mgi*-your  
*odo`mdo/oso`mdo*-to you  
*nónáigi* his/her  
*nónáido*-to him/her

*nónái o`i`hàk* is another honorific form of the first person. It is the extension of *nónái o`i*, I with *hàk*, secondary suffix. It is not declined in the locative and ablative,

*nónái o`i`hàkki*-mine  
*nónái o`i`hàkkidomo`k*-for me

### 3. 2. 1. 2 *Personal Pronouns in the plural*

Personal pronouns express plural taking *kho`i*, epicene plural marker.

| <i>singular forms</i> | <i>plural forms</i>  |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>o`i</i> -I         | <i>o`i`kho`i</i> -we |

*singular forms*

nɔ̀ng-you

mà-he/she

ɔ̀ikho`i párá páré-We have read our lesson

nɔ̀kho`i hoyéng lákkàdará-will you come tomorrow

mɔ̀kho`i thòbò`k sùrì-they are doing the work

*plural forms*

nɔ̀kho`i-you

mɔ̀kho`i-they

3. 2. 1. 2. 1 *Emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns*

Emphatic personal forms of the personal pronouns are formed by adding mɔ̀kho`i, emphatic additive plural marker to the plural forms of such pronouns,

*plural forms*

ɔ̀ikho`i

nɔ̀kho`i

mɔ̀kho`i

*emphatic plural forms*

ɔ̀ikho`imɔ̀kho`i

nɔ̀kho`imɔ̀kho`i

mɔ̀kho`imɔ̀kho`i

*meaning*

we

you

they

3. 2. 1. 2. 2 *Honorific plural forms of the first person*

Honorific plural forms of the first person are formed by prefixing nonái, your servant to the plural and emphatic plural forms of such person.

*plural forms*

ɔ̀ikho`i

*emphatic plural forms*

nonái ɔ̀ikho`i

nonáiɔ̀ikho`imɔ̀kho`i

*meaning*

we

3. 2. 1. 2. 3. *Declension of the personal pronouns in the plural*

Plural forms and emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns and the honorific plural forms of the first person are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

(1) *plural forms*

ɔ̀ikho`ibú-us

ɔ̀ikho`igi-our

nɔ̀kho`ibú-you (accusative)

nɔ̀kho`igi-your

mɔ̀kho`ibú-them

mɔ̀kho`igi-their

(2) *emphatic plural forms*

ɔi`kho`iməkho`ibú-us  
 ɔi`kho`iməkho`gi-our  
 nəkho`iməkho`ibú-you (accusative)  
 nəkho`iməkho`igi-your  
 məkho`iməkho`ibú-them  
 məkho`iməkho`igi-their

(3) *honorific plural forms of the first person*

nənáɪ ɔi`kho`ibú/nənáɪ ɔi`kho`iməkho`ibú-us  
 nənáɪ ɔi`kho`igi/nənáɪ ɔi`kho`iməkho`igi-our

3. 2. 1. 2. 4 *Occurance of si'ng with the personal pronouns in the plural*

sing, emphatic additive plural marker may occur with the plural forms and emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns when such forms are defined by ɔsi`, those. In such case, sing is preceded by kho`i plural marker and followed by ɔsi` or ɔsi` and məkho`i, emphatic additive plural marker.

ɔi`kho`sing ɔsi`/ɔi`kho`sing ɔsi`məkho`i those of us  
 nəkho`ising ɔsi`/nəkho`ising ɔsi` məkho`i-those of you  
 məkho`ising ɔsi`/məkho`ising ɔsi` məkho`i those of them

3. 2. 1. 3 *Denotation of genders*

Personal pronouns do not distinguish genders. In a content, the gender is known from the adjunct which is in accord with such pronouns.

ɔi`núpà ni`-I am a man  
 nə`ng núpà`ni`-you are a woman  
 mà núpà ni`-He is a man

When there are stative verbal qualifiers (attributive adjectives) in pi`, female marker and the verbal nouns in pi` used as subjective complement, their accord with the personal pronouns shows feminine gender

## 170—Morphology

oso'nbi` o'ikho`ino-those of us who are weak (feminine)  
opo'ngbi` məkho`ino-those of them who are foolish (feminine)  
o`idi` thado`klobi` ni`-I am the one who has given up all (feminine)  
məkho`idi` ngoráng láklo'mbi` odu` ni`-They are the ones who came yesterday

### 3, 2. 1. 4 *Personal pronouns and their areas of meanings*

#### 1 o'ikho'i-we

o'ikho'i, we is used to express editorial self  
o'ikho`ino hánno háiro'mloba odu` ni`-We had already said

o'ikho'i is also used when self is identified with a group of persons as family, friends etc.

o'ikho'igi` yúm-our house (meaning 'my house')  
o'ikho`idi` osùm tóúdè-We do not act like this

o'ikho'i, we is used to express authoratative self.

o'ikho`ino hàibo odu` ni`-We say (by a person of dignity as a chairman of a committee).

#### 2 no'ng, you (singular)

no'ng, you (singular) and nəkho'i, you (plural) are terms of intimacy and affection. They are used by the superiors and elders towards the juniors. They are also used between the friends. Use of no'ng and nəkho'i towards the elders is considered as low speech,

#### 3 Honorific forms of the personal pronouns

Honorific forms of the personal pronouns are too formal and are thus used in addressing respectable persons.

ongo`m níngtho'u ! nonái o'ikho'i hoyéng lákco'goni`- Oh ! king of the Angoms ! we will come tomorrow.

i`níngtho'u nonái o'ikho'i i`ro'ibakkidəmək thowài ko'tco'goni`-Oh King ! we will lay down our lives for our country.

The two honorific forms of the second person (singular) viz., *odo'm* (remote) and *oso'm* (proximate) are used to the persons of the same age in both the genders.

*odo'mno oi'bu pángbi'ri*-You are helping me

*oso'mno hàibi'ribc odu o'i tázori*-I am listening to what you are saying

#### 4 *i'bùngó*, gentleman and *i'bémó*, lady

*i'bùngó*, gentleman and *i'bémó*, lady are added to the personal nouns in the second and third persons to express honorific implications.

*i'cébémono syámdno lúpà camo pi'bi'è*-She (elder sisiter) has given Syam one hundred rupees

*táibùngóno o'ibú pángbi'*-You (elder brother) help me

#### 3. 2. 1. 5 *Personal Possessive prefixes*

Personal possessive prefixes are— *i'*, my/our, *no*, your (both the numbers) and *mo*, his/her/their. They may replace the personal pronouns in both the numbers and genitive case used before some monosyllabic and disyllabic nouns.

*i'ro'n*-my/our wealth

*i'yùm*-my/our house

*no'ro'n*-your wealth

*no'yùm*-your house

*mo'ro'n*-his/her/their wealth

*mo'yùm*-his/her/their house

#### 3. 2. 1. 5. *Personal Possessive Prefixes as emphasisers*

Personal possessive prefixes function as the emphasisers occurring with possessed nouns defined and preceded by the personal pronouns in both the numbers and genitive case.

*oi'gi yùm/oi'gi i'yùm*-my house

*oi'kho'igi yùm/o'ikho'igi i'yùm*-our house

*no'nggi yùm/no'nggi no'yùm* your house (singular)

*o'kho'gi yùm/o'kho'gi no'yùm*-your house (plural)

màgí yùm/màgí møyùm-his/her house

məkho`igi yùm/məkho`igi møyùm-their house

3 2. 1. 5. 2 i, 'my' expressing 'your' (singular)

—i, 'my' expresses 'your' (singular) occurring with the personal nouns of relationship in the vocative case,

i`cègi i`hùngo`-oh ! your elder sister's dearest one

i`màgi ní. ɣthém-oh ! your mother's king (son)

i`pàgi məní oh ! your father's jewel

3. 2. 1. 5. 3 mɔ, third personal possessive prefix and mɔ, secondary prefix

mɔ, third personal possessive prefix expresses his/her their. mɔ, secondary prefix function as (a) word forming affix and (b) emphasiser. mɔ, third personal possessive prefix may replace mɔ, secondary prefix when mɔ, secondary prefix functions as the emphasiser occurring with some nouns denoting relationship and parts of body.

*mɔ, secondary prefix*

mɔcè hàibo ɔsi`di` mɔmàgúmbo  
ni`-Elder sister is like mother

mɔyámbo hàibo ɔsi`di` mɔpà  
gúmbo ni`-elder brother is like  
father

módhúdi` kò`k/məko`k tàngi`-  
Modhu is bald

mádho`pti` mi`t/məmi`t tàngi`-  
Madhop is blind

*mɔ, third personal prefix*

mɔcèɔ rámbú kò`uwi`-Ram is  
called by his elder sister

mɔyámboɔ syámbú pángi`-Syam  
is helped by his elder brother

módhúgi kò`k/məko`k-Modhu's  
head

mádho`pki` mi`t/məmi`t- Ma-  
dhop's eye

mɔ, third personal possessive prefix cannot replace mɔ, secondary prefix when mɔ, secondary prefix occurs as the obligatory component of some nouns. mɔ, secondary prefix as the word forming affix is shown below :—

mɔcú-colour ; məkú-owl ; mɔpù-owner ; mərùp-friend ;  
mɔtə`m-time.

mō, secondary prefix is mistaken by some writers as, mō, third personal possessive prefix. Such writers thus tell a baseless story that Manipuris cannot conceive a mother except as someone's mother and they add possessive prefixes to such nouns as mother, eye, hand etc.

### 3. 2 2 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

#### 3. 2. 2. 1 *Reflexive Pronouns in the singular*

Reflexive pronouns in the singular are formed by adding the personal possessive prefixes to sāmō'k, self.

i'sāmō'k-myself

nosāmō'k yourself (singular)

mosāmō'k-himself/herself

i'sāmō'k cō'tkoni'-I myself will go

nosāmō'kno modū tōugodōuboni' You must do it yourself

mosāmō'k lāklo'mgoni'-He will have come himself

Reflexive pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

i'sāmō'kkidomō'k for myself

nosāmō'kkidomō'k for yourself (singular)

mosāmō'kkidomō'k for himself/herself

#### 3. 2. 2. 1. 1 *Emphatic forms of the Reflexive Pronouns in the singular*

Emphatic forms of the Reflexive Pronouns in the singular are formed by prefixing personal pronouns (singular) or emphatic personal pronouns (singular) to the reflexive pronouns.

| Person      | meaning             | Two forms of the Reflexive pronouns in the singular |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------|---|---------------------------------|
|             |                     | general forms                                       | emphatic forms                  |
| 1st persons | myself              | i'sāmō'k  | oi' i'sāmō'k<br>oi'hāk i'sāmō'k |
| 2nd person  | yourself            | nosāmō'k  | ho'ng nosāmō'<br>nohāk nosāmō'k |
| 3rd person  | himself/<br>herself | mosāmō'k  | mā mosāmō'k<br>mohāk mōhā nō'k  |

Declension of the emphatic Reflexive Pronouns in the singular is same as that of the reflexive pronouns in this number.

### 3. 2. 2 Reflexive pronouns in the plural

Reflexive pronouns in the plural are formed by prefixing the plural forms of the Personal pronouns to the reflexive pronouns in the singular.

o'ikho'i i'sàmo'k-we ourselves

no'kho'i no'sàmo'k-you yourselves

ma'kho'i ma'sàmo'k-they themselves

no'kho'i no'sàmo'kno modù hàirò'mi'-you yourselves said it

ma'kho'i ma'sàmo'kno modù tò'uro'mgòni' they will have done it themselves.

Declension of the Reflexive Pronouns in the plural is same as the that of reflexive pronouns in the singular.

### 3. 2. 3 Reciprocal Pronouns :

Reciprocal Pronouns are formed by adding (a) personal possessive prefixes and sén or (b) mo, third personal possessive prefix and sén to the personal pronouns in the plural.

*Personal pronouns in plural*      *meaning*      *Reciprocal pronouns*

o'ikho'i

we

o'ikho'i i'sén

no'kho'i

you

o'ikho'i ma'sén

no'kho'i no'sén

ma'kho'i

they

no'kho'i ma'sén

ma'kho'i ma'sén

no'kho'i no'sén/ma'sén kho'tnoba adù táisinnogòdò'ubonì'-you must settle the dispute among yourselves

ma'kho'i ma'sén lo'n : thúm pùnmomo'k yénno'ro'mi'- They divided the property among the themselves

Declension of the Reciprocal Pronouns is same as that of the personal pronouns in the plural. ma'kho'i ma'sén, reciprocal pronoun (third person) may occur with mo'ho'i mo'ho'i

ma'kho'i ma'sén mo'ho'i mo'ho'i khotnoro-they have quarrelled among themselves.



### 3. 2. 4 Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative Pronouns have two forms viz , (a) proximate and (b) remote.

Proximate Demonstrative pronouns are formed by adding *o*, secondary prefix to *si*, this and *tù*, that. Remote Demonstrative Pronouns are formed by adding *mo*, secondary prefix to *si*, this and *tù*, that.

| meanings   Proximate and remote forms of the demonstrative pronouns |                 |            |              |
|---|-----------------|------------|--------------|
|   | proximate forms |            | remote forms |
| this  |                 | <i>osi</i> | <i>mosi</i>  |
| that  |                 | <i>odù</i> | <i>modù</i>  |

*osi/mosi ho'ino'u ni*-This is the mango

*odù/modù kólóm lá*-is that a pen ?

#### 3. 2. 4. 1 Declension of the Demonstrative Pronouns

Proximate and remote demonstrative pronouns are declined in the cases other than the Vocative.

*osi'no/mosi'no*-with this

*osi'do/mosi'do*-to this

*osi'dogi/mosi'dogi*-from this

*osi'gidomok/mosi'gidomok*-for this

*odùno/modùno*-with that

*odùdo/modùdo*-to that

*odùdogi/modùdogi*-from that

*odùgidomo'k/modùgidomo'k*-for that

*osi'do modù tinsinsi*-Let us add that to this

*modùdogi mosi' kháido'kkè*-Let me subtract this from that

*modùdi' gópáldo pí'asonù*-let him give that to Gopal

#### 3. 2. 4. 1. 2 Modification of the Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to express (a) 'you' (honorific singular), (b) 'it' and (c) 'what'.

## 176—Morphology

### 1. modù, it

modù, that (remote) expresses 'it' referring to the following :—

- (a) a lifeless thing
- (b) an idea expressed by a preceding word group or phrase.

*Examples :—*

- (a) hi odù tórbánda thégzi`nli, modù lùplè—The boat dashes against the bank of the river and it sinks.
- (b) modù thá khorogi wà ni`, còyon khorogi wà nottè—It is a matter of months, not of weeks,

modù, that also expresses 'it' referring to the following:—

- (a) a less close connection between two statements
- (b) a child or baby whose sex is unknown or a matter of inference

*Examples :—*

(a) no`ngno hòudóng hàtkodo`uriné, modù tóugorú—you are going to kill the cat. Don't do it.

móngóndo cithi omo thási, modù thúno to`usi` let us send him a letter. Let us do it at once

- (b) modùno tóuboni`—it does it

### 2. osi /odù, what

osi, this (proximate) and odù, that (proximate) express 'what' occurring with the main verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in po, marker of infinitive.

módhúno hàiríbo odù/osi`tási`—Let us hear what Modhu is saying

ózáno tàklo`mbo odù/osi` káogonú—Don't forget what the teacher taught

Syámno pho`nggodo`uríbo odù/osi` lúpà càmorómto ni`—what Syam will get is about one hundred rupees.

### 3. ɔdɔ̀m/ɔsɔ̀m, 'you' (honorific singular)

ɔdɔ̀m and ɔsɔ̀m are the honorific singular forms of the second person. They are formed by adding lòm 'towards' to ɔdù, that and ɔsì this.

ɔdɔ̀mnɔ/ɔsɔ̀mnɔ ɔ̀ibú pángbì-you help me

ɔdɔ̀mnɔ/ɔsɔ̀mnɔ rámbú káobìraborá-have you forgotten Ram ?

### 3. 2. 4. 2 *Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

Proximate and remote demonstrative pronouns express the plural taking məkhòi, emphatic additive plural marker.

ɔdù məkhòi/modù məkhòi-those

ɔsì məkhòi/mɔsì məkhòi-these

Módhúno modùməkhòi cúsɔ̀nù, ɔ̀idì ɔsìto càgè-Let Modhu eat those and let me eat this only

ɛyámno ɔsìməkhòi lòusɔ̀nù, ɔ̀idì modùto lòuzagè-Let Syam take these and let me take that only

#### 3. 2. 4. 2. 1 *Declension of the Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

Demonstrative pronouns in the plural are declined in the cases other than the Vocative.

ɔdùməkhòino/modù məkhòno-with those

ɔdùməkhòido/modùməkhòido-to those

ɔdùməkhòidogi/modùməkhòidogi-from those

ɔsìməkhòno/mɔsìməkhòino-with these

ɔsìməkhòido/mɔsìməkhòido-to these

ɔsìməkhòidogi/mɔsìməkhòidogi-from these

#### 3.2.4.2.2 *Modification of the Demonstrative Pronouns in the plural*

ɔsìməkhòi, these are used to express 'those'. ɔdùməkhòi, those are also used to express 'whoever', 'whatever'

##### 1 ɔsìməkhòi, those

ɔsìməkhòi, these expresses 'those' occurring with emphatic plural forms of the personal pronouns with or without sing, emphatic additive plural marker.

o`ikho`i osi`makho`ino/o`ikho`isingosi` makho`ino, those of us  
makho`iosi` makho`ino/nakho`ising osi` makho`ino-those of  
you

makho`iosi`makho`ino/makho`isingosi`makho`ino- those of  
them

osi`makho`i, those may be compressed into osi` occurring with  
sing, emphatic additive plural marker in the above forms of the  
personal pronouns.

o`ikho`ising osi`makho`ino/o`ikho`ising osi`no-those of us  
makho`ising osi`makho`ino/makho`ising osi`no-those of them

## 2 odu`makho`i, whoever, whatever

odu`makho`i, those expresses 'whoever, whatever' occurring  
with the main verbs of the subordinate relative clauses in po, mar-  
ker of infinitive. In such case, odu`makho`i may remain or be  
compressed into makho`i.

kancipur u:ruba odu`makho`ino/makho`ino kabi Komol ning-  
singi`-Whoever see Kanchipur remember poet Komol.

mado`ppu kho`ngbo odu` makho`ino/makho`ino mabu  
nungsi`-Whoever know Madhop love him.

osabo odu` makho`i/makho`i pura`ksonu`-Let him bring what-  
ever is hot.

ohabobo odu` makho`i/makho`i casi`- Let us eat whatever is  
delicious.

### 3. 2. 5 Determinative Pronouns

Determinative pronouns are derived from odu, that,  
osi, this, pu`m, inclusive and ya`m, much.

odu`k-that much (personal and impersonal)

osu`k-this much (personal and impersonal)

moyam-many (personal and impersonal)

pu`mnomo`k-all (personal and impersonal)

Determinative pronouns are declined in the cases other  
than the instrumental and vocative.

odùkkidámò`k-for that much

odùktòdò-to that much

osùkkidámòk-for this much

osùktòdò-to this much

moyámgidámò`k-for many

moyámòdò-to many

pùmnámò`kkidámò`k-for all

pùmnámò`ktò-to all

mómà ni`ngbò odùktòdò modù tóúgoni`-that much of those  
who love their mothers will do it

odùktòdò yágoni`-that much will do

pùkcén cáobò osùktòdò modù tóúgoni`-this much of those  
who are noble will do it

osùktò càzàgè Let me eat this much

moyámno mósì` pámi`-many like it

hò`ino`u onì` osì`dò ló`i, moyám omòsù i`múngdò ló`iri`. There  
are two mangoes here, many are also in the house.

pùmnámò`k láklè-all have come

pùmnámò`k mànglè-all are ruined

pùmnámòk, all has three synonyms viz., khwai (personal),  
lo`inámò`k (impersonal) and ngo`mnámò`k (impersonal). khwài  
may be prefixed to pùmnámò`k.

pùmnámò`kno/khwàino/khwài pùmnámò`kno modù pámi` all  
like it

pùmnámò`k/lo`inámò`k/ngo`mnámò`k módhúdo pi`gonù-don't  
give all to Modhu.

### 3. 2. 6 Separative Pronouns

Separative pronouns take -ò, secondary prefix.

omò, one (personal and impersonal)

otò`i, other (personal and impersonal)

Separative pronouns are declined in the cases other than  
the instrumental and vocative

omògidámò`k-for any one

omòdogì-from any one

otò'igidomò`k-for others

otò'idogì-from others

omono hèktò madù ho'nglòkkoni`-any one will ask it

kólóm oni` tébo'ldò lo'i, omadi ká osi'dò lo'i-There are two pens on the table, one is in this room.

nùpàmocà oni'di lák:i, otò'idi` laktè-Two boys come, others do not come

kómlá oni'di` osi'dò lo'i, otò'idi` kodáido lo'ibogè-There are two oranges here, where are others ?

### 3. 2. 7 Distributive Pronouns

The following are the distributive pronouns :—

omomò'm every (personal and impersonal)

khùdingmò`k-each (personal and impersonal)

Distributive pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

omomò'mgidomò`k-for every one

omomò'mdogì-from every one

khùdingmò`kkidomò`k-for each

khùdingmò`kdogì-from each

omomò'mno mosà mosàgì wàri` li`-Everyone tells his own tale

ká osi'dò ho'ino'u mongà lo'iro'mboni`, omomò'm módhúno càtho`kkhrè-There were five mangoes in this room, every one was eaten up by Modhu.

ombárido phi makhò'n koyá omo lo'i, khùdingmò`k mocú khénno'i-There are many clothes in the almirah, each has different colour

mi'tindo mō ntri ohu'm lák:i, khu`dìngmò`k wà ngànggoni`-Three Ministers came in the meeting, each will speak

### 3. 2. 8 Interrogative pronouns

The following are the interrogative pronouns :—

kóná-who (personal)

kóri-what (personal and impersonal)

koyá-how many (numeral)

koro'mbo-which (personal and impersonal, derived from kori, what)

Interrogative pronouns are declined in the cases other than the instrumental and vocative.

konágidomo`k for whom

konádagi-from whom

korígidomo`k-for what

korídagi-from what

koyágidomo`k-for how many

koyádagi-from how many

koro'mbágidomo`k-for which one

koro'mbódagi-from which one

odúdo koná lo'ibogè-Who is there ?

nokhùtso kori lo,i-what is in your hand ?

o'igi ho'ino'u oni lo'i, na'ngo'ndo koyá lo'ibogè-I have two mangoes, how many do you have ?

ngoráng mi`mongá láklomi, ngosi'di` koyá lákkodogè-Five persons came yesterday, how many will come today ?

kádo láiri`k oni lo'i, koro'mbo pámbogè-There are two books in the room which do you like ?

mi`ohum namàngdo lèplí, koro'mbomo na'ngbú pángbogè-Three persons are standing before you, which one help you ?

### 3. 2 9 Indefinite Pronouns

The following indefinite pronouns are primary forms:—

koyá, many, several (personal and impersonal)

khoro, some (personal and impersonal)

Most of the indefinite pronouns are derived from koná, who, kori, what and khoro, some,

korágúmbo omo, some one (personal derived from koná, who)

konáno`omo, any body (personal derived from koná)

konágúmbo amoto, nobody (personal derived from koná)

korígúmbo omo, something (impersonal derived from kori, what)

karino omo, anything (impersonal derived from kari)  
 karigumbo omo, nothing (impersonal derived from kari)  
 oto'i khoró, something else (impersonal ; compound of oto'i,  
 other and khoró, some)

Indefinite pronouns are declined in the cases other than  
 the instrumental and vocative.

koyádo—to many

koyádagi—from many

khoródo—to some

khoródcgi—from some

konágumbo omo do—to some one

konágumbo omódcgi—from some one

konáno` omódo—to anybody

konáno` omódcgi—from any body

konágumbo omótódo—to nobody

konágumbo omótódcgi—from nobody

karigumbo omódo—to something

karigumbo omódcgi—from something

karino` omódo—to anything

karino` omódcgi—from anything

karigumbo omótódo, to nothing

karigumbo omótódcgi—from nothing

koyá omóno mési` pámdé—many do not like it

khoróno osúmno háino`i—some say so

modù o`klè, oto'i khoró kha`unesi`—it is enough, let us dis-  
 cuss something else

konágumbo omo lákpo yá.i`—some one may come

konáno` omóno osúmno hékto háiro`kkoni`—any one will say so

konágumbo omoto láklói—nobody will come

karigumbo omo tho`kkoni`—something will happen

karino` omóno hékto yágoni`—anything will do

karigumbo omoto tho`klói—nothing will happen

Konágumbo omoto, nothing, has four synonyms viz. ;  
 konágumbo omotosù, konásù, koná omoto and kora omotosù.

Karigumbo omoto, nothing has also four synonyms viz. ,  
 karigumbo omotosù, karisù, kari omoto and kari omotosù.



### 3.3 Verb

3.3.0 Verbs express the four aspects of the Present, Past and Future tenses. They also express some or all of the four aspects of the tense forms such as can, may, must, should, etc.

#### 3.3.1 1.1 Two groups of the Verbs

Verbs are classified into the two groups viz., (a) *func-tive* and (b) *stative*.

*Func-tive* verbs are the transitive and intransitive verbs. They are conjugated for the four aspects of the three tenses.

*Stative* verbs are the adjectives. They are conjugated for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

##### *Func-tive verbs*

pàrè-he has read

sàró'mlè he had made

thàró'mgoni` he will have sent

##### *Stative verbs*

pàrè-it has been thin

sàró'mlè-it had been hot

thàró'mgoni`-it will have been  
thick

#### 3.3 1.1.2 Four classes of the Verbs

*Func-tive* and *stative* verbs may be divided according to their structures into the four classes viz., (a) simple verbs. (b) suffixed verbs (c) compound verbs and (d) verbal compounds.

Simple verbs are the monosyllabic forms conjugated for the tenses by adding to them the markers of the tense, aspect and form.

Verb + tense + aspect + form

co`t + ló`m + ló + i` > co`tlo`mlè-he had gone

Suffixed verbs consist of a simple verb and a primary infix. They are also conjugated for the tenses by adding to them the markers of tense, aspect and form.

*Suffixed -*

Verb + tense + aspect + form

no`kno + ló`m + ló + i` > no`knoro`mlè-he had mocked at

Compound verbs consist of two or more monosyllabic components of which the last one is conjugated and other components remain in the root form.

*Compound—*

Verb + tense + aspect + form

lɔ'isi lɔ'itho'n + lɔ'm + lɔ + i' > lɔ'isi lɔ'ithonlɔ'mlɔ-he had praised

Verbal compounds consist of a main verb and an auxiliary verb. The main verbs in such compounds take po' marker of infinitive or pho'm, primary suffix. The auxiliary verbs in the verbal compounds are conjugated.

main verb + auxiliary verb + aspect + tense + form

cɔ't + po' + ngo'm + lɔ'm + kɔdɔ'u + ni' > cɔ'tpo ngo'm-lɔ'mgoni'-he could have gone

(Verbal compounds will be discussed later in the Morphology. Suffixed verbs and compound verbs will be dealt with in the Syntax.)

### 3. 3. 1. 1. 3 Verbal base

Considering the formation of the tense forms, Verbal base may be classified into the two groups viz., (a) primary base and (b) infinitive base.

Primary base of the verb is the root itself,

*Primary*

base + tense + aspect + form

cak + lom + lɔ + i > caklomle-it had burnt

Infinitive base of the verb is the root plus po, marker of the infinitive.

Infinitive base + Auxiliary verb

cɔt + po + yai > cɔtpɔ ya:i-we may go

### 3. 3. 1. 2. 1 Gender, Number and person of the verbs

Verbs in the aspects of the Tenses and Tense Forms do not distinguish Gender, Number and Person. They are thus used in all the Genders, Numbers and Persons.

### (1) *Genders*

nùpà cò tli-The man is going

nùpi cò tli-The woman is going

### (2) *Numbers*

úcék páiri-The bird is flying

úcéksingno páiri-The birds are flying

### (3) *Persons*

ò i kho'ngi-I know

nò'ng kho'ngi-You (singular) know

mà kho'ngi-He knows

### 3. 3. 2 *Tenses*

Verbs express the four aspects of the present, past and future tenses taking the markers of (a) tense, (b) aspect and (c) form.

#### 3. 3. 2. 1. 1 *Markers of the four aspects and form for the verbs in the present and past tenses*

##### 1 *Markers of the four aspects*

Markers of the four aspects of the verbs in the present and past tense are shown below :—

(a)  $\phi$  (zero), indefinite aspect

(b) ló, perfect aspect

(c) lí, durative aspect

(d) ló'kíí, perfect durative aspect

##### 2 *i', marker of form for the verbs in the present and past tenses*

i' is the marker of form for the verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses.

#### 3. 3. 2. 2. 1 *Present Tense*

$\phi$  (zero), marker of present tense is followed by the markers of (a) the four aspects and (b) -i', marker of form. In such case, -i, marker of form is changed into -é due to contact with ló, perfect aspect in the verbs in the present perfect aspect.

Present tense— $\phi$ , TM+A+i, F

$\phi$ , A (indefinite aspect)

$\sqrt{+}\phi$ , TM+ $\phi$ . A+i, F

## 186—Morphology

cə'ngi'-we/you/they enter

hə'ngi'-we/you/they ask

sə'ngi'-we/you/they guard

### lɔ, A (perfect aspect)

√ + φ, TM + lɔ, A + i, F

cə'nglɛ-we/you/they have entered

hə'nglɛ we/you/they have asked

sə'nglɛ-we/you/they have guarded

### li, A (durative aspect)

√ + φ, TM + li, A + i, F

cə'ngli-we/you/they are entering

hə'ngli-we/you/they are asking

sə'ngli-we/you/they are guarding

### lɔ'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + φ, TM + lɔkli, A + i, F

cə'nglɔ'kli-we/you/they have been entering

hə'ng'ɔ'kli-we/you/they have been asking

sə'nglɔ'kli-we/you/they have been guarding

módúno məkói kɔ'k:i-Modhu shaves his beards

sə'rkárnɔ kházɔ'ná kɔ'k:i-Government exempts the revenue

syámno modù káorɛ Syam has forgotten it,

sántino málábú kho'ngpákno káorɛ-Santi has kicked Mala

sù:éndi' dímapúrdɔ lɔ'iri-Suren is staying at Dimapur

syámno ngà lɔ'ri-Syam is purchasing the fish

nɔhándɔgi nóng tàrɔ'kli-It has been raining since the day before yesterday.

nóbino wàri' tàrɔ'kli-Nobin has been listening to the story

### 3. 3. 2. 2. 2 Segmental similarity of the verbs in the two aspects of present tense

When the verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the present tense are derived from the same verb roots ending -n or -t, segmental shape of such verbs are same. li, compound of -l glide and -i, marker of form in the present indefinite verbal forms is stressed. li, compound of li, durative aspect and -i, marker of form in the present durative verbal forms is not stressed.

rámnə khonli'-Ram thinks  
 rámnə kho`nli Ram is thinking  
 rámnə cə`tli-Ram goes  
 rámnə cə`tli-Ram is going

### 3. 3. 2. 3. 1 Past Tense

lo'm, marker of past tense is followed by the markers of (a) the four aspects and (b) -i', marker of form. In such case, -i, marker of form is changed into -e due to the contact with lo, perfect aspect in the verbs in the past perfect aspect.

Past Tense—lo'm, TM+A+i', F

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

√+lo'm+φ, A+i', F

ɪrə'mi'-we/you/they wrote  
 pi'rə'mi'-we/you/they gave  
 θi'rə'mi'-we/you/they searched

lo, A (perfect aspect)

√+lo'm, TM+lo, A+i', F

ɪrə'mlə-we/you/they had written  
 pi'rə'mlə we/you/they had given  
 θi'rə'mlə-we/you/they had searched

li, A (durative aspect)

√+lo'm, TM+li, A+i', F

ɪrə'mli-we/you/they were writing  
 pi'rə'mli-we/you/they were giving  
 θi'rə'mli-we/you/they were searching

lo'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

√+lo'm, TM+lo'kli, A+i', F

ɪrə'klo'mli-we/you/they had been writing  
 pi'rə'klo'mli-we/you/they had been giving  
 θi'rə'klo'mli-we/you/they had been searching  
 módhúno wəho'i khoro háiro'mi'-Medhu said some words  
 mádhə'pno məkħut háiro'mi'-Madhop waved his hand  
 rámnə si'ng kt áiro'mlə-Ram had cut the firewood

rázénno módhúgi sorúk kháiro'mlè-Rajén had given Mo-  
dhu's share

khúnú odù páiro'mlí-The pigeon was flying

módhúno sóri odù páiro'mlí Modhu was holding the knife

rámno dáí púro'k lo'mli Ram had been taking the responsi-  
bility

syámno sén púro'klo'mli-Syam had been borrowing the  
money

### 3. 3. 2. 3 2 *Markers common to the present and past tenses*

φ marker of the Present Tense and lo'm, marker of the  
Past Tense are followed by the same markers of aspects and form.  
Thus the Verbs in the four aspects of the Past Tense are the exten-  
sions of the verbs in the four aspects of the Present Tense with the  
addition of lo'm, marker of the Past Tense.

Present Tense - φ, TM+A+i', F

Past Tense - lo'm, TM+A+i' F

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

thà:i'-we/you/they send

thàro'mi'-we/you/they sent

lo, A (perfect aspect)

thàrè-we/you/they have sent

thàro'mlè-we/you/they had sent

li, A (durative aspect)

thàri-we/you/they are sending

thàro'mli-we/you/they were sending

lo'kli, A (perfect durative aspect)

thàro'kli-we/you/they have been sending

thàro'klo'mli-we/you/they had been sending

### 3. 3. 2. 4. 1 *Markers of the four aspects and the form for the verbs in the Future Tense*

#### 1 *Markers of the four aspects*

Markers of the four aspects for the Verbs in the Future  
Tense are shown below :—

- ϕ, (zero), indefinite aspect
- lo'm-perfect aspect
- khi-durative aspect
- lo'kkhi-perfect durative aspect
- 2 ni, marker of form

ni is the marker of form for the verbs in the four aspects of the Future Tense.

### 3. 3. 2. 4. 2 Future Tense

Kodo'u, marker of Future Tense is preceded by the markers of the four aspects and followed by ni, marker of form. In such case, kodo'u, marker of future tense is changed into ko in the verbs in the four aspects of the Future Tense.

Future Tense—A + ko, TM (kodo'u > ko) + ni, F

ϕ, A (indefinite aspect)

√ + ϕ, A + ko, TM + ni, F

càgoni-we/you/they will eat

pàgoni-we/you/they will read

tàgoni-we/you/they will hear

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

√ + lo'm, A + ko, TM + ni, F

cà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have eaten

pà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have read

tà'o'mgoni-we/you/they will have heard

khi, A (durative aspect)

√ + khi, A + ko, TM + ni, F

càkhigoni-we/you/they will be eating

pàkhigoni-we/you/they will be reading

tàkhigoni-we/you/they will be hearing

lo'kkhi, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + lo'kkhi, A + ko, TM + ni, F

cà'o'kkigoni-we/you/they will have been eating

pà'o'kkigoni-we/you/they will have been reading

tà'o'k khi-goni-we/you/they will have been hearing

lɔ'ipàn ɔdù i'singɔ táogóni-That flower plant will float on the water

módhúno ngà taɔgóni-Modhu will fry the fish

máláno mɔdù tɔúro'mgóni-Mala will have done that

mádhɔ'pno kóm tɔ'uro'mgóni-Madhop will have dug the pit-  
rádhádi' sɔ'nggómɔo i'sing.yáakhigáni-Radha will be mixing  
water with the mi:k

rázénno ú ɔdù yáakhigóni-Rajen will be cutting that tree

rámɔdi' ko'kyèt yètɔ'kkhigóni-Ram will have been wearing  
the turban

syámdí' mɔro'i yètɔ'kkhigóni-Syam will have been arguing

### 3. 3. 2. 4. 3 Kɔɔɔ'u, marker of Future Tense in the verbs of the subordinate clauses

while kɔɔɔ'u, marker of future tense is changed into kɔ in the verbs of the simple sentences and coordinate clauses, kɔɔɔ'u remains in the verbs of the subordinate clauses without undergoing any change in its form.

kɔɔɔ'u > Kɔ in the verbs of  
simple sentences

càgóni-he will eat

íro'mgóni-he will have written

pákhigóni-he will be reading

Kɔɔɔ'u in the verbs of subordi-  
nate clauses

rámno càgɔɔ'uribo kómlá, the  
orange that Ram will eat

rámno íro'mgɔɔ'uribo cithi, the  
letter that Ram will have written

rámno pákhigɔɔ'uribonino-since  
Ram will be reading

### 3. 3. 3 Tense Forms

Verbs and verbal compounds express tense forms like can, may, must, should etc.

#### 3. 3. 3. 1 Tense Forms expressed with the help of markers of aspects.

Verbs express Hortative and Imperative Moods with the help of the the markers of aspects.



Verbal compounds express “can may and should” with the help of the markers of aspects.

Markers of aspects used in expressing the above Tense Forms are shown below :—

- (a)  $\phi$ , indefinite aspect
- (b) lo'm, perfect aspect
- (c) khi, durative aspect
- (d) lo'khi, perfect durative aspect

The markers of aspects shown above are also used in expressing the four aspects of the Future Tense.

#### 1. kè, si'sonù, Hortative Mood

Kè, si' and sonù express Hortative Mood in the sense of 'let do' in the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects. In such case, Kè, si' and sonù follow the markers of the three aspects. Kè is used in the first person and both the numbers. si' expresses first person only in the plural, sonù denotes third person in both the numbers.

- (a) A+kè-hortative first person
- (b) A+si'-hortative first person (plural)
- (c) A+sonù-hortative third person

#### $\phi$ , A (indefinite aspect)

- págè let me/us read
- pási'-let us read
- pásonù-let him/them read

#### lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

- páro'mgè let me/us have read
- páro'msi'-let us have read
- páro'msonù-let him/them read

#### khi, A (durative aspect)

- pákhigè-let me/us read
- pákhisi'-let us read
- pákhisonù-let him/them read
- oi' hoyéng co'tkè, let me go tomorrow

## 192—Morphology

o'ikho'i pho'mkhsi'-let us be sitting

mokho'ino phi odù sùro'msonù-let them have washed that cloth

### 1(2) sonù expressing desire, greeting etc.

sonù, Hortative Mood third person may express desire, greeting etc, occurring with a few verbs.

rám púnsi'sonù may Ram live long

syám pho'mthón kàsonù-may Syam get promotion to the higher post.

### 2 —o', Imperative Mood

o', Imperative Mood expresses such Mood in the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects. In such case, —o' follows the markers of the three aspects. Khi, durative aspect is changed into kho'.

Imperative Mood —A+o'

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

pá : o'-(you) read

tà : o'-(you) hear

lò'm, A (perfect aspect)

páro'mmù-(you) have it read

tàro'm mù-(you) have it heard

khí, A (durative aspect)

pákho'-(you) go on reading

tàkho'-(you) go on hearing

no'ng hoyéng làk:ù-(you) come tomorrow

nokho'i thobò'k sùkho -(you) go on doing the work

### 3 ngo'mgoní, can

ngo'mgoní is the future indefinite form of ngo'm, auxiliary verb. It expresses 'can' in the four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pə. marker of infinitive.

MV ( √ + A + pə, + ngo'mgoní-can

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

MV ( √ + φ, A + pə, + ngo'mgoní-can

l**bo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can write  
 li'b**o** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can narrate  
 pi'b**o** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can give

l**o'm**, A (perfect aspect)

MV(✓ + l**o'm**, A + p**o**) + ngo'mgoni, can  
 l**ro'mbo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have written  
 li'**ro'mbo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have narrated  
 pi'**ro'mbo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have given

kh**i**, A (durative aspect)

MV(✓ + kh**i** A + p**o**) ngo'mgoni, can  
 i**khibo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can be writting  
 li'**khibo** ngo'mgoni we/you/they can narrating  
 pi'**khibo** ngo'mgoni we/you/they can be giving

l**o'kkhi**, A (perfect durative aspect)

MV(✓ + l**o'kkhi**, A + p**o**) + ngo'mgoni, can  
 l**ro'kkhibo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have been writting  
 li'**ro'kkhibo** ngo'mgoni we/you/they can have been narrating  
 pi'**ro'kkhibo** ngo'mgoni-we/you/they can have been giving  
 m**adho'p i'so'i so'kpo** ngo'mgoni-Madhop can sing the song  
 m**alano phi odu suro'mbo** ngo'mgoni Mala can have washed  
 that cloth

r**amno syamdo sen tharo'kkhibo** ngo'mgoni- Ram can have  
 been sending money to Syam

4 tho'k : i', should

tho'k:i' is the present indefinite form of tho'k, auxiliary Verb. It expresses "should" in the four aspects occuring with the main verbs in such aspects and pho'm, primary suffix.

MV(✓ + A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

MV(✓ + φ, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should  
 sa'pho'm tho'k:i' we/you/they should make  
 i'apho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should heard  
 tha'pho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they shou'd send

## 194 - Morphology

**lɔ'm, A (perfect aspect)**

**MV(√ + lɔ'm, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should**

sáɔ'mpho'm tho'k i'--we/you/they should have made

táɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have heard

tháɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have sent

**khí, A (durative aspect)**

**MV(√ + khí, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i' should**

sákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be making

tákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be hearing

thákhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should be sending

**lɔ'kkhí, A (perfect durative aspect)**

**MV(√ + lɔ'kkhí, A + pho'm) + tho'k:i', should**

sáɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been

making

táɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been hearing

tháɔ'kkhípho'm tho'k:i'--we/you/they should have been sending

débénno madù khò'ngpho'm tho'k:i'-- Deben should know that

dámúno cíthí ɔdù tháɔ'mpho'm tho'k:i'--Damu should have sent that letter

mádhò'pno tho'bo'k ɔdù súkhípho'm tho'k:i'-- Madhop should be doing that work

**5 yá:i', may**

yá:i' is the present indefinite form of yá, auxiliary verb. It expresses 'may' in the four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pɔ, marker of infinitive.

**MV(√ + A + pɔ) + yá:i', may**

**ɔ, A (indefinite aspect)**

**MV(√ + ɔ, A + pɔ) + yá : i', may**

íbo yá:i'--we/you/they may write

pi'bo yá:i'--we/you/they may give

thíbo yá:i'--we/you/they may search

**lɔ'm, A (perfect aspect)**

**MV(√ + lom, A + pɔ) + yá:i', may**

íɔ'mbo yá:i'--we/you/they may have written

pi'ro'mbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have given  
thi'ro'mbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have searched

khí, ʔ (durative aspect)

íkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may be writing  
pi'khíbo yá:i` we/you/they may be giving  
thíkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may be searching

lo'kkhí. A (perfect durative aspect)

íro'kkhíbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have been writing  
pi'o'kkhíbo yá:i` we/you/they may have been giving  
thi'ro'kkhíbo yá:i` we/you/they may have been searching  
módhú hoyéng lákpə yá:i`-Modhu may come tomorrow  
mádho'pno gópálbú pánglo'mbo yá:i`-Madhop may have helped Gopal  
Syámno nó'éndə sən thàro'kkhíbo yá:i`-Syam may have been sending money to Noren

### 3. 3. 3. 2 *Tense Forms expressed with the help of auxiliary verbs*

Conjugated forms of the three auxiliary verbs viz , ngo'm, tá and yá express could, might and obligative tense respectively occurring with the main verbs in po, marker of infinitive

#### 1 ngo'm lo'mgoní, could

ngo'mlo'mgoní is the future perfect form of ngom, auxiliary verb. It expresses "could" in the perfect aspect.

MV(√ + po) + ngo'mlo'mgoní, could

co'ngbo ngo'lo'mgoní-we/you/they could have entered  
ho'ngbo ngo'mlo'mgoní-we/you/they could have asked  
so'ngbo ngo'mlo'mgoní we/you/they could have guarded  
débénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mgoní-Deben could have helped Gopal  
mádho'pno syámbú ngáibo ngo'mlo'mgoní-Madhop could have waited for Syam

#### 2 yáro'mgoní, might

yáro'mgoní is the future perfect form of yá, auxiliary verb. It expresses "might" in the perfect aspect.

**MV(√ + pə) + yáɔ'mgoní, might**

kho'ngbo yá:ɔ'mgoní-we/you/they might have known  
 pho'ngbo yáɔ'mgoní we/you/they might have got  
 so'ngbo yáɔ'mgoní we/you/they might have guarded  
 débénno syámbú ngáibo yáɔ'mgoní-Deben might have waited for Syam  
 dórénnɔ gópálbú pángbo yáɔ'mgoní-Dorén might have helped Gopal.

**3 General and emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense**

tá, auxiliary verb expresses obligative in the sense of “(a) have to, (b) had to do and (c) will have to do.” In such case, tá obligative tense takes general forms and emphatic forms. General forms of tá are the conjugated forms of tá for the indefinite aspect of the three tenses. Emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense are the conjugated forms of tá for the perfect aspect of the three tenses.

*General and emphatic forms of tá, obligative tense*

| general forms of tá   emphatic forms of tá |           | meanings        |
|--|-----------|-----------------|
| tái  | tárè      | have to do      |
| táɔ'mi`                                    | táɔ'mlè   | had to do       |
| tágoní                                     | táɔ'mgoní | will have to do |

**MV(√ + pə) + tá:í/tárè, have to do**

cúbo tá:i/tárè-we/you/they have to eat  
 pábo tá:i/tárè-we/you/they have to read  
 sábo tá:i/tárè-we/you/they have to make

**MV(√ + pə) + táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè, had to do**

cágo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to eat  
 pábo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to read  
 tábo táɔ'mi`/táɔ'mlè-we/you/they had to make

**MV(√ + pə) + ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoní, will have to do**

cábo ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoní we/you/they will have to eat  
 pábo ta'goni/ta'ɔ'mgoní-we/you/they will have to read

sábo tágoni/táro'mgoni--we/you/they will have to make.

débéno syámbú pángbo tá:i'/tárè-Deben has to help Syam

dámúdi` dimápúr co`tpo táro'mi'/táro'mlè-Damu had to go to Dimapur.

mádhop`pno gópálbú ngáibo tágoni/táro'mgoni-Madhop will have to wait for Gopal.

### 3. 3. 3. 3 *Tense Forms expressed with the help of kodo'u*

Kodo'u expresses the following tense and tense forms :—

(a) four aspects of the future tense

(b) "must" in the four aspects

(c) "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects

#### 1 (I) Kodo'u, must

Kodo'u, must is preceded by the markers of the four aspects and followed by (a) po, marker of infinitive and (b) ní, marker of form

must—A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

φ, A (Indefinite aspect)

√ + φ, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

càgodo'uboni-we/you/they must eat

pàgodo'uboni-we/you/they must read

tàgodo'uboni-we/you/they must hear

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

√ + lo'm, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

cáro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have eaten

páro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have read

táro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have heard

khi, A (durative aspect)

√ + khi, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

sàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must have eating

pàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must be reading

tàkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must be hearing

lo'kki, A (perfect durative aspect)

√ + lo'kki, A + kodo'u + po + ní, F

cáro'kkhigodo'uboni we/you/they must have been eating

páro'kkigodoboni--we/you/they must have been reading  
 táro'kkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must have been hearing  
 mádhop hoyéng cə'tkə'dəuboni-Madhop must go tomorrow  
 módhúno tho'bo'k odú súro'mgodo'uboni-Modhu must have  
 done that work  
 syámdi' pára pákhigodo'uboni--Syam must be reading his  
 lesson

# 1 (2) Kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will

Kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will are preceded by the markers of the four aspects. Kodo'u, must is followed by (a) pə, marker of infinitive and (b) ni, marker of form. Kodo'u, shall/will is followed by ni, marker of form and changed into ko.

must—A + kodo'u + pə + ni, F

shall/will—A + ko (kodo'u > ko) + ni, F

φ, A (indefinite aspect)

igodo'uboni-we/you/they must write

igoni-we/you/they will write

lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

iro'mgodo'uboni-we/you/they must have written

iro'goni-we/you/they will have written

khi, A (durative aspect)

ikhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must be writing

ikhigoni-we/you/they will be writing

lo'kkhi, A (perfect durative aspect)

iro'kkhigodo'uboni-we/you/they must have been writing

iro'kkhigoni-we/you/they will have been writing

# 2 (1) kodo'u, going to do (present tense)

Kodo'u expresses "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present tense. In such case, kodo'u is followed by (a) marker of the present tense; (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i, marker of form. The glide is formed in the verbs expressing "going to do" in the present indefinite aspect.



going to do (present tense)—kodo'u +  $\Phi$ , TM + A + i, F  
 $\Phi$ , A (Indefinite aspect)

✓ + kodo'u +  $\Phi$ , TM +  $\Phi$ , A + i, F  
 cãgodo'uri-we/you/they are going to eat  
 págodo'uri-we/you/they are going to read  
 sãgodo'uri-we/you/they are going to make

lo A (perfect aspect)

✓ + kodo'u +  $\Phi$ , TM + lo, A + l, F  
 cãgodo'urè-we/you/they have been about to eat  
 págodo'urè-we/you/they have been about to read  
 sãgodo'urè-we/you/they have been about to make  
 módhú cá tho'kkodo'uri Modhu is going to drink tea  
 mádhop'p sãgodo'urè-Madhop has been about to die.

2 (2) kodo'u, going to do (past tense)

Kodo'u, expresses "going to do" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the past tense. In such case, kodo'u is followed by (a) lom, marker of past tense, (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i, marker of form.

going to do (past tense)—kodo'u + lo'm, TM + A + i, F  
 $\Phi$ , A (indefinite aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + lo'm, TM +  $\Phi$ , A + i, F  
 cãgodo'uro'mi'-we/you/they were going to eat  
 págodo'uro'mi'-we/you/they were going to read  
 sãgodo'uro'mi'-we/you/they were going to make

lo, A (perfect aspect)

✓ + kodo'u + lo'm, TM + lo, A + i, F  
 cãgodo'uro'miè-we/you/they had been about to eat  
 págodo'uro'miè-we/you/they had been about to read  
 sãgodo'uro'miè-we/you/they had been about to make  
 débéno gópálbú phũgodo'uro'mi'-Deben was about to beat Gopal  
 módhúdi' sãgodo'uro'miè Modhu had been about to die

2 (3) Kodo'u, going to do, kodo'u, must and kodo'u, shall/will

Kodo'u, going to do is followed by (a) marker of present/past tense, (b) marker of indefinite/perfect aspect and (c) -i

marker of form. Kodo'u, must is followed by (a) po, marker of infinitive and (b) ni, marker of form. Kodo'u, shall/will is followed by ni, marker of form and changed into ke.

càgodo'uri'-we/you/they are going to eat  
 càgodo'uro'mi'-we/you/they were going to eat  
 càgodo'uboni'-we/you/they must eat  
 càgoni'-we/you/they will eat

### 3 3. 3 4 Tense Forms expressed in the Adverb clauses

Subjective (conditional) Tense and Contingent Future Perfect Tense are expressed by the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses with the help of the markers of these two tense forms.

#### 1 lobodi', Subjunctive (conditional) tense

lobodi' expresses Subjunctive (Conditional) Tense in the sense of "if do" occurring with the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses. In such case, these verbs in the lobodi' modify the following verbs of the principal clauses in the indefinite aspect :—

- (a) Verbs in the Future Tense
- (b) Verbs in the kodo'u, must
- (c) Verbs in the hortative mood
- (d) Verbs in the imperative mood
- (e) Verbal compounds with ngo'mgoni, can
- (f) Verbal compounds with thok:i', should
- (g) Verbal compounds with ya:i', may

Subjunctive (conditional) Tense — V + lobodi'

càrobodi'-if we/you/they eat

pàrbodi'-if -we/you/they read

tàrbodi'-if we/you/they hear

rám cə'tlobodi' syámsú cə'tkoni'-If Ram goes Syam will also go

rám cə'tlobodi' syámsú cə'tkodo'uboni'-If Ram goes Syam must also go

rám cə'tlobodi' syámsú cə'tsonú'-If Ram goes let Syam also go

**rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo ngo'mgoni**-If Ram goes Syam can also go

**rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpho'm tho'k:i`**-If Ram goes Syam should also go.

**rám cò'tlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo yá:i`**-If Ram goes Syam may also go

## 2 ló'mlobodi`, Contingent Future Perfect Tense

**ló'mlobodi`** expresses Contingent Future Perfect Tense in the sense of 'if did' occurring with the verbs of the subordinate adverb clauses. In such case, these verbs in **lámlobodi`** modify the following verbs of the Principal clauses in the perfect aspect :—

- (a) Verbs in the future tense
- (b) Verbal compounds with **ngo'mlo'mgoni**, could
- (c) Verbal compounds with **yáro'mgoni**, might

Contingent Future Perfect Tense—**√ + ló'mlobodi`**

**cáro'mlobodi`**-if -we/you/they ate

**sáro'mlobodi`**-if we/you/they made

**táro'mlobodi`**-if we/you/they heard

**rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tlo'mgoni**-If Ram went, Syam will also have gone

**rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni**-If Ram went Syam could also have gone

**rám cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tpo yáro'mgodo'uboni**-If Ram went Syam might also have gone

## 2 (2) Verbs in **kodo'u** "must" expressing "would"

Verbs of the principal clauses in the perfect aspect of 'must' express 'would' in the perfect aspect when such verbs are modified by the verbs in **ló'mlobodi`**, Contingent Future Perfect Tense.

**mádhú cò'tlo'mlobodi` syámsù cò'tlo'mgodo'uboni**-If Modhu went, Syam would also have gone.

**mádhó'pno pánglo'mlobodi` gópálnó moná pho'nglo'mgodo'u-boni**-If Madho'p helped Gopal would have got the prize.

### 3. 3. 4. 1. *Stative verbs in the Tense and Tense Forms*

#### 1 Stative Verbs in the Tenses

Stative Verbs express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three Tenses.

##### ♣, A (indefinite aspect)

ko'ngi'-it is dry

ko'nglo'mi'-It was dry

ko'nggoni'-it will be dry

débéndi' ko'nli-Deben is strong

dámúdl' so'nli-Damu is weak

mádhó'pti' pò'nglo'mi'-Madhop was foolish

módhúdi' sànglò'mmi'-Modhu was wise

pàmbi' odù ningtho'mthádo ko'nggoni'-That plant will be dry in the winter

úho'i odù thúmgoni'-That fruit will be sweet.

##### lo/lə,m, A (perfect aspect)

púmlè-it has been rotten

púmlò'mlè-it had been rotten

púmlò'mgoni'-It will have been rotten

hò'ino'u odù púmlè-That mango has been rotten

hàmèng odù no'irè-That goat has been fat

honùbo odù ngàoro'mlè-That old man had been mad

módhúdi' to'nlo'mgoni'-Modhu will have been idle

mádhó'pti' li'kio'mgoni'-Madhop will have been miserly

#### 2 Stative verbs in the Tense Forms

Stative verbs express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the Tense Forms.

##### ♣, A (indefinite aspect)

cètkado'uboni'-it must be firm

cètkado'uri'-it is going to be firm

cètsnù-let it be firm

cètpo ngo'mgoni'-it can be firm

cètpo tá:i'-it has also to be firm

cètpo'm tho'kai'-it should be firm.

cètpo yá:i` it may be firm  
 modù cò'ngodo'uboni-it must be simple  
 mosi` ha'godo'uri`-it is going to be delicious  
 módhú s'ngsonù let Modhu be wise  
 mosi` ho'ngci't múnbo ngo'mgoni-it can be ripe the day after  
 tomorrow  
 mádhop tho'ubo tá:i`-Madhop has to be brave  
 modù khàpho'm tho'k:i`-it should be bitter  
 mosi` tho'tpo yá:i` -it may be soft

### lo/lo'm, A (perfect aspect)

co'tlo'mgodo'uboni-it must have been wet  
 co'tkodo'urè-it has been about to be wet  
 co'tlo'msonù-let it has been wet  
 co'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni-it could have been wet  
 co'tlo'mpho'm tho'k:i`-it should have been wet  
 co'tlo'mbo yá:i`-it may have been wet  
 modù háoro'mgodo'uboni-it must have been delicious  
 modù mótkodo'urè-it has been about to be dirty  
 mádhop núngáiro'msonù-let Madhop have been happy  
 mosidi` kálèndo múnbo ngo'mlo'mgoni-it could have been  
 ripe in the summer  
 módhúdi` singlo'mpho'm tho'k:i`-Modhu should have been  
 wise  
 modù pi'klo'mbo yá:i`-it may have been small

### 3. 3. 4. 2 *Change of the sentences in the active voice into the sentences in the Passive Voice.*

When simple sentences and compound sentences in the active voice are changed into the sentences in the Passive Voice, the following rules are followed :—

(a) Transitive Verbs of the simple (active) sentences in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses do not undergo any change in their forms in the simple sentences in the passive voice.

(b) Transitive verbs and transitive verbal compound of the two coordinate clauses of the compound (active) sentences in the indefinite and perfect aspects of tenses and tense forms do not undergo any change in their forms in the compound (Passive) sentences.

(c) Subject of the active sentences (both simple and compound) with or without *nɔ*, agentive is deleted in the passive sentences.

(d) Object of the active sentences (both simple and compound) with or without *pú*, accusative remain with or without *pú* in the passive sentences.

*Examples:—*

(a) Active simple sentences changed into Passive simple sentences

*Active Sentences*  
*púlísɔ hùránbɔ phàrè* The police  
 has arrested the thief

*ràjénɔ hɔ'udóng ɔdù hàtɔ'mlè-*  
 Rajen had killed that cat

*mɔ'ntrɔnɔ mɔnà hɔ'uzi'k yélgɔnɔ-*  
 The minister will distribute the  
 prize now

*Passive Sentences*  
*hùránbɔ phàrè* The thief has  
 been arrested

*hɔ'udóng ɔdù hàtɔ'mlè-* That  
 cat had been killed

*mɔnà hɔ'uzi'k yélgɔnɔ-* The  
 prize will be distributed now

(b) Active compound sentences changed into the Passive Compound Sentences.

*Active compound sentences*  
*débénɔ cɪthi ɔnɪ` thàré, páo-*  
*khúm phɔ'ngdrè-* Deben has  
 sent two letters but has not  
 recieved any reply

*dámúnɔ lɔ'ù yónlɔ'mlè-ing-*  
*khón lɔ'iro'mlè-* Damu had  
 sold the paddy land and  
 bought the homestead land.

*Passive compound sentences*  
*cɪthi ɔnɪ` thàré, páokhúm phɔ'ng*  
*drè-* Two letters have been sent  
 but no reply has been recieved

*lɔ'ù yónlɔ'mlè-ingkhón lɔ'iro'mlè-*  
 paddy land had been sold and  
 homestead land had been bought

gópá'di` tho'bo`k sùro'mgoni,  
khùtsùmo'nsù pho'nglo'mgoni-  
Gopal will have done the  
work and got the wage

mádhopno débénbú pángbo  
ngó'mgoni, syámbúdi` pángbo  
ngo'mlói-Madhop can help  
Deben but not Syam

pálisra mádhúbú thàdo`kpo  
tá:i. gópálbudi` phábo tá:i`-  
Police has to release Modhu  
and to arrest Gopal

tho'bo`k sùro'mgoni, khùtsùmo'n  
pho'nglo'mgoni-The work will  
have been done and the wage  
will have been got

débénbú pángbo ngo'mgoni,  
syámbúdi` pángbo ngo'mlói-De-  
ben can be helped but Syam  
cannot be helped

módhúbú thàdo`kpo tá:i. gópálbú  
phábo tá:i`-Modhu has to be  
released and Gopal has to be  
arrested

### 34 Qualifiers

3. 4. 0. *Qualifiers may be classified into the three groups viz.,*  
(a) *Verbal Qualifiers, (b) Prominal Qualifiers and*  
(c) *Numerals.*

#### 3. 4. 1 Verbal Qualifiers

Verbal Qualifiers are derived from the roots of the  
functive and stative verbs by adding to such roots -o, primary  
prefix and po, marker of the infinitive.

Verbal Qualifiers may also be derived from the roots of  
the functive and stative verbs by adding to such roots -o, primary  
prefix and pi', female marker. Such qualifiers in pi' define the  
nouns in the feminine gender.

#### 1 (1) Stative verbal Qualifiers in -o and po

Stative verbal qualifiers in -o, primary prefix and po,  
marker of infinitive form the overwhelming majority of the Ver-  
bal Qualifiers. Some of such qualifiers are shown below :—

oco'mbo lo'umi'-simple peasant

acétpo wàrèp-firm decision

oco'tpo phi wet cloth

oho'abo phi new cloth

oháobò i'nsáng-delicious curry  
 oko'nbò nùpà-strong man  
 oko'ngbò pàmbi-dry plant  
 okhàbò hò'i-bitter fruit  
 omò'mbò ká-dark room  
 omə'nbə láiri'k-old book  
 omúnbò hò'ínò'u-ripe mango  
 omo'tpò phí-dirty cloth  
 omúbò úcèk-black bird  
 ono'ibò nùpà-fat man  
 ori'kpò mi'miserly person

### 1 (2) Stative Verbal Qualifiers in -ò and pí`

Most of the stative verbal qualifiers in -ò, primary prefix and pí`, female marker follow the qualified nouns in such gender.

lúkhrábi` ori'kpí`-misery widow  
 məcò'n ono'ibi`-fat (younger) sister  
 məcè ɔngàobi`-mad (elder) sister  
 mómò'u ɔtə'nbi`-idle daughter-in-law  
 mɔ'u okhə'tpí`-licentious woman  
 mɔ'u ɔnɔ'ubi`-newly married woman  
 sɔ'n ɔngàngbi` red cow  
 yén omúbì`-black hen

### 2 (1/1) Functive Verbal Qualifiers in -ò and pò

Some qualifiers may be derived from the roots of the functive verbs by adding to such roots -ò, primary prefix and pò, marker of infinitive. These qualifiers express perfect aspect.

ohóngbò phíbo'm-changed circumstances  
 okàibò cophù-broken pitcher  
 okhàkpò sɛn-reserved money  
 ɔpho'tpò phí-stitched cloth  
 ɔphùtpò yérúm-boiled egg  
 ɔrèppò mómò'n-fixed price  
 ɔsàtpò lɔ'i-blossomed flower



otábo mamo'n-reduced price  
 otáobo ngà-fried fish  
 otèkpa cò'l-brcken stick

## 2 (1/2) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in lí and pò

Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in pò, marker of infinitive  
 express durative aspect taking lí, marker of such aspect,

càklíbo mǝ'itán-burning charcoal  
 cènlibo túrén-running river  
 hínglibo zibo-living being  
 khàklíbo nóng-roaring cloud  
 nóklíbo ongàng-smiling baby  
 ngo'nglibo khói-humming bee  
 táoríbo ú:ngám-floating raft  
 tùmlibo ngóngà-sleeping lion

## 2 (2/. ) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in lǝ and pí`

A few qualifiers are derived from the roots of the functional verbs by adding to such roots lǝ perfect aspect and pí`, female marker. Such qualifiers express perfect aspect.

í`ràknorobi` lǝ'isábi`-drowned girl  
 lúho`nglabi` nùpi`-married woman  
 pènlobi` mobo`k-satisfied grand mother  
 sírobi` motà-dead friend (female)  
 so`klobi` lúkhra-wounded widow

## 2 (2/2) Funtive Verbal Qualifiers in lí and pí`

A few functional verbal qualifiers in pí`, female marker  
 express durative aspect taking lí, marker of such aspect,

hínglibi` mocà nùpi`-surviving daughter  
 kǝ`plibi` lúkhra-crying widow  
 no`klibi` lǝ'isábi`-smiling girl  
 sánnoribi` motà-playing friend (female)  
 tùmlibi` nùpi`-sleeping woman

## 3. 4. 2 Pronominal Adjectives

Many pronouns function as the adjective without undergoing any change in their forms. Such pronouns will be referred to as the pronominal adjectives.

Most of the pronominal adjectives follow the qualified nouns. A few of such adjectives precede the qualified nouns.

### 1 Distributive Adjectives

omomo'm, every ; ongàng omomo'mno lúpà mǎngà pho'ng-goni-Every boy will get five rupees  
khùdingmo'k, each ; nùpi' khùdingmo'kno mocà núngsi-  
Each woman loves her child.

### 2 (1) Indefinite Adjectives following the qualified nouns

otai khoro, some other ; wapho'm otoi khoro kho'nno'si-Let  
us discuss some other matters  
koyá, several ; mi' koyáno thobo'k pho'ngdè Several persons  
do not get employment  
khoro, some ; láiri'k khoro-Some books

### 2 (2) Indefinite adjectives preceding the qualified nouns

konágúmbo omoto, nobody ; konágúmbo mi' omotona modù  
pámdè-No person likes it  
korínó omo, anything ; korínó láiri'k omo hékto págè-Let  
me read any book  
korígúmbo omoto, nothing ; módhúdi' korígúmbo thobo'k  
omoto to'udè-Modhu does no work

### 3 (1) Interrogative Adjectives following the qualified nouns

koná what ; kóbi konáno osi'gúmbo so'iréng igadogé-what  
poet will write such poem ?  
koyá, how many ; mi' koyá lákkodogè-How many persons  
will come ?

### 3 (2) Interrogative Adjectives preceding the qualified nouns

korí, what ; syámdi' korí thobo'k to'uribogè-What work is  
Syam doing ?  
koro'mbo, which ; koro'mbo láiri'k págodogè-Which book  
will you read ?

### 4 Separative Adjectives

omo, any one, one ; ongàng omomo modù hékto to'ubo  
ngo'mgoni'-any boy can do it.

otó'i-other; mi` otó'i-other persons

## 5 Demonstrative Adjectives

Two proximate demonstrative pronouns viz, odù and osi` are used as the adjectives. They follow the qualified nouns and personal pronouns,

### 5 (1/1) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the nouns in the singular

odù and osi`, express 'that' and 'this' respectively qualifying the nouns in the singular.

ho`i odù-that fruit

lo`i odù-that flower

ni` osi`-this person

o`k osi`-this pig

Demonstrative adjectives may be reduplicated for sake of emphasis when they qualify the nouns in the singular. In such case, the first reduplicated segment of these adjectives take mǎ, secondary prefix and kí, genitive.

| <i>singular forms</i> | <i>emphatic singular forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| mi` odù               | mǎdùgí mi` odù                 | that person     |
| o`k odù               | mǎdùgí o`k odù                 | that pig        |
| sà osi`               | mǎsìgí sà osi`                 | this animal     |
| só osi`               | mǎsìgí só osi`                 | this key        |

### 5 (1/2) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the personal pronouns in the singular

odù, that and osi`, this function as the emphasisers without expressing their meanings when they qualify the personal pronouns in the singular. In such case, odù occurs with mà, he/she and osi`, this occurs with all the personal pronouns.

#### (a) odù as emphasiser

| <i>singular form</i> | <i>emphatic singular forms</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| mà                   | mǎhàk odù                      | he/she         |

#### (b) osi` as emphasiser

| <i>singular forms</i> | <i>emphatic singular forms</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| oi`                   | oi` osi`/oi`hàk osi`           | I              |

|       |                         |        |
|-------|-------------------------|--------|
| no`ng | no`ng o`si`/nohàk o`si` | you    |
| mà    | mohàk o`si`             | he/she |

5 (2/1) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the nouns in the plural

o`du, 'that' and o`si, 'this' express 'those' and 'these' respectively qualifying the nouns in the plural

hi`sing o`du-those boats

ka`sing o`du-those rooms

lo`sing o`si-these flowers

mi`sing o`si-these persons

5 (2/2) Demonstrative Adjectives qualifying the personal pronouns in the plural

o`du, that express 'those' qualifying makhò'i, they.  
makhò'i o`du those of them

o`si, this expresses 'those' qualifying the personal pronouns in the plural.

o`i`kho`i o`si-those of us

no`kho`i o`si-those of you

makhò'i o`si-those of them

6 Qualitative Adjectives

Qualitative adjectives are derived from the demonstrative adjectives by adding to these adjectives kúmbò, like, Such adjectives precede the qualified nouns.

o`du`gúmbò, that like ; o`du`gúmbò midì` tàngì-Person of that kind is rare

o`si`gúmbò, such, this like ; o`si`gúmbò nùpàno modù tóuro`i-  
Such man will not do that

7 Determinative Adjectives

o`du`k, that much ; so`nggóm o`du`kto-That much milk  
o`su`k, this much ; tháo o`su`kto-This much oil

3. 4. 3 Numerals

Numerals may be classified into the four groups viz., (a) cardinal numerals, (b) ordinal numerals, (c) multiplicative numerals and (d) distributive numerals.

### 3. 4. 3. 1 Cardinal Numerals

Cardinal numerals follows the qualified nouns and personal pronouns. A few cardinal numerals are basic forms with or without the secondary prefixes. Most of the cardinal numerals are compound forms.

#### 1 Basic forms of cardinal numerals

kún, twenty is a basic form without taking any secondary prefix

Basic forms of a few cardinal numerals take the three secondary prefixes viz , -o, mo and to.

##### (a) Forms in -o

omó, one ; oní-two ; ohúm-three

##### (b) Forms in mo

morí four ; mongà-five

##### (c) Forms in to

torúk six ; torèt-seven ; torá-ten

#### 2 Compound Forms of cardinal numerals

##### 2 (1) Cardinal numerals for 8, 9, 50 and 1000

Cardinal numerals for 8, 9, 50 and 1000 are compound forms. They are shown below :—

nípán-eight ; mápó'n-nine ; yàngkhò'i-fifty ; lì'sìng-thousand

##### 2 (2) Cardinal numerals with phù, twenty

Cardinal numerals for 40, 60 and 80 are formed by adding phù, twenty (a hound form) to the numerals from 2 to 4.

nì'phù forty ; hùmphù-sixty ; morì'phù-eighty

##### 2 (3) Cardinal numerals with torà, ten

Cardinal numerals for 30, 70 and 90 are formed by adding torà, ten to the numerals for 20, 60 and 80.

kùnthrà-thirty ; hùmphùtorà-seventy ; morì'phùtorà/mo'u-drà-ninty.

##### 2 (4) Cardinal Numerals with máthói, ni'thói and húmdói.

First three ascending numbers from the multiples of tens upto ninety are formed by adding to such multiples of tens máthói,

## 212 Morphology

ni`thói and húmdói viz , cardinal numerals for 1, 2 and 3 plus thói. exceed.

|    |                      |    |                      |
|----|----------------------|----|----------------------|
| 11 | toramáthói           | 13 | toráhúmdói           |
| 21 | kúnmáthói            | 23 | kúnhúmdói            |
| 31 | kúnthrá máthói       | 33 | kúnthrá húmdói       |
| 41 | ni`phú máthói        | 43 | ni`phú húmdói        |
| 51 | yàngkho`imáthói      | 53 | yàngkho`ihúmdói      |
| 61 | húmphú máthói        | 63 | húmphú húmdói        |
| 71 | húmphú torámáthói    | 73 | húmphú torà húmdói   |
| 81 | mori`phú máthói      | 83 | mori`phú húmdói      |
| 91 | mori`phú torà máthói | 93 | mori`phú torà húmdói |

### 2 (5) Cardinal Numerals with the numeral from 4 to 9

Last six ascending numerals from the multiples of tense up to are formed by adding to such multiples of tens the numerals from 4 to 9.

|    |                  |    |                   |
|----|------------------|----|-------------------|
| 14 | toràmori`        | 19 | torámápo`n        |
| 24 | kúnmori`         | 29 | kúnmápo`n         |
| 34 | kúnthrà`mori`    | 39 | kúnthrà`mápo`n    |
| 44 | ni`phú`mori`     | 49 | ni`phú`mápo`n     |
| 54 | yàngkho`imori`   | 59 | yàngkho`i`n.ápo`n |
| 64 | húmphú`mori`     | 69 | húmphú`mápo`n     |
| 74 | húmphú torámori` | 79 | húmphú torámápo`n |
| 84 | mori`phú`mori`   | 89 | mori`phú`mápo`n   |
| 94 | mó`udrá`mori`    | 99 | mó`udrá`mápo`n    |

### 2 (6) Cardinal numerals expressing hundreds

Hundred are formed by adding cà, tb hundred the numerals from 1 to 9.

|     |         |     |          |
|-----|---------|-----|----------|
| 100 | cà`mà`  | 200 | cà`ni`   |
| 3 0 | cà`hú`m | 400 | cà`mori` |

### 2 (7) Cardinal Numerals expressing thousands, lakhs and crores

Thousands, lakhs and crores are formed by adding li`si`ng, thousand, làk, lakh and kótí, crore to the numerals from 1 to 9.

lì'si'ng torà ten thousands  
 lì'si'ng kún-twenty thousands  
 làk torà-ten lakhs  
 làk kún-twenty lakhs  
 kótí torà-ten crores

### 3. 4. 3 2 *Ordinal Numerals*

Ordinal numeral for one is *ohànbo*, first. Other ordinal numerals are formed by adding *súbo* to the cardinal numerals.

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| oni` súbo-second  | ohúm súbo-third  |
| mori` súbo-fourth | mongà súbo-fifth |

### 3. 4. 3. 3 *Multiplicative Numerals*

Multiplicative numerals are formed by adding *sorùk* to the cardinal numerals.

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| sorùk oni`-double     | sorùk ohúm-three fold |
| sorùk mori`-four fold | sorùk mongà-five fold |

### 3. 4. 3. 4 *Distributive Numerals*

Distributive numerals are formed by reduplicating the cardinal numerals.

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 omomo'm   | 2 oni` oni`   |
| 3 ohúm ohúm | 4 mori` mori` |

### 3. 4. 3. 5 *Qualificatory Genitive*

Nouns in *ki*, genitive function as qualifiers. Such nouns may take *sing*, plural marker. The possessed nouns following *ki*, genitive may take markers of other cases.

*ongàngsinggi phùri'tkháodo*-in the pockets of the boys  
*oho'nsinggi páotàktogi*-from the advice of the elders  
*lo'isábi` singgi láiri'ktogi*-from the books of the girls  
*nùp'i'sigi momàido*-in the face of the women

## 3.5 Adverbs

3.5.0. *Adverbs may be classified into the two groups viz , (a) primary adverbs and (b) derived adverbs.*

### 3.5.1 Primary Adverbs

Primary adverbs are monosyllabic and reduplicated forms. Some primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, do not take any markers. Some monosyllabic primary adverbs take *no* form and indefinite/perfect forms. Many primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, function as the emphasisers signifying emphasis on a few particular verbs without taking any marker.

#### 3.5.1.1 Primary Adverbs without any markers

Some primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated do not take any markers. They precede the modified verbs. They are shown below :—

##### 1 Monosyllabic primary adverbs without any markers

cò'p, exactly ; mǝsi` cò'p cúmmi`-it is exactly straight  
hèk-at once

ho`i-yes

khò`k, never ; modùdò khò`k cò`tkò'nsi`-let us never go there

mái-no

hèk, at once has four synonyms viz., ko`k, pàk, sò't and tùk. Ko`k and sò't are emphatic forms. pàk modifies negative verbs. tùk modifies the verbs in -o`, imperative mood in the coordinate clauses.

módhúno thobò`k ɔdù hèk/ko`k/sò't tó'uthò`k:i- Madhop does the work at once.

mádhò`pno thobò`k ɔdù hèk/pàk sùdè-Madhop does not do the work at once.

tùk tó'wo`, yéngsi`-(you) do it at once, let us see.



ho'i, yes has three synonyms viz, o'ng, oho'i and ùm. o'ng and ùm are somewhat curt and are thus not used towards the elders and superiors. oh'oi is the polite form.

## 2 Reduplicated Primary Adverbs without any markers

bro'm bro'm, fast ; dāmúnə bro'm bro'm cənli'-Damu runs fast

pro'p pro'p, quickly ; pro'p pro'p ca'tsi'-let us go quickly  
phàk phàk, loudly ; gópálnə mokho'igi mómàngdə phàk  
phàk no'ki'-Gopal laughs loudly before them

### 3.5.1.2 Primary Adverbs taking no form and indefinite/perfect forms

hén, kúm, láo, phào and yám are monosyllabic primary adverbs. They express adverbial meanings taking the following forms :—

- (a) no form viz , the form in no, instrumental
- (b) po form viz , the form in po, marker of infinitive
- (c) to form viz., the form in to, locative

hén, kúm, láo phào and yám also express (1) adverbial meanings and (2) "be" (verb) in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses taking the following forms —

- (a) indefinite forms viz , the conjugated forms for the indefinite aspect of the three tenses
- (b) perfect forms viz , the conjugated forms for the perfect aspect of the three tenses

#### 1 hén, more

hén, more takes (a) no form and (b) indefinite and perfect forms. It precedes the stative verbs;

##### 1 (1) hénno, more

hénno, more is no form of hén, primary adverbs. It precedes the stative verbs

hénno pàk:i'-it is wider

hénno pàklo'mi' it was wider

hénno pàkkoni'-it will be wider

##### 1 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of hén, more

Indefinite and perfect forms of hén, more follow the stative verbs in po, marker of infinitive. They are shown below :—

| <i>Tense</i>  | <i>Indefinite forms</i> | <i>Perfect forms</i> |
|---------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| present tense | hénli                   | hénlè                |
| past tense    | hénlò'mi`               | hénlò'mlè            |
| future tense  | héngóni                 | hénlò'mgóni          |

## (a) Indefinite forms

- pàkpò hénli`-it is wider  
 pàkpò hénlò'mi`-it was wider  
 pàkpò héngóni it will be wider

## (b) Perfect forms

- pàkpò hénlè it has been wider  
 pàkpò hénlò'mlè-it had been wider  
 pàkpò hénlò'mgóni-it will have been wider

## 2 Kúm, like

Kúm, like takes (a) no form, (b) pò form and (c) indefinite and perfect forms.

## 2 (1) no form and pò form of kúm, like

no form and pò form of kúm, like follow the nominal forms. pò form has adjectival implications.

- (a) no form—kúmnò-like  
 (b) pò form—kúmbò-like

*Examples :—*

- (a) ɔ̀ngàngúmnò-like a baby  
 (b) ɔ̀ngàngúmbò-baby-like  
 dámúgúmbò mi`-a person like Damu  
 yo'tkúmbò-iron-like

## 2 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of kúm, like

Indefinite and perfect forms of kúm, like follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

| <i>Tense</i>  | <i>Indefinite form</i> | <i>Perfect forms</i> |
|---------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| present tense | kúmi`                  | kúmlè                |
| past tense    | kúmlò'mi`              | kúmlò'mlè            |
| future tense  | kúmgóni                | kúmlò'mgóni          |

## (a) indefinite forms

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmi`-Syam is like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmlò'mi`-Syam was like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmgóni` Syam will be like a scholar

## (b) perfect forms

syámdi` pò'ndit kúmlè-Syam has been like a scholar

s;ámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmlò'mlè-Syam had been like a scholar

syámdi` pò'ndi` t kúmlò'mgóni` Syam will have been like a scholar

## 3 láo, completely, entirely

láo, completely, entirely takes (a) no form and (b) indefinite and perfect forms

## 3 (1) láono, completely, entirely

láono, completely, entirely is no form of láo, primary adverb. It follows the reduplicated stative verbs.

pèt pèt láono ú:i`-it seems to be completely soft.

## 3 (2) Indefinite and perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely

Indefinite and perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely follow the reduplicated stative verbs. They are shown below :—

| <i>Tenses</i> | <i>Indefinite forms</i> | <i>Perfect forms</i> |
|---------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| present tense | láowi`                  | láo`rè               |
| past tense    | láo`rò'mi`              | láo`rò'mlè           |
| future tense  | láo`góni                | láo`rò'mgóni         |

## (a) Indefinite forms

cò't cò't láowi`-it is completely wet

cò't cò't láo`rò'mi`-it was completely wet

cò't cò't láo`góni` it will be completely wet

## (b) Perfect forms

cò't cò't láo`rè, it has been completely wet

cò't cò't láo`rò'mlè-it had been completely wet

cò't cò't láo`rò'mgóni`-it will have been completely wet

## 4 phào, as far as, upto, through, even

phào, as far as, upto, through, even takes (a) no form and

## 218—Morphology

**po form.** Such forms of phào follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

- (a) no form—phàono, through
- (b) po form—phàobo, as far as. upto, even

*Examples :—*

- (a) úmó'ng phàono—through the forest
- (b) dímapúr phàobo—as far as Dimapur  
lòumì' omo phàobo—even a peasant

**5 yám, much, very, less, at least, at most**

yám, much, very, less at least, at most takes (a) no form, (b) to form and (c) indefinite and perfect forms.

**5 (1)** no form of yám, very, much, less no forms of yám, very, much, less precede the modified verbs. They are shown below:—

- (a) yámno—very modifies stative verbs
- (b) yámno much modifies functive verbs
- (c) yámdno—less modifies functive verbs

*Examples :—*

- (a) yámno pi'k:i'—it is very small
- (b) yámno càrè he has eaten more
- (c) syámdi' yámdno pho'ngi'—Syam gets less

**5 (2)** to forms of yám, at most, at least

to forms of yám, at most,

at least precede the functive verbs. They are shown below :—

- (a) yámlobodo—at most
- (b) yámdro'bodo—at least

*Examples :—*

- (a) yámlobodo débéanno lupa môngà pho'nggoni—Deben will get at most five rupees
- (b) yámdro'bodo gópáino lúpà cámo pi'goda'uri—Gopal is going to give at least one hundred rupees

## 5 (3) Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, much

Indefinite and perfect form of yám, much follow the nominal forms. They are shown below :—

| <i>Tenses</i> | <i>Indefinite forms</i> | <i>Perfect forms</i> |
|---------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| present tense | yámi`                   | yámlè                |
| past tense    | yámlo'mi`               | yámlo'mlè            |
| future tense  | yámgoní                 | yámlo'mgoní          |

## (a) Indefinite forms

cíní osi` mi` onì`gidomo`kti yámi`—This sugar is much for two persons

cíní odù mi` onì`gidomo`kti yámlo'mi`—That sugar was much for two persons

cíní osi` mi` onì`gidomo`kti` yámgoní This sugar will be much for two persons

## (b) perfect forms

tháo odù yámlè—that oil has been much

tháo odù yámlo'mlè—that oil had been much

tháo odù yámlo'mgoní—that oil will have been much

## 3 5. 1. 3 Primary Adverbs used as the emphasisers

Many primary adverbs, both monosyllabic and reduplicated, function as the emphasisers signifying emphasis on a few particular verbs without taking any markers. Such adverbs precede the modified verbs. Some of these adverbs are shown below .—

## 1 Monosyllabic primary adverbs used as emphasisers

ngèk ; gópáno lo'ibáko ngèk pho'mi`—Gopal sits on the floor

phùk ; mádho'pno makhó'gi momàngdo phùk ho'ugo'tti—Madhop stands up before them

sèt ; cophù odù sèt kàirè—The pitcher has broken

swài ; bhùt odù swài mánglo'mi`—The ghost disappeared

## 2 Reduplicated primary adverbs used as emphasisers

phùt phùt ; débéno lo'mbi omodo'gi omodo phùt phùt pháowi`—Deben passes from one road to another

sro` sro`; gópalno lophù adù lómbi`dó sro` sro` cingi`

Gopal drags the plantain tree on the road

srù srù; thúmda` i`singdó srù srù túmmi`-Salt dissolves in the water

thro`k thro`k; mádhopno məkho`igi mómàngdó thro`k

thro`k o`tho`klè-Madhop has vomitted before them

### 3. 5. 2 *Derived Adverbs*

Adverbs are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs by adding to such stems *no*, instrumental or *to*, locative. Adverbs are derived from such stems by adding to these stems *no/to* and other components.

#### 3. 5. 2. 1 *Adverbs in no, instrumental*

Many Adverbs in *no*, instrumental precede the modified verbs, Some of such adverbs are added to the nouns.

##### 3. 5. 2. 1. 1 *Adverbs in no preceding the verbs*

##### 1 Adverb in *no* derived from the pronouns

A few adverbs in *no*, instrumental derived from *osi*, this and *kəri*, what precede the modified verbs.

osùmnó, so; məkho`ino osùmnó hàì They say so

kodo`uno, koro`mno-how

##### 2 Adverbs in *no* derived from the verbs

Some adverbs in *no*, instrumental derived from the verbs precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in *no*

(b) Reduplicated Adverbs in *no*

(c) Adverbs in *no* with nominal adjuncts

*Examples :—*

##### (a) Adverbs in *no*

hánno-already (hán, precede)

kónno-later (kón, follow)

lápno, thàpno, far (láp/thàp, distant)

pho'no, well (pho', good); məkho'no syámbú pho'no ngàngno'i-they speak well of Syam

pho'ttəno, thi'no, ill (pho', good, thi', ugly); məkho'no syámbú pho'ttəno/thi'no ngàngno'i-They speak ill of Syam

thúno, soon (thú, hasten)

yàngno, fast (yàng, speedy)

(b) Reduplicated Adverbs in no

ho'nno ho'nno, again

i'kho'ng kho'ng:ho'udəno, all of a sudden

kábo'k kábo'k, ókhəkno, ókhək sákhəkno-to some extent

motho'ng motho'ng-step by step

(c) Adverbs in no with nominal adjuncts

motho'ng mənəo náno-in order

tóngánno, apart; yo'kho'k ədú yo'tpəktəgi tóngáno táre-

The handle of the spade falls apart from the spade

thàngo'i séngno, indeed

5. 2. 1. 2 Adverbs in no added to the nouns

Some adverbs in no, instrumental derived from the verbs are added to the nouns. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in no

(b) Adverbs in no with ko, comitative/no, instrumental

Examples :—

(a) Adverbs in no

nətto'no, except (ni', be); módhú nəttəno-except Modhu

oíno, as (oi, be); məpə əmo oíno-as a father

yàodəno, without (yào, participate)

syámgi məténg yàodəno-without Syam's help

(b) Adverbs in no with ko/no

ko lo'inəno, with; gópəlgo lóinəno-with Gopal

ko o'nno tə'inəno, country to; məpəgi páotəkko o'nno tə'inəno-contrary to his father's advice

## 222 – Morphology

ne mərə̀m òidùno, due to ; nóngno mərə̀m òidùno–due to  
rain

### 3. 5. 2. 2 Adverbs in to, locative

Some adverbs in to, locative precede the modified verbs.  
Many of such adverbs are added to the nouns.

#### 3. 5. 2. 2. 1 Adverbs in to preceding the modified verbs

##### 1 Adverbs in to derived from the nouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from the nouns precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in to

(b) Adverbs in to with mɔ, secondary prefix and ngòi-temporal infix.

*Examples :—*

(a) Adverbs in to

mɔtɔ́m ɔ́'ibɔ khíbi`kto, mɔtɔ́m pùmnmɔ́`kto-always  
mɔtómto, mɔtho`ntɔ-alone  
khùdɔ`kto-at once

(b) Adverbs in to with mɔ and ngòi

mɔci`ngo`ido-at the outset  
mɔmàngo`ido, thàino, thàinongo`ido-long ago

##### 2 Adverbs in to derived from the pronouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from odu, that, osi, this and kori, what precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

(a) Adverbs in to

(b) Adverbs in to with ngòi/wái-temporal infix

*Examples :—*

(a) Adverbs in to

odúdo-there



osi'do-here

- (b) Adverbs in to with ngo'i/wái  
 odùngo'i-in those days  
 odùwáido-over there  
 osùng'oido-at this time  
 osùwáido-over here  
 kodáido, kodáiwáido, kodo`mdo-where  
 kodo ungo`i, koro'mbo moto'mdo-when  
 kodo'ungo'idosù-never ; cf, kho`k, never (primary adverb)  
 korigumbodo, occassionally-sometimes ;  
 cf-moro`k moro`kto-occassionally (a nominal form)

### 3 Adverbs in to derived from the verbs

A few adverbs in to, locative derived from the verbs precede the modified verbs. Such adverbs take tho`ng-temporal infix. khàgùtho`ngdo-in vain  
 káinotho`ngdo, kóntho`ngdo-at last ; c.f.—momo`itho`ngdo-at last (a nominal form)

#### 3. 5. 2. 2. 2 Adverbs in to added to the nouns

Some adverbs in to, locative derived from the nouns are added to the nouns. Such adverbs may be classified into the following types :—

- (a) Adverbs in to with ki, genitive  
 (b) Adverbs in to with kí. genitive and mo, secondary prefix

*Examples :—*

- (a) Adverbs in to with kí, genitive  
 kimàiko`ido, in favour of ; moyàmbogi màiko`ido-in favour of his elder brother  
 kimàiyokto, against ; khúnzasi`ngi màiyokto-against the villagers  
 ki wángmodo, beyond ; túrelgi wángmodo-beyond the river  
 (b) Adverbs in to with ki genitive and mo, secondary prefix.

kí mǎhùtto, instead of ; hǎ'igimǎhùtto—instead of the fruit  
 kímǎnìngdǎ, behind ; yúmgi`mǎnìngdǎ—behind the house  
 kí mǎrìmdǎ, about, concerning ; láigi mǎrǎmdǎ—about the war

kí mǎrìdǎ, in respect of ; cádinggi mǎrìdǎ—in respect of the expenditure,

kí mǎtúngdǎ, after, behind ; thǎ ǎmǎgi mǎtúngdǎ—after one month

kí mǎthǎ'ngdǎ, next to ; syámgi mǎthǎ'ngdǎ—next to Syam

kígenitive and mǎ, secondary prefix prefixed to some adverbs in tǎ are deleted when such adverbs enter into compounds with the preceding monosyllabic nouns.

kí mǎmǎngdǎ, before, in front of ; láigi mǎmǎngdǎ/láimǎngdǎ—before the deity

kí mǎrǎ'ktǎ, between ; among ; ú:singgi mǎrǎ'ktǎ/úrǎ'ktǎ—among the trees

kí mǎyàidǎ, in the midst of, in the centre of ; khúlgí mǎ-yàidǎ/khúnyàidǎ—in the centre of the village

## 2 Adverbs in tǎ derived from the verbs

A few adverbs in tǎ, locative derived from the verbs are added to the nouns. Such adverbs take kí, genitive and -ǎ/mǎ, primary prefix.

kí ǎko`ibǎdǎ, around , sǎhórgi ǎko`ibǎdǎ—around the city  
 kímǎnǎktǎ, near ; dímpúrgi mǎnǎktǎ—near Dimapur

### 3. 5. 3 Relational Words

Many relational words function as the adverbs. They are monosyllabic forms. They are added to the nouns, cardinal numerals and verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

#### 3. 5. 3. 1 Relational words suffixed to the nouns and cardinal numerals

Relational words suffixed to the nouns and cardinal numerals are shown below :—

**1 Relational Words suffixed to the nouns**

lò'm, towards + tɔ, locative ; dí'mápúrrò`mdɔ-towards Dí-mapur.

mùk, as much as ; syámdi` gópál mùk kò`nli`-Syam is as strong as Gopal

sù, too, also ; mádhò`psù cò`tkòni-Madhòp will go too

tɔ, only ; syámdi` càktɔ cà`i`-Syam eats only the cooked rice

**2 Relational words suffixed to the cardinal numerals**

kho`k, only ; lúpà oni` kho`k-two rupees only

lò`k, number of times such as twice, thrice etc.

oni`rò`k, twice, ohùm|ò`k-thrice

lò`m, mùk, about, approximately ;

lúpà tɔrùk lò`m|mùk-about six rupees

**3. 5. 3. 2 Relational words added to the verbs**

Many relational words are prefixed, infixes or suffixed to the verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of three tenses. Such verbs thus express their verbal meanings and also the meanings of the relational words.

**3. 5. 3. 2. 1 Relational Words prefixed to the verbs**

Relational words prefixed to the verbs are shown below:—

(a) cɔ, -i`, pùm, sùp, tɔ, completely, entirely

(b) -i`, pong, much, very, seldom, scarcely

The relational words shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverbs and Relational Words.

**3. 5. 3. 2. 2 Relational words infixes to the verbs.**

Relational words infixes to the verbs are shown below :—

(a) cà, lò`l, tá, a little

(b) ci`n, in ; kò`t, on ; tò`k, out ; thɔ-below

(c) hò`u, far, near

(d) mínnɔ, together, with

The relational words other than, ho`u and minno shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverb and Relational words. ho`u, far, near and minno, together, with will be discussed here.

1 (1) ho`u, far, there

ho`u, far, there is infixed to the functive verbs in the aspects of the present tense other than the perfect durative aspect. In such case, these verbs in ho`u are used only in the third person.

caho`uri-they are eating there

pho`mho`uri-they are sitting there

1 (2) ho`u, near, here

ho`u, near, here is infixed to the functive verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the future tense. In such case, these verbs in ho`u are used only in the first and third persons.

pa`ho`ugoni-we/they will read here

ta`ho`ukhigoni-we/they will be listening here

2 (1) minno, together

minno, together is infixed to the four aspects of the present and future tenses. It also infixed to the verbs in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

lo`iminno`i-we/you/they live together

pho`mminnoro`mgoni-we/you/they will have sat together

2 (2) minno, with

minno, with is infixed to the verbs in the aspects of the tenses shown above (para 2 (1) —). In such case, these verbs with minno is defined and preceded by the nominal forms in ko, comitative.

ra`mno sya`mgo co`tminno`i-Ram goes with Syam

3. 5. 3. 3. 3 Relational Words suffixed to the verbs

Relational Words suffixed to the verbs are shown below :—

- (a) kàk, tìk, to`k, to`ng, completely, entirely
- (b) lo`p, li`, to`k, a little
- (c) ni`ngci`t, ni`ng, màng-on the verge of

The relational words other than ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng shown above are the synonyms of some primary and derived adverbs. They will be discussed in the Section on the Synonymous Adverbs and Relational words. ni`ngci`t o ni`ng...màng, on the verge of will be discussed here.

### 1 ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng-on the verge of

ni`ngci`t, ni`ng...màng, on the verge of is suffixed to a few functive verbs followed by the conjugated forms of to`u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, the main verbs in ni`ng...màng are reduplicated.

yo`uni`ngci`t to`urè/yo`uni`ng...yo`umàng to`urè-he is on the verge of reaching

### 3. 5. 4 Synonymous Adverbs and Relational Words

Synonymous adverbs and relational words express the following :—

- (a) a little
- (b) completely, entirely
- (c) in, out, on, below
- (d) most
- (e) seldom, scarcely, often
- (f) much, very
- (g) too, too much

#### 1 a little

“a little” is expressed by the following primary/derived adverbs and relational words :—

- (a) primary adverbs—khorò, khoroto, khozi`kto, khozi`k khoràkto
- <sup>1</sup>(b) derived adverbs—kúm...làkkúm, kúm...tògúm,  
pói...làkpói, pói...tobói
- (c) relational words—cà, lo`i, tá  
lo`p, li`, to`k

khəro, khorəto, khozi`kto, and khozi`k khorəkto modify and precede the verbs. khəro occurs only with the affirmative verbs. khozi`k khorəkto occurs only with the negative verbs;

khəro/khorəto/khozi`kto càrè-he has eaten a little

khorəto/khozi`kto/khozi`k/khorəkto càdè-he does not eaten a little

cà, lə`i and tá are infixed to a few stative verbs in nə, primary infix. In such case, cà, lə`i and tá precede nə.

cà—to`nzànrè-he has been a little idle

lə`i—ngànglən`rè-it is a little red

tá—cə`mdánrè-it is a little simple

lə`p, li`, to`k, kúm...lakkúm, kúm . togúm, pói...lăkpói, and pói...təbói are suffixed to the main verbs followed by the conjugated forms of to`u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, the main verbs with the adverbs other than lə`p and to`k are reduplicated.

|                          |  |                       |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| khəro`p to`uwi`          |  |                       |
| khəto`k to`uwi`          |  |                       |
| khəri` khəri` to`uwi`    |  |                       |
| khəgúm lakkúm to`uwi`    |  | it is a little bitter |
| khəgúm khədgúm to`uwi`   |  |                       |
| khəbói lăkpói to`uwi`    |  |                       |
| khəbói kha`dəbói to`uwi` |  |                       |

## 2 completely, entirely

"completely, entirely" is expressed by the following primary/derived adverbs and relational words :—

(a) primary adverb nə form and indefinite/perfect forms of lăo, primary adverb

(b) derived adverbs—lə`inə, to`inmə`k, ngo`mnə, ngo`mnmə`k

(c) relational words—cə, -i`, pùm, sùp, to, kək, ti`k, to`k, to`ng

cə, -i`, pùm, sùp and to are prefixed to the verbs. In such case, these verbs with the relational words other than cə are reduplicated. sùp occurs only with the negative verbs. to occurs only with a few stative verbs.

|                |  |                             |
|----------------|--|-----------------------------|
| cəbènrè        |  |                             |
| i`pèt pètillè  |  | it has been completely soft |
| pùmpèt pètillè |  |                             |

sùkpèt pèt-tè-it has been completely soft

tôngàng tòngànglè-it has been completely red

kàk, tì'k, to'k and to'ng are infixed to a few verbs causing reduplication of these verbs. In such case, kàk occurs with the functive verbs. tì'k, to'k and to'ng occur with the stative verbs.

kàk—pho'igàk pho'irè-it has been placed completely breadth-wise

tì'k—lò'ngtri'k lò'nglè-it has been completely bright

to'k—pàkthro'k pàklè it has been completely wide

to'ng—sángtrong sánglè-it has been completely long

lò'ino, lò'inomò'k, ngo'mno, ngo'mnomò'k precede the functive verbs.

lò'ino càrè |

lò'inmòk càrè | he has eaten completely

ngo'mno càrè |

ngo'mnomò'k càrè |

no form and indefinite/perfect forms of láo, completely, entirely have already been shown.

### 3 in, out, on, below

"in, out, on and below" are expressed by the following derived adverbs and relational words :—

| <i>Relational words</i> | <i>Derived adverbs</i> | <i>meanings</i>         |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| cì'n                    | kimò'ngdò              | in, inside, within      |
| kò't                    | kimòthò'ktò            | on, upon, upwards       |
| to'k                    | kimòpándò              | out, outside            |
| thò                     | kimòkhàdò              | below, under, downwards |

### 3 (2) cì'n, kò't, to'k, thò

cì'n, kò't, to'k and thò occur with a few functive verbs. They are infixed to such verbs.

#### (a) cì'n, in, inside

cìngsì'n lómì'-we/you/they pulled inside

cóngsi'n ló'mì'-we/you/they jumped inside

thángzì'n ló'mì'-we/you/they carried inside

(b) *ko't*, on, upwards

*cíngkho't lo'mi'-we/you/they pulled upwards*

*cóngkho't lo'mi'-we/you/they jumped upwards*

*thángxo't lo'mi'-we/you/they carried upwards*

(c) *to'k*, out, outside

*cíngtho'k lo'mi'-we/you/they pulled out side*

*cóngtho'k lo'mi'-we/you/they jumped out side*

*thángxo'k lo'mi'-we/you/they carried outside*

(d) *tho*, below, downwards

*cíngtho'ro'mi'-we/you/they pulled downwards*

*cóngtho'ro'mi'-we/you/they jumped downwards*

*thángxo'ro'mi'-we/you/they carried downwards*

3 (2/2) *ko't* and *tho/to'k* and *ci'n* with the reduplicated verbs

*ko't*, on and *tho*, below or *to'k*, outside and *ci'n*, inside may occur with the main reduplicated verbs followed by the conjugated forms of *to'u*, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of three tenses,

*cóngtho'k cóngsi'n to'uro'mi'-we/you/they jumped outside and inside*

*cóngkho't cóngtho to'uro'mi'-we/you/they jumped upwards and downwards.*

*ko't*, upwards and *tho*, downwards may occur with a few compound verbs consisting of two different verb roots followed by the conjugated forms of *to'u*, auxiliary verb. In such case, *ko't* occur with the first verb root and *tho* with the second verb root.

*kákhə't kùntho to'uro'mi'-we climbed upwards and downwards*

*lèpkhə't phə'mtho to'uro'mi'-we stood up and sat down*

## 3 (3) Derived Adverbs expressing in, out, on and below

Derived adverbs expressing in, out, on and below have been shown. They are adverbs in *to*. locative with *ki*, genitive and *mo*, secondary prefix. They are illustrated below ;—

*kimə̀nùngdə*, in, inside, within ;

*yùmgí mənùngdə*-inside the house



kímopánda, out, outside ; i'ngkhólgí' mópánda-outside the homestead land

kímótho'kte, on, upon, upwards ; tébo'lgí mótho'kto-on the table

kímó kháda, below, under, downwards ; ú:gi mákháda-below the tree.

Nominal forms with the four derived adverbs in to, locative may modify and precede the functive verbs with their corresponding Relational words :—

lámbo'lgí monúngda cóngsi'nlo'mi' he jumped inside the fort  
lámbo'lgí mópánda cóngtho'kto'mi'-he jumped outside the fort

tébo'lgí mótho'kto cóngkha'tlo'mi'-he jumped on the table  
ú:gi mákháda cóngtho'kto'mi'-he jumped below the tree

#### 4 most

"most" is expressed by khwàidogi and two different forms.

##### 4 (1) Khwàidogi, most

Khwàidogi, most modifies and precedes the stative verbs.

khwàidogi pho'i-it is the best of all

khwàidogi pho zo'i-it is most beautiful of all

##### 4 (2) khwàidogi modifying the stative verbs in -i, mo, pum,

khwàidogi, most may modify the stative verbs in -i, mo and pum, completely, entirely. In such case, mo is prefixed to the stative verbs in the present perfect, -î and pum are prefixed to the stative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

khwàidogi mopho'rè |

khwàidogi i'pho phorè | it has been the best of all

khwàidogi pumpho phorè |

##### 4 (3) khwàidogi with the forms of hén

khwàidogi, most may modify the stative verbs defined by no form and indefinite/perfect forms of hén, primary adverbs. In such case, hén functions as emphasiser without expressing "more".

## 232 – Morphology

|                         |  |                |
|-------------------------|--|----------------|
| khw`aidagi hénno pho`i  |  | it is the best |
| phobo khw`aidagi hénli` |  | of all         |

khw`aidagi, most may also modify the stative verbs defined by the following forms of hén, primary adverb:—

- (a) no form and indefinite/perfect forms of hén with -i`/pùm, completely, entirely
- (b) indefinite/perfect forms of hén with mo, completely, entirely

*Examples :—*

|     |                                |  |                   |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| (a) | khw`aidagi i`hén héuno pho`i   |  |                   |
|     | khw`aidagi pùmhén hénno pho`i  |  | it is the best of |
|     | phobo khw`aidagi i`hén hénli   |  | all               |
|     | phobo khw`aidagi pùmhén hénli` |  |                   |

- (b) phobo khw`aidagi mohénli`-it is the best of all

### 4 (4) khw`aidagi replaced by two forms

khw`aidagi, most may be replaced by pùmnomo`ktagi and khw`ai pùmnomoktagi.

|                            |  |                       |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| khw`aidagi pho`i           |  |                       |
| pùmnomo`ktagi pho`i        |  | it is the best of all |
| khw`ai pùmnomo`ktagi pho`i |  |                       |

## 5 often, seldom, scarcely

### 5 (1) often

to`ino, ho`uzo ho`uzo, and i`to`tto`ttono express “often”. They are derived adverbs and precede the modified verbs.

|                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| to`ino ko`uro`mi`          |                       |
| ho`uzo ho`uzo ko`uro`mi`   | he often called       |
| i`to`t to`ttono ko`uro`mi` |                       |
| to`ino pho`mdè             |                       |
| ho`uzo ho`uzo pho`mdè      | he does not sit often |
| i`to`t to`ttono pho`mdè    |                       |

### 5 (2) seldom, scarcely

to`ino, -i` and po`ng expresss seldom, scarcely. They modify a few negative verbs of motion. to`ino is a derived adverbs

precedes the negative verbs. -i` and po`ng are relational words. They are prefixed to the negative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

to`ino láktè

i`rák láktè } he seldom comes

po`nglá k láktè

## 6 much, very

“much and very” are expressed by the following adverbs and relational words;—

(a) primary adverbs—yámno

(b) derived adverb—thóino

(c) relational words—-i`, po`ng

yámno, thóino, -i and po`ng express “much” occurring with the functive verbs. They express “very” occurring with the stative verbs.

yámno modifies the affirmative and negative verbs (both functive and stative) preceding such verbs. thóino, -i` and po`ng modify only the negative verbs (both functive and stative). thóino precedes the negative verbs. -i` and po`ng are prefixed to the negative verbs causing reduplication of such verbs.

### (a) much

yámno càrè he eats much

yámno càdrè

thóino càdrè } he does not eat much

i`cà càdrè

po`ngcà càdrè

### (b) very

yámno pi`k:i`-it is very small

yámno pi`ktè

thóino pi`ktè } it is not very small

i`pi`k pi`ktè

po`ngpi`k pi`ktè

## 6 (2) yámno, much, very occurring with other components

### (a) yámno, very modifying the derived adverbs

## 234—Morphology

yámno, very may modify and precede a few derived adverbs in no, instrumental.

yámno làpno/thàpno-very far

yámno tóino-very often

yámno thúno-very soon

yámno yàngno-very fast

(b) yámno, emphasising the derived adverbs

yámno functions as the emphasiser signifying emphasis on a few derived adverbs in no, instrumental without expressing "much, very".

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| hánno                | yámno hánno           | already         |
| kónno                | yámno kónno           | later           |
| motho`ng monào       | yámno motho`ng-       | in order        |
| náino                | monào náino           |                 |

6 (3) Emphatic forms expressing "much" and "very"

6 (3/1) hénno and yámno emphatically expressing 'much' and 'very'

hénno yámno are no forms of the two primary adverbs viz, hén and yám. They emphatically express 'much' modifying negative functive verbs when they take -i/po`ng or are preceded by thóino.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| i`cà càdè            | i`hén hénno càdè      |                 |
| po`ngcà càdè         | po`ng:hén hénno càdè  |                 |
| thóino càdè          | thóino hénno càdè     | he does not     |
| yámno càdè           | i`yám yámno càdè      | eat much        |
|                      | po`ngyám yámno càdè   |                 |
|                      | thóino yámno càdè     |                 |

hénno and yámno emphatically express 'very' modifying negative stative verbs when they take -i/po`ng or are preceded by thóino.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| i`cáo cáo cáodè      | i`hén hénno cáodè     |                 |
| po`ngcáo cáodè       | po`ng:hén hénno cáodè | it is not very  |
| thóino cáodè         | thóino hénno cáodè    | big             |

|             |                      |                |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------|
| yámno cáodè | i'yám yámno cádè     | it is not very |
|             | pò'ngyám yámno cáodè | big            |
|             | thóino yámno cáodè   |                |

### 6 (3/2) Forms of hén emphatically expressing 'very'.

Negative indefinite/perfect forms of hén, primary adverb emphatically express 'very' modifying the stative verbs in pò when such forms take -i/pò'ng or are preceded by thóino.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| i'cáo cáodè          | cáobo i'hén héndè     |                 |
| pò'ngcáo cáodè       | cáobo pò'ng:hén héndè | it is not very  |
| thóino cáodè         | cáobo thóino héndè    | big             |

### 6 (3/3) Forms of yám emphatically expressing "much"

Negative indefinite/perfect forms of yám, primary adverb emphatically express 'much' following ódù, that/osi', this when such forms take -i/pò'ng or are preceded thóino.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>     | <i>meaning</i> |
|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| cini ósi' yámde      | ciri ósi' i'yám yámde     | This sugar     |
|                      | cini ósi' pò'ngyám yámde  | is not         |
|                      | cini ósi' pò'ngyám yámde' | much           |
|                      | óini ósi' thóino yámde'   |                |

## 7 too, too much

'too' and 'too much' are expressed by the following derived adverb and relational words:—

- (a) derived adverb—o'ntho'kno
- (b) relational words—khi', mó'n

o'ntho'kno, khi' and mó'n express 'too' occurring with the stative verbs. o'ntho'kno and mó'n express 'too much' occurring with the functive verbs.

o'ntho'kno precedes the modified verbs (both functive and stative). khi' is infixed to (o stative verbs in the present perfect: mó'n is infixed to the verbs (both functive and stative).

## 236—Morphology

### (a) too

khkàhre`  
khàmo`nle` } it has been too bitter  
o`ntho`kno khàkhre`

### (b) too much

càmo`nle` } he has eaten too much  
o`tho`kno càre`

### 7 (2) Indefinite/perfect forms of yám expressing "too much"

Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, primary adverbs express "too much" following odu, tha/osi, this when such forms take khi'/mo'u, 'too much' or are preceded by o`ntho`kno, "too much".

cini`osi` yámkhre`  
cini`osi` yámo`nle` } this sugar has been too much  
cini`osi` o`ntho`kno yámle`

### 7 (3) Emphatic forms expressing 'too' and 'too much'

#### 7 (3/1) mo`nkhì, emphatically expressing 'too', 'too much'

mo`nkhì is the compound of mo`n and khi`, It emphatically expresses 'too' occurring with the stative verbs in the present perfect. mo`nkhì emphatically expresses 'too much' occurring with the functive verbs in the present perfect.

#### (a) too

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>        |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| khàmo`nle`           | khàmo`nkhìe`          | it has been too bitter |
| thàmo`nle`           | thàmo`nkhìe`          | it has been too thick  |

#### (b) too much

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| càmo`nle`            | càmo`nkhìe`           | he has eaten too much |
| pàmo`nle`            | pàmo`nkhìe`           | he has read too much  |

### 7 (3/2) Verbs with khi', mo`n and mo`nkhì emphatically expressing too, too much

Stative verbs with *khi'*, *mò'n* and *mò'nkhi'* emphatically express "too" when such verbs are defined and preceded by the three adverbs viz. *yámno*, "much", "very"; *ò'ntho'kno*, "too" and *ò'ntho'kno+yámno*.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>           |
|----------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <i>khàkhrè</i>       | <i>yámno khàkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno khàkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàkhrè</i>   |                           |
| <i>khàmo'nìè</i>     | <i>yámno khàmo'nìè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno khàmo'nìè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàmo'nìè</i><br><i>yámno khàmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno khàmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno yámno khàmo'nkhrè</i> | it has been too<br>bitter |

Funcitive verbs with *mò'n* and *mò'nkhi'* emphatically express "too much" when such verbs are defined and preceded by the five adverbs viz. *hénno* "more", *yámno*, "much", "very"; *ò'ntho'kno*, "too much"; *ò'ntho'kno+hénno* and *ò'ntho'kno+yámno*.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>          |
|----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>càmo'nìè</i>      | <i>hénno càmo'nìè</i><br><i>yámno càmo'nìè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno càmo'nìè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno hénno càmo'nìè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno yámno càmo'nìè</i><br><i>hénno càmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>yámno càmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno càmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno hénno càmo'nkhrè</i><br><i>ò'ntho'kno yámno càmo'nkhrè</i> | he has eaten<br>too much |

### 7 (3/3) Forms of *hén* emphatically expressing "too", "too much"

Indefinite and perfect forms of *hén*, primary adverb emphatically express "too" modifying the stative verbs when such forms take *mò'n/mò'nkhi'* with or without *ò'ntho'kno* preceding forms.

## 255 - Morphology

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>        | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>khàmo'nìè</b>     | khàbo hénmo'nìè              |                 |
|                      | khàbo o'ntho'kno hénmo'nìè   | it has been too |
|                      | khàbo hénmo'nkhrè            | bitter          |
|                      | khàbo o'ntho'kno hénmo'nkhrè |                 |

Indefinite and perfect forms of hén emphatically express "too much" modifying functive verbs when such forms take khi', mo'n and mo'nkhi' with or without o'ntho'kno preceding these forms.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>       | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>càmo'nìè</b>      | càbo hénmo'nìè              |                 |
|                      | càbo o'ntho'kno hénmo'nìè   |                 |
|                      | càbo hénmo'nkhrè            | he has eaten    |
|                      | càbo o'ntho'kno hénmo'nkhrè | too much        |
|                      | càbo hénkhrè                |                 |
|                      | càbo o'ntho'kno hénkhrè     |                 |

### 7 (3/4) Indefinite/perfect forms of yám emphatically expressing 'too much'

Indefinite and perfect forms of yám, primary adverb emphatically express 'too much' following odu, thá/osi', this when such forms take khi'/mo'n and was preceded by o'ntho'kno or when these forms take mo'nkhi' with or without o'ntho'kno preceding such forms.

| <i>general forms</i>     | <i>emphatic forms</i>          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>éni'osi' yámkhrè</b>  | éni'osi' o'ntho'kno yámkhrè    |
| <b>éni'osi' yámo'nìè</b> | éni'osi' o'ntho'kno yámo'nìè   |
|                          | éni'osi' yómo'nkhrè            |
|                          | éni'osi' o'ntho'kno yámo'nkhrè |

*meaning:* - This sugar has been too much

## 3.6 Conjunctions

**3.6.0** A few conjunctions are the primary forms. Most of the conjunctions are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs.

**3.6.1** Primary conjunctions



**Primary conjunctions are the monosyllabic forms. They are added both to the coordinated nouns.**

là...là, là...là omo, either.. or ; o'kia yénlà/o'kia yénlà omo either pig or hen

nè, tũ, as well as ; ho'inè lo'inè/ho'isù lo'isù-fruit as well as flower

o', and ; iháng:o tèn:o-sword and bow

### 3. 6. 2. *Derived Conjunctions*

Conjunctions are derived from the stems of the nouns, pronouns and verbs by adding to such stems case markers or case markers and other components. Case markers form the final components of the derived conjunctions. Such case markers are ko, comitative, no instrumental, to, locative, di', emphatic case marker and pũ, emphatic case marker. sũ, too also forms the final component of some conjunctions changing into sùng.

#### 1 Conjunctions derived from the pronouns

odũ/madũ, that and omo, any one form the basic stems of some conjunctions.

odũmo'ktodo, odũmo'kpũ, odũpháobo-even then ; cithi thà-rè, odũmà'k'odo/odũmà'kpũ/odũpháobo páokhúm pho'ngdrè-letter has been sent, even then no reply has been received.

odũbũ, but ; débéndi' pò'ngi' odũbũ mobúkcén séngi'-Deben is foolish but honest

madũdi', that (relative pronoun) ; gópáino hàì madũdi' kwák'itì mú:ĩ'-Gopal says that the crow is black.

omodi', oməsùng, omohi'k sùng, 'and' ;

oməsùng is the general form omohi'ksùng is literary form.

rám omodi'/oməsùng/omohi'ksùng syám-Ram and Syam

#### 2 Conjunctions derived from the noun.

mər'om, reason forms the basic stem of some conjunctions.

mərə'm adũno, mərə'm əsi'no, therefore ; mádhə'p thəbək sùdè, mərə'm adũno/mərə'm əsi'no khùtsũmò'n pho'nglò'i-Madhop does not do the work, therefore he will not get his wage

moro`mdi`, because ; débèn láklo`i, moro`mdi` mosà ná:i`-  
Deben will not come because he is ill

### 3 Conjunctions derived from the verbs

hài, say, ni`, be and to`u, do form the basic stems of some conjunctions.

hàino, hàibo, that (relative pronoun) ; módhú lákkoni` hàino/hàibo mádho`pno tà:i`-Madhop hears that Modhu will come.

to`u:i`gúmbosùng, but ; módhúdi` singi` to`u:i`gúmbosùng to`ni`-Modhu is wise but idle.

natto`go, or ; bírén natto`go bínoy-Biren or Binoy

natto`bodi`, if not, otherwise ; pàbùnggi páotàk insi`, natto`bodi` sáogoni`-let us follow father's advice, otherwise he will be angry

là natto`go.....là omo, either or ; rámlà natto`go syámlà omo-Either Ram or Syam

to natto`no.. sù, not only...but also ; bírénto natto`no bínoysù còtkoni` Not only Biren but also Binoy will go

# Syntax

## NOMINAL PHRASE

### 4. 1. 1. 1 *Noun or Noun equivalent*

Nominal phrase may consist of a single noun or a noun equivalent.

- (a) Noun—mi`-person  
ú-three
- (b) Pronoun—o`i, I
- (c) Numeral—mongà-five
- (d) Verbal Nouns—opo`nbo-obstacle

*Examples :—*

- (a) mi` lák:í`-the person comes
- (b) o`i cò`tkoni`-I shall go
- (c) mongàmo`k púro`k:ù-bring all the five
- (d) opo`nbasing asi` lo`utho`ksi`-let us remove these obstacles

### 4. 1. 1. 2 *Noun classes*

Nominal phrase may consist of the following types of nouns:-

- (a) Subsyllabic nouns
- (b) Monosyllabic nouns
- (c) Suffixed nouns
- (d) Compound nouns

*Examples :—*

- (a) ú yákhre`-the tree had been cut
- (b) mi` lák:í`-the person comes
- (c) oho`n oddi sigado`urè-that old person is going to die
- (d) ho`ino`u cási`-let us eat the mango

4. 1. 1. 2. 1 *Subsyllabic Nouns*

Subsyllabic nouns may be a monophthong,

i<sup>h</sup>-blood

i-thatch

ú-tree

Subsyllabic nouns may be a diphthong.

oĩ-left hand side

úi-a kind of bamboo plant

4. 1. 1. 2. 2 *Monosyllabic Nouns*

In CV type of the monosyllabic nouns, V may be the monophthongs other than -o.

cà-lac

củ-sugarcane

ci-heap

pó-pawn

cè-paper

só-key

In CV type of the monosyllabic nouns, V may be diphthongs.

hùi-dog

lô<sup>h</sup>u-paddy land

káo-bull

lái-god

lô<sup>h</sup>i-flower

lói-conquered people

In VC type of the monosyllabic nouns, V is a monophthong.

lín-fishing net

o<sup>h</sup>k-pig

ún-snow

út-ash

In CVC type of the monosyllabic nouns, V is also a monophthong.

o—hó<sup>h</sup>n-maggot

e—sén-money

lô<sup>h</sup>n-wealth

tén-arrow

a—lân-battle

o—ko<sup>h</sup>k-head

pàn-arum

lô<sup>h</sup>k-lake

i—lín-snake

u—khút-hand

mí<sup>h</sup>t-eye

múk-ink

#### 4. 1. 1. 2. 3 *Suffixed Nouns*

Suffixed nouns may be classified into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

##### 1 Primary Suffixed Nouns

Primary suffixed nouns consist of a verbal stem and one of the primary prefixes viz., —o, co and to.

oho'n-old person

conàn-oat

ongàng-baby

tàrèng-spinning wheel

conò'm-garlic

thorói-snail

##### 2 Secondary Suffixed Nouns

Secondary suffixed nouns consist of a nominal stem and one of the secondary prefixes viz., -o and mō.

oyùk-morning

mōnà-leaf

mohà-larva

mokú-owl

mohi`k-germ

moto`k-crest

#### 4. 1. 1. 2. 4 *Compound Nouns*

Compound nouns may be divided into the two types viz., (a) Simple compound nouns and (b) Complex compound nouns.

##### 4. 1. 1. 2. 4. 1 *Simple Compound Nouns*

Simple compound nouns may be grouped into the two types viz., (a) Simple Primary Compound nouns and (b) Simple Secondary Compound Nouns.

##### 1 Simple Primary Compound Nouns

Simple primary compound nouns consist of two verbal stems.

cènzóng-long jump

pàkno`m-a kind of dish

cóingàng-ravings

sàplàk-multiplication table

lèplà-i-screw auger

sùpno`m-violent imposition

##### 2 Simple Secondary Compound Nouns

Simple Secondary Compound Nouns may consist of the following components: —

- (a) N+N
- (b) o+V+N
- (c) N+V
- (d) N+V+N
- (e) N+N+N

*Examples —*

- (a) N+N  
     càkso`ng-kitchen                      lámbo`n fort  
     lò`ukhóng-irrigation-canal          phírán-flag
- (b) o+V+N  
     ócápo`t food stuff                      ówúnpo`t-dowry  
     ócàiháo-musterd oil                   ówámó`n-wage
- (c) N+V  
     hò`ikhà-appricot                      ko`kyèt-turban  
     hò`ino`u-mango                        sàmú-elephant
- (d) N+V+N  
     làiyéngso`ng-hospital                      sò`mkò`kthàng-razor  
     mì`hùttho`ng-window                      sàyo`kso`ng-zoo
- (e) N+N+N  
     láiro mién-heaven                      úcithi`-long peper  
     mì`rò,mién-universe                      úsingsá-cinnamom

2 (2) **Honorific Nouns**

Honorific nouns are simple secondary compound nouns. They express honorific implications. Some honorific nouns are used with reference to the second and third persons.

| <i>honorific forms</i> | <i>general forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| ko`ktho`n              | ko`kyèt              | turban          |
| khàngcèt               | pho`izóm             | shoti           |
| khudá                  | phidá                | seat            |
| khùdóng                | hi`dàkpù             | hukáñ pipe      |
| no`mkhàng              | innaphí              | shawl           |
| phanno khùzái          | khùzái               | jug             |
| so`nggái               | yùm                  | house           |
| wáohò`uso`ng           | càkso`ng             | kitchen         |

khùdádó lèngsi`nbi`yù-please take your seat  
 khùdóng phànbi`yù-please smoke  
 wánhò`usò ngdò oígyáno lùk hò`urí-the Brahmin is preparing  
 the meal in the kitchen of the deity

Some honorific nouns used with reference to the king and members of his family are formed by prefixing *sonà*-gold to a few nouns.

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>sonà búddi</i> -consideration | <i>sonà mi`tyéng</i> -supervision |
| <i>sonà hò`káng</i> -body        | <i>sonà tho`ugo`n</i> -attendance |
| <i>sonà kónúng</i> -royal palace | <i>sonà yátho`ng</i> -orders      |

Some honorific nouns are used with reference to the three persons.

| <i>honorific forms</i> | <i>general forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| omángbò                | thi`                 | dung            |
| omángsò`ng             | thi`gómso`ng         | latrine         |
| owàphò`m               | kò`isúmsò`ng         | jail            |
| hò`kkí i`sìng          | yúng                 | urine           |
| mòpùro`ibò             | mowà                 | husband         |
| tállò`i, EM            | mòtù                 | wife            |
| yùmlò`imò              | hò`udóng             | cat             |

Some honorific nouns distinguish male and female by using *i`bùngó*, male and *i`bèmo*, female after such nouns.

| <i>masculine</i>                  | <i>feminine</i>             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| bámón i`bùngó-a Brahmin gentleman | bámón i`cèmo-a Brahman lady |
| mòcà i`bùngó-son                  | mòcà i`bèmo-daughter        |
| mòsù i`bùngó-grand son            | mòsù i`bèmo-grand daughter  |
| sonà i`bùngó a Rajkumar           | sonà i`bèmo a Rajkumari     |

#### 4. 1. 1. 2. 4. 2 Complex Compound Nouns

Complex compound nouns may be divided into the three groups viz, (a) suffix compound nouns, (b) Reduplicated compound nouns and (c) heterogeneous compound nouns.

##### 1 Suffixed Compound Nouns

Suffixed compound nouns consist of two nominal/primitive stems with *- /mò*, prefix.

## (a) N+N

mœi'n mœnào-children of  
the same parents  
mœh'o'i mœróng-corn

mœrù mœràng-spices  
mœro'i mœnào-dependents

## (b) V+V

œœ'u œsáng-high officials  
œci'k œsá-weather  
œh'o'i œsì'ng-expert  
œtón œtáng-last son

œthúm'pháo-sweet meat  
mœh'o'i mœsìng-education  
mœkh'o'n mœthén-variety  
mœœo'ng mœpàk-discipline

## 2 Reduplicated Compound Nouns

Reduplicated compound nouns may be classified into the two types viz., (a) preduplicated and (b) post-duplicated.

## 2 (1) Preduplicated Compound Nouns

First and third syllables of the preduplicated compound nouns are represented by a single nominal. The second and fourth syllables of such nouns are two different nominal/primary stems:

i'wái i'nín, impact  
káirén káizáo-a kind of coffin  
lœ'nlá lœ'ngzi'n-clue  
mi'ro'n mi'ri'-consciousness  
pœrœ'm pœmi't-plan  
sœri't sœràk-art of wrestling

## 2 (2) Post-duplicated Compound Nouns

First and third syllables of the post-duplicated compound nouns are two different nominal stems. The second and fourth syllables of such nouns are represented by a single nominal/primary stem.

## (a) Second and fourth syllables represented by a single nominal stem

cårón sùrón-posterities  
pànnào sîngnào-offsprings  
pàri' pùri'-pedigree  
sàmœrœ'k ngàmœrœ'k-hybrids



- (b) Second and fourth syllables represented by a single primary stem.

càyo`k nàoyo`k-upbringing  
 cì`nlán khàrán-slip of tongue  
 ko`k:hò`n láihò`n-eldest son  
 mì`cò`ng mì`khài-partiality  
 sènzà thúmzà-bribery  
 tho`umú nàomú-contemporary  
 tho`ksi` khási`-discipline  
 yónglò`i ménlò`i-partiality

### 3 Heterogeneous Compound Nouns

All the syllables of the heterogenous compound nouns are different stems.

ohò`n lomò`n-elders  
 ko`iro`i lo`i`kái-neighbours  
 láí:gú`rú-superiors  
 mì`cò`ng sò`nggò`n-partiality  
 prò`mán pánthò`i-sarcasm  
 phò`tto` háodì`-rubbishes

### 4 Complex Compound Nouns with the auxiliary verbs

Some complex compound nouns occur with the conjugated forms of the three auxiliary verbs viz., náí, sá and to`u for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

#### (a) náí

oróí okhò`m náidè-there is no end of it  
 othói ohén náidè-there is no surplus  
 mì`cò`ng mì`khài/mì`cò`ng sè`nggò`n/yónglò`i ménlò`i náí-he is partial  
 mocò`ng mopàk/thò`ksi` khási` náidè-there is no discipline

#### (b) sá

ohò`i opá/ohò`i osíng/owók opá/hò`ncò`k ngàcò`k/khàbò`i sàré-there has been undue interference  
 úzár mélá sàré-it has been complete chaos  
 wàrí` wà`ái sàré they have entered into conversation

## (c) to'u

owók ɔ́thóng to'urè-he bandies words with another person  
 cáttú kááro'n/pho'íréng túréng to'urè-he has mismanaged  
 kíthí kírúm to'urè-he has been timid  
 pró'mán pánthò'ì to'uwí'-he speaks in sarcasm

## 5 Onomatopoetic Compound Nouns

Onomatopoetic compound nouns are the extensions of the simple compound nouns with the addition of the echo words. They thus express the meanings of these simple compound nouns with the emphasis imparted by the echo words. Onomatopoetic compound nouns take three forms viz, (a) preduplicated, (b) post duplicated forms and (c) heterogeneous forms.

## (a) preduplicated forms

láirí'k>láirí'k láisù-book  
 pho'dí'>pho'dí' pho'á rags  
 phági>phági phàráng-joke

## (b) post duplicated forms

corú>corú wáirú straw  
 sorú>sorú ngàrú-bone  
 sínglì'>sínglì' náorì'-nerve

## (c) heterogeneous forms

khóngbán>khóngbán lùkláng-ditch  
 sùmàng>sùmàng thélóng-courtyard  
 thobo'k>thobo k ì'nhàng-work

## 4. 1. 1. 2. 5 Verbal Nouns

Verbal Nouns are primary suffixed nouns. They are derived from the roots of the functive and stative verbs by adding to such roots po, marker of infinitive.

## (a) Functive Verbal Forms

íbono mí'bú mápùng pháho'ní'-writing makes a man perfect  
 pábono mí'bú sínghe'nhí'-reading makes a man wise  
 tumbono hó'káng pháho'ní'-sleeping promotes health

## (b) Stative Verbal Forms

pə'ngbodi' kórémno'-foolishness is mocked at

phəzəbodi` si`ngtháno`i-beauty is praised  
səbobo mɔhàkki yèknoboni`-anger is his enemy

1 (2) Verbal Nouns in pə with -ə

Some Verbal Nouns in pə take -ə, primary prefix.

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

opə`nbə sɔng əsi` lə`utho`kkədo`uboni`-these obstacles must  
be removed

orəngbəsɔng əsi` cúmtho`ksi`-let us correct these mistakes

əməngbədəgi ətəngbədə-from loss to gain

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

əcúmbə ngəngsi`-let us speak the truth

əwəbəsɔng əsi` məiyo`knəbə tá:i`-you have to face these  
sorrows

əwətpəsɔng əsi` mənkhə`tsənu`-let them make up these diffi-  
ciencies

A few verbal nouns in pə may occur with or without -ə,  
primary prefix.

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

əhə`ubədə/hə`ubədə-in the beginning

əro`ibədə/lə`ibədə-at the end

əməngbədəgi/məngbədəgi-from the loss

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

əkhəbədəgi-from bitterness

əmə`mbədəgi-out of darkness

əthúmbədəgi-out of sweatness

1 (3) Verbal Nouns in pə with nominal adjuncts

Verbal nouns in pə may occur with the nominal  
adjuncts

(a) Functive Verbal Forms

lɪhás pəbə yámno núngái-reading of history is very interes-  
ting

sə`iréng lɔ mətə`m yámno co`ngi`-writing poems takes a  
long time

sɪdro thɪbodi` yámno lài-to find fault is very easy

(b) Stative Verbal Forms

nà pò'ngbodi` láiyén'bo ngo'mgani`-deafness can be cured  
 pùk'cén séngbodi` lo'isi` lo'itho nno'i-honesty is praised  
 tho'unà phobodi` i'kai khúmno'i-bravery is respected

2 Verbal Nouns used as subjective complements

2 (1/i) Verbal Nouns in pò/pi` as subjective complements

Verbal Nouns in pò, marker of infinitive and pi`, female marker function as the subjective complements. In such case, these verbal nouns take the markers of the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses and occur with (a) odu, that and (b) any one of the three auxiliary verbs viz , ni` óirè and lá. The subjects of such auxiliary verbs are defined by o'si, this/these. The verbal nouns in pi` are used as the complements to the subjects in the feminine gender.

(a) Verbal Nouns in pò as subjective complements

cithi o'si` ho'uzi`k pho'ngbo odu ni`/óirè-this letter is the one that is received now  
 nupà o'si` ngoràng láklo'mbo odu ni`/óirè-this man is the one who came yesterday  
 yo'tpàk o'si` ngoràng pi`ro'mbo odu ni`/óirè this spade is the one that was given yesterday  
 lo'ipàn o'si` ningtho'mthádo ko'ngbo odu rá-is this flower plant the one that is dry in the winter  
 nupà o'si` ngàoro'mbo odu rá-is this man the one who was mad

(b) Verbal Nouns in pi` as subjective compliments

nupi` o'si` ho'uzi`k i so'i so'kpi` odu ni`/óirè-this woman is the one who sings the song now  
 nupi'mocá o'si` ngoràng láklo'mbi` odu ni`/óirè-this girl is the one who came yesterday  
 lúkhra'bi` o'si` láiro'bi` odu rá-is this widow is the one who is poor  
 honù'bi` o'si` ngoràng sáoro'mbi` odu rá-is-this old woman is the one who was angry yesterday.

## 2 (2) Verbal Nouns in pɔ/pi` with -ɔ as subjective complements.

Verbal nouns in pɔ/pi` used as subjective complements may take -ɔ, primary prefix. In such case, the verbal nouns in pi` are derived only from the roots of the stative verbs.

### (a) Verbal Nouns in pɔ with -ɔ

phl'osi` ɔpho` pɔ ɔdù nɪ`/óirè-this cloth is the one that is stitched

yérù'm ɔsi` ɔphùtpɔ ɔ ù nɪ`/óirè-this egg is the one that is boiled

lɔ'i ɔsi` ɔngàngbɔ ɔdù rá-is this flower the one that is red

ngà ɔsi` ɔpùmbɔ ɔdù rá-is this fish the one that is rotten

### (b) Verbal Nouns in pi` with -ɔ

lúkhrábi` ɔsi` ɔri`kpi` ɔdù nɪ`/óirè this widow is the one that is miserly

nùpi` ɔsi` ɔngàobi` ɔdù rá-is this woman the one who is mad

ɔdù, 'that' following the Verbal Nouns in pɔ/pi` with -ɔ may be dropped. ɔsi`, this defining the subjects may remain or be replaced by ɔdù, that.

### (a) Verbal Nouns in pɔ with -ɔ

ɔphù ɔsi`/ɔdù ɔkàibɔ nɪ`/óirè-this/that pitcher is the one that is broken

cè ɔsi`/ɔdù ɔngàngbɔ rá-is this/that paper the one that is red

### (b) Verbal Nouns in pi` with -ɔ

lɔ'ísábi` ɔsi`/ɔdù ɔngàobi` nɪ`/óirè this/that girl is the one who is mad

nùpi` ɔsi`/ɔdù ɔpɔ`ngbi` rá-is this woman the one who is foolish

## 2 (3) Replacement of ɔdù by zát

ɔdù, "that" following the verbal nouns in pɔ may be replaced by zát, kind.

nùpà ɔsi` ngoràng láklo`mbɔ ɔdù/zát nɪ`/óirè-this man is the one who came yesterday

núpá csi` ngàoro`mba cdu`zàt lá is this man the one who  
was mad

### 3 Verbal Nouns used as objective complements

Verbal Nouns in *pə* may function as the objective complements occurring with the nominal adjuncts.

bírénnə láiri`k pábo mádhə`pno úzi`-Madhop sees Biren reading a book

bínóyno c`nk hə`tpə syámno yénglə`mi`-Syam watched Binoy working out the sum

gópálnə mùrùm mùrùm sònbo debénno táro`mi`-Deben heard Gopal murmuring something

### 4. 1. 1. 3 Coordinated Nouns

#### 4. 1. 1. 3. 1 Coordination of Nouns without case markers

A nominal phrase may consist of two or more nouns in coordination.

Most of the conjunctions are used before the last noun.

cə əməsəng kólóm-paper and pen

thəng nəttə`go tá sword or spear

Some conjunctions are repeated after every coordinated nouns.

hə`inə lə`inə-fruit as well as flower

o`k:o yén:o-pig and hen

#### 4. 1. 1. 3. 2 Coordination of Nouns with the case markers

When nouns with the case markers are joined by the conjunctions, the case markers are generally used after the last noun.

debén nəttə`go dāmúgídəmə`k-for Deben or Damu

həwái, thə əməsəng thúmgi məmə`n-the prices of pulse, oil and salt

módhú nəttə`go syámdogi-from Modhu or Syam

Case markers may be used after all the coordinated nouns when emphasis is intended.

gópáldogi nəttə`go syámdogi from Gopal or Syam

When the nouns in coordination are defined and followed by the demonstrative adjectives, the case marker are used after the demonstrative adjectives

maccà, mawù amasùng mawùpsingdogi-son, grandson, friend—  
from these

to, locative and togi, ablative are used after all the singular personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns in coordination.

mango`ndogi nattro`ga to`ingo`ndogi-from him or me  
masi`do nattro`ga madùda-to this or that

#### 4 1. 1 4 Nouns with Adjuncts

##### 1 Verbal Qualifiers as Adjuncts

One or more verbal qualifiers can be used with a noun. In such case, these qualifiers precede the nouns.

amù`ab`ba h`in`u-ripe mango  
ocw`ub`ba amù`ab`ba h`in`u-big ripe mango

Verbal Qualifiers can be coordinated by using amasùng, "and".

ocw`ub`ba amasùng amù`ab`ba h`in`u-big and ripe mango

Some verbal qualifiers in pi`, female marker follow the qualified nouns.

maccè o`o`nbi`-his idle (elder) sister  
so`n ongàngbi` red cow  
yén amúbi`-black hen

Verbal Qualifiers may have adverbs preceding them.

khaw mo`tp`a phi-less dirty cloth  
yámno sángba tho`uri-very long rope

##### 2 Demonstrative Adjectives as the Adjuncts

Demonstrative adjectives are used as the attributives of the nouns. They follow the qualified nouns.

h`i odù-that fruit  
lo`i osi-this flower

When there are the demonstrative adjectives and verbal qualifiers, the qualified nouns are preceded by the qualifiers and followed by the adjectives.

omúnbo ho'i odù  
 ripe fruit that  
 "that ripe fruit?"  
 ongàngbo lá'i osi  
 red flower this  
 "this red flower"

### 3 Numerals as the Adjuncts

#### 3 (1) Cardinals Numerals as Adjuncts

Cardinal numerals follow the qualified nouns,

mi` mori`  
 person four  
 "four persons"  
 o`k mongà  
 pig five  
 "five pigs"

When there are cardinal numeral and verbal qualifier, the qualified noun is preceded by the qualifier and followed by the numeral:

oka`nbo mi` mori`  
 strong person four  
 "four strong persons"  
 oco`ubo o`k mongà  
 big pig five  
 "five big pigs"

When there are cardinal numeral, verbal qualifier and demonstrative adjective, the qualified noun is preceded by the verbal qualifier and followed by the numeral and the adjective.

oka`nbo mi` mori` odù  
 strong person four those  
 "those four strong persons"  
 oco`ubo o`k mongà osi`  
 big pig five these  
 "these five big pigs"



### 3 (2) Ordinal Numerals as the Adjuncts

Ordinal numerals precede the qualified nouns.

mori'súbo ká  
fourth room  
"the fourth room"  
mangásúbo láiri'k  
fifth book  
"the fifth book"

When there are ordinal numeral and verbal qualifier, the numeral may precede or follow the qualifiers.

mori'súbo oco'ubo ká  
fourth big room  
oco'ubo mori'súbo ká  
big fourth room  
"the fourth big room"

When there are ordinal numeral, verbal qualifier and demonstrative adjective, the qualified noun is preceded by the numeral and qualifier and followed by the adjective.

mori'súbo oco'ubo ká odu  
fourth big room that  
"that fourth big room"  
mangásúbo oho'nbo láiri'k ool  
fifth new book this  
"this fifth new book"

### 4 Possessive nouns or pronouns as Adjuncts.

Possessive nouns or pronouns (noun or pronoun with *ki*, genitive) can be used as adjuncts to the nouns.

núpamocági láiri'k-the boy's book  
núpi' mocági gho'ri-the girl's watch

When the possessed nouns have verbal qualifiers, such qualifiers follow *ki*, genitive and precede the qualified nouns.

núpamocági omo'nbo láiri'k-the old book of the boy  
núpi'mocági oho'nbo gho'ri-the new watch of the girl

When there are more than one possessive noun as adjuncts to the nominal (possessed noun) and such nouns are coordinated with *omosung*, "and", then *ki*, genitive is used with the last noun.

*hùì omosung ho'udónggi moyá*-the teeth of the dog and the cat

*ùì omosung wagi monàsing*-leaves of trees and bamboos

#### 4. 1. 2 VERBAL PHRASE

(Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms have been covered in the Morphology. They are not dealt with in the present Chapter. But when a reference is made to a verb, it includes tense, aspect and form. Verbs with the markers of tense, aspect and form are considered as single entity.)

A verbal phrase may consist of the following types of verbs.—

- (a) sub-syllabic verbs
- (b) monosyllabic verbs
- (c) infixed verbs
- (d) compound verbs
- (e) verbal compounds

*Examples :—*

- (a) *birénno írí*-Biren is writing
- (b) *gópáino kho`nli`*-Gopal thinks
- (c) *mokho`ino kho`nnorí*-they are considering
- (d) *madho`pno ni`ngzing mǎngzinguo`i*-Madhop hesitates
- (e) *módhú cǎ`rpo yási`*-Modhu may go

##### 4. 1. 2. 1. 1 *Sub-syllabic Verbs*

Sub-syllabic Verbs express all the aspects of the tense and tense forms

Sub-syllabic Verbs may be vowels (monophthongs).

*irè*-we/you/they have written

*orè*-we/you/they have vomitted

*úrè*-we/you/they have seen

Subsyllabic verbs may be diphthongs.

óiro'mĩ, was ; bírén ózá óiro'mĩ-Biren was a teacher  
 úiro'mĩ-was half asleep ; gópáldĩ klo'sto úiro'mĩ-Gopal  
 was half asleep in the class.

#### 4. 1. 2. 1. 2 *Monosyllabic Verbs*

Monosyllabic verbs form the overwhelming majority of the Manipuri verbs. They express all the tenses and tense forms.

In CV Type of the monosyllabic verbs, V may be a vowel (monophthong).

párè-we/you/they have read  
 pí'rè-we/you/they have given  
 pé'rè-we/you/they have sobbed  
 po'rè-we/you/they have suffered defeat in the game  
 pù'rè we/you/they have borrowed

In CV type of the monosyllabic verbs, V may be a diphthong.

lo'ro'mĩ-we/you/they bought  
 lo'uro'mĩ-we/you/they took  
 làiro'mĩ-it was easy  
 láoro'mĩ-we/you/they shouted  
 loíromĩ, it ended

In CVC type of the monosyllabic verbs, V is a vowel (monophthong).

lo'nglè-we/you/they have thrown  
 lànglè-we/you/they have made noise  
 línglè-we/you/they have established  
 lènglè-we/you/they have moved  
 lo'tlè-we/you/they have concealed  
 lùplè-it has sunk

Monosyllabic verbs have been shown in illustrating the features of the tenses and tense forms.

4. 1. 2. 1. 3 *Infixes Verbs*

1 ho't, kài, nò, and thi`

Infixes verbs consist of a monosyllabic verb and one of the primary infixes viz, ho't, kài, nò and thi`.

(a) ho't

súmho'tlò'mi`-it captivated  
túho'tlò'mi`-we/you/they suppressed

(b) kài

ni`ngkhàiro'mi`-it crumbled  
thúgàiro'mi`-we/you/they broke  
yò'ikhàiro'mi`-we/you/they obstructed

(c) nò

cò'tnòrò'mi`-it was in vogue  
cánnòrò'mi`-we/you/they were intimate  
cìngnòrò'mi`-we/you/they doubted  
hò'tnòrò'mi`-we/you/they tried

2 ci'n, kò't, to'k and tho used as primary infixes

The four relational words viz., ci'n, in, to'k, out, kò't, on and tho, below function as the word forming infixes forming the obligatory components of some infixed verbs.

(c) ci'n

cò'ngsi'nò'mi`-we/you, they advanced  
cèksi'nò'mi`-we/you/they were carefull  
insì'nò'mi`-we/you/they instigated  
sì'zi'nnòrò'mi`-we/you/they used

(b) kò't

cùkhò'tlò'mi`-we/you/they lighted (the lamp)  
ménkò'tlò'mi`-we/you/they made up  
pákò'tlò'mi`-we/you/they were nervous  
thò'ugò'tlò'mi`-we/you/they encouraged

(c) to'k

cáotho'kò'mi`-we/you/they were proud  
láotho'kò'mi`-we/you/they announced

sɔ̀ndo'klo'mi'-we/you/they propagated

ɔ̀o'itho'klo'mi'-we/you/they postponed

(d) tho

co'kthoro'mi'-we/you/they were tired

no'mthoro'mi'-we/you/they suppressed

so'tthoro'mi'-we/you/they lagged behind

wánthoro'mi'-we/you/they fainted

#### 4. 1. 2. 1. 4 *Compound Verbs*

Compound Verbs may be divided into two sub-classes viz., (a) simple compound verbs and (b) complex compound verbs.

##### 4. 1. 2. 1. 4. 1 *Simple Compound Verbs*

Simple Compound Verbs may be grouped into the two types viz., (a) simple primary compound verbs and (b) simple secondary compound verbs.

##### 1 Simple Primary Compound Verbs

Simple primary compound verbs consist of two monosyllabic verbs. The first of such verbs remain in the root form and the second one is conjugated.

ho'i sɔ̀ng'o'mi'-he was skillful

ko'nlo'kio'mi'-he was jealous

màngtá'klo'mi'-it was ruined

ngàksénlo'mi'-he guarded

si'nlá'nglo'mi'-he managed

sèmsá'ro'mi'-he prepared

##### Simple Secondary Compound Verbs

Simple secondary compound verbs consist of a nominal stem and monosyllabic verb.

ho'áo'ro'mi'-he was jovial

i'ró'ro'mi'-he swam

khó'dá'ro'mi'-he liked

khó'rá'nglo'mi'-he was anxious

mí'ho'ú'ro'mi'-he was jealous

mí'rónló'mi'-she was pregnant  
 wàró'kló'mi'-he exercised control and supervision  
 wàso'kló'mli'-he swore

## 2 (2) Honorific Verbs

Honorific verbs are simple secondary compound verbs. They express honorific implications.

| <i>honorific forms</i> | <i>general forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>              |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| ongàng ú'no'bo         | mocà po'kpo          | deliver a child              |
| owàpho'm cò'ngbo       | phádo'k tábo         | suffer a prison term         |
| càkhúm tao'kpo         | thá mángbo           | be in the mensuration period |
| ci'nphén pho'bo        | ci'n thi'bo          | be sharpened tongued         |
| ci'n séngbo            | yá thínbo            | brush the teeth              |
| khùtsàngbo             | hùrà'no              | steal                        |
| khwágo'k hánbo         | sén pí'zobo          | give bribe                   |
| lùk ho'ubo             | càk thóngbo          | prepare meal                 |
| lùk hábo               | càk càbo             | take meal                    |
| mòbùk cáobo            | thi'bo'ng láobo      | be a glutton                 |
| mò'nùng cò'ngbo        | thi' phàibo          | defecate                     |
| mopán tho'kpo          | yúng hànbo           | urinate                      |
| mí'tyéng tábo          | yéngbo               | see                          |
| ná tàthi'bo            | nà po'ngbo           | deaf                         |
| nónggàbo               | sibo                 | die                          |
| phi tho'no             | phi inbo             | wear cloth                   |
| wà ho'nggo'tpo         | páo to'mbo           | report a matter              |
| yùm pánbo              | yùm ná.bo            | lead a married life          |

### 4. 1. 2. 1. 4 Complex Compound Verbs

Complex compound verbs may be divided into two types viz., (a) Complex suffixed compound verbs and (b) Complex reduplicated compound verbs.

#### 4. 1. 2. 1. 4. 1 Complex Suffixed Compound Verbs

Complex suffixed compound Verbs consist of two monosyllabic verbs affixed with a single or two primary prefixes.

otàk ophóngnòrè-it has become an open secret  
 cowo't codo'ínorè it has been in a mess  
 coràm codo'ínorè-he has been tired due to hunger  
 móríng móránglè-it has been odd  
 mosén móránglè-it has been hazy  
 moyán túyánnorè-it has been mixed up  
 tɔrɔ't khodánorè-they have been intimate

#### 4. 1. 2. 4. 2 *Complex Reduplicated compound verbs*

Complex reduplicated compound verbs may be classified into two groups viz., (a) preduplicated and (b) post-duplicated.

##### 1 Complex Preduplicated Compound Verbs

First and third syllables of the complex preduplicated compound verbs are represented by a single nominal/primary stem. The second and fourth syllables of such verbs are two different primary stems.

Preduplicated compound verbs may be subdivided into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

##### (a) Preduplicated Primary Compound Verbs

hámcɔ't hánbóíɔrɔ'mi'-it was devoid of any substance  
 kíthi' kíru'mɔ'mi'-he was timid  
 khoyàk khózúmɔrɔ'mi'-it had an unpleasant taste  
 lo'nzà lo'ntùpɔrɔ'mi'-he had mental reservation  
 nò'mzà nò'mthèkɔrɔ'mi'-he resorted to unreasonable imposition  
 pi'zɔ pi'ho'klo'mi'-he entertained (some one with food)

##### (b) Preduplicated Secondary Compound Verbs

ho'izi't ho'igàínorɔ'mi'-it was stunted  
 lo'isi' lo'ítho'nlo'mi'-he praised  
 lo'mkèt lo'mháíro'mi'-he was obstinate  
 mi'thói mi'hénlo'mi'-he was a genius

##### 2 Complex Postduplicated Compound Verbs

First and third syllables of the complex postduplicated compound verbs are two different nominal/primary stems. The second and fourth syllables of such verbs are represented by a

single primary stem. Postduplicated compound may be subdivided into two types viz., (a) primary and (b) secondary.

(a) Postduplicated Primary Compound Verbs

cì'tcà pòizànòrò'mì'-it did not serve purpose  
pò'ngdái súdàinòrò'mì'-he was dull headed  
pómthà hò'ìthànòrò'mì'-it was flabby  
sírúm nárúmlò'mì'-he was sickly

(b) Postduplicated Secondary Compound Verbs

cì'ndá páodánòrò'mì'-he bandied words (with some one)  
khùtkò'n pánggò'nlo'mì'-he was powerfull  
ni'ngzíng màngzíngnòrò'mì'-he hesitated  
pùkmén páómé'álò'mì'-he consoled  
pì'dò't pàdò'tlò'mì'-he was an orphan  
pì'bò'n pàbò'nlo'mì'-he reproached  
tì'nzén làicén'ò'mì'-he suffered from a chronic disease

3 Pre/postduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

Preduplicated compound verbs and postduplicated compound verbs may express negation occurring with the negative forms of to'u, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, these verbs remain in the infinitive forms with pò.

(a) Preduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

kìthì' kírúmbò to'udè he is not timid  
lò'mkèt lò'mháibo to'udè-he is not obstinate

(b) Postduplicated Compound Verbs with to'u

ni'ngzíng màngzíngnòrò bò to'udè-he does not hesitate  
sírúm nárúmbò to'udè-he does not suffer any chronic disease

4 Onomatopoeic Compound Verbs

Onomatopoeic compound verbs are the extensions of the simple compound verbs with the addition of an echo word. They thus express the meanings of the simple compound verbs with the emphasis imparted by the echo words. Onomatopoeic compound verbs take three forms viz., (a) preduplicated forms, (b) postduplicated forms and (c) heterogeneous forms.



## (a) Preduplicated Forms

| <i>compound forms</i> | <i>preduplicated forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| ko'nlo'kpo            | ko'nlo'k ko'nzáobo         | jealous         |
| korémnobo             | korém kotháinobo           | mock at         |
| kho'iràngbo           | kho'iràng kho'isáobo       | anxious         |
| wàno'mbo              | wàco't wàno'mbo            | canvass         |
| wàro'kpo              | wàro'k wàtèmbò             | take due care   |

## (b) Post duplicated Forms

| <i>compound forms</i> | <i>postduplicated forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| càk cà:nobo           | càkca hò'izànobò            | organise a feast |
| mi't s'ingbo          | mi'tsing ná'singbo          | vigilant         |
| tho'u wóidobo         | tho'uwói wàwóidobò          | indifferent      |
| tho'ibo               | tho'ico't wá gco'tnobò      | arrogant         |
| wàro'ubo              | wàro'upùklo'ubò             | offend           |

## (c) Heterogeneous forms

| <i>compound verbs</i> | <i>Heterogeneous forms</i> | <i>meanings</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| hóráobo               | hóráo toyámbo              | juvilant        |
| ì'ràtpo               | ì'ràt tho'unibo            | worship         |
| khùrúmbò              | khùrúm kházo'ngbo          | bow down        |
| lò'nlo'nbo            | lòlo'n i'ti'kpo            | carry on trade  |
| lúhò'ngbo             | lúhò'ng kho'ngdóngbo       | marry           |

## 4. 1. 2. 1. 5 Verbal Compounds

Verbal compounds consist of a main verb and an auxiliary verb. They have been shown in illustrating the features of the tense forms.

lbo ngo'mgoni'-we/you/they can write

ménkho'tpo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/they could have made up

moring morángbo yá:i'-it may be odd

ni'ngzing mǎngzingnopho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they should hesitate

#### 4. 1. 2. 2 *Persons, Negation and Interrogation of the Verbs*

Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms express the four features viz , (a) honorific persons, (b) negation (c) interrogation and (e) causation taking the markers of such features. Markers of the four features are shown below :—

##### 1 Markers of the Honorific Persons

cɔ, marker of the honorific first person

pi, marker of the honorific second and third persons

##### 2 Markers of Negation

kɔ̀nɔ̀, lóí and tɔ are the markers of negation

##### 3 Markers of Interrogation

lá, marker of general interrogation expressed in the interrogative sentences not defined by the interrogative words like who, which, why etc.

Kè, marker of qualified interrogation expressed in the interrogative sentences defined by the interrogative words.

##### 4 Marker of Causation

hɔ̀n is the marker of causation.

#### 4. 1. 2. 2. 1 *Verbs in the tenses and tense forms expressing Persons Negation etc.*

##### 1 Verbs in the Present and Past Tenses

###### 1(1/1) cɔ/pi, Honorific Person

cɔ, honorific first person and pi, honorific second/third person precede the markers of tenses in the verbs in the present and past tenses,

*verbs in cɔ*

pázɔ̀rè—we have read

pázɔ̀rɔ̀mlè—we had read

o`i láiri`k odu pázɔ̀rè—I have read that book

o`ino bírénbú pángzɔ̀rɔ̀mì—I helped Biren

odo`mno bínoy`bú yo`kpi`íí—you are looking after Binoy

bímó`ino gópálbú kɔ̀nb,`rɔ̀mì-Bimol saved Gopal

*verbs in pi*

pábi`rè-you/they have read

pábi`rɔ̀mlè-you/they had read

1 (1/2) *tɔ*, negation

*tɔ*, marker of negation follows the markers of the tenses in the verbs in the present and past tenses.

*general forms*

*párè-we/you/they* have read  
*párc'mlè-we/you/they* had read

*negative forms*

*pádrè-we/you/they* have not read  
*párc'mdrè-we/you/they* had not read

*gópál párá pádrì* Gopal is not reading his lesson

*módhúnc sén odù pí'rc'mdrì* Modhu was not giving that money

1 (1/3) *cɔ/pì*, person + *tɔ*, negation

Negative verbs in the present and past tenses may take *cɔ/pì*, honorific person.

(a) *cɔ* + *tɔ*

*izadrè-we* have not written  
*izarc'mdrè-we* had not written

(b) *pì* + *tɔ*

*ibi'drè-you/they* have not written  
*ibi'rc'mdrè-you/they* had not written  
*oi'di' odo'mbú káozaðè* I do not forget you  
*oi'kho'inc thobok odù sùzarc'mdrè-we* had not done that work  
*odo'mnc birémbú pángbi'dè-you* do not help Biren  
*gópólno syámbú ngáibi'rc'mdè* Gopal did not wait for Syam

1 (2/1) *lá/kè*, interrogation

*lá*, general interrogation and *kè*, qualified interrogation change the verbs in the present and past tenses into the infinitive forms with *pɔ*, marker of infinitive. In such case, *pɔ*, infinitive precedes *lá/kè*, interrogation.

*general forms*

*pári-we/you/they* are reading

*párc'mli-we/you/they* were reading ?

*interrogative forms*

*páriborá* are we/you/they reading ?  
*páribogè-why* are we/you/they reading ?

*párc'mliborá* were we/you/they reading ?  
*párc'mlibogè-why* were we/you/they reading ?

*interrogative forms in la'*

páriborá—are we/you/they reading ?

páro'mliborá were we/you/they reading ?

*interrogative forms in kè*

páribogè—why are we/you/they reading ?

páro'mlibogè why were we/you/they reading ?

bíren thobò'k sùriborá—is Biren doing the work ?

bínóyño gópálbú pánglo'mborá did Binny help Gopal ?

bímólnò korígí módhù kóúribogè—why is Bimol calling Mohu ?

dét énnò korígí mádhò'pto sén pí'ro'mlibogè—why was Eben giving the money to Madhop ?

**1 (3/2) Interrogative Verbs in the present and past tenses with pí', to**

Interrogative verbs in the present and past tenses may take the following markers :—

(a) pí', honorific second/third person

(b) to, negation

(c) pí', honorific second/third person + to, negation

*Examples :—*

**Forms in lá**

ibi'riborá are you/they writing ?

idriborá—are not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'driborá are not you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mliborá—were you/they writing ?

iro'mdriborá—were not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'm riborá—were not you/they writing ?

**Forms in kè**

ibi'ribogè—why are you/they writing ?

idribogè—why are not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'dribogè—why are not you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mlibogè—why were you/they writing ?

iro'mdribogè—why were not we/you/they writing ?

ibi'ro'mdribogè—why were not you/they writing ?

2 Verbs in *kodo'u*, shall/will, *kodo'u*, must and *kodo'u*-going to do  
 2 {1/1} *co/pi'*, honorific person

*co*, honorific first person and *pi'*, honorific second/third person occur with the three types of verbs viz., (a) verbs in *kodo'u*, shall/will, (b) verbs in *kodo'u* must and verbs in *kodo'u*, going to do.

*co/pi'* precedes the following markers in the three types of the verbs:—

- (a) markers of the aspects in the verbs in *kodo'u*, shall/will and *kodo'u*, must
- (b) markers of tense form in the verbs in *kodo'u*, going to do.

*Examples :—*

Forms in *co*

*izoro'mgoni'*-we will have written

*izoro'mgodo'uboni'*- we must have written

*izogodo'uri* we are going to write

Forms in *pi'*

*ibi'ro'mgoni'*-you/they will have written

*ibi'ro'mgodo'uboni'*- you / they must have written

*ibi'godo'uri*-they are going to write

*o'i hoyeng co'tcogoni'*-I shall go tomorrow

*o'ino birénbú ngáizoro'mgodo'uboni'*-I must have waited for Biren

*o'ikho'ino lo'u odú yóuzogodo'uri*-we are going to sell that paddy land

*odo'mno binóybú pángbi'ro'mgoni'*-you will have helped Binoy

*odo'mno thobo'k odú sùbi'khi'godo'uboni'*-you must be doing that work

*gópáino bímolbú thinbi'godo'uri*-Gopal is going to escort Bimol

2 {1/2} *lá/kè*, interrogation

*lá*, general interrogation and *kè*, qualified interrogation change *kodo'u*, shall/will into *kodo*.

*lá/kè* changes the verbs in *kodo'u*, must and *kodo'u*, going to do into the infinitive forms with *pa*, marker of infinitive.

In such case, *po* precedes *lá/kè* and *kodo'u*, must in the aspects other than the indefinite is followed by *li* emphasiser occurring with *kè*.

*general forms*

*iro'mgoni'-we/you/they* will have written

*iro'mgodo'uboni'-we/you/they* must have written

*igodo'uri-we/you/they* are going to write

*interrogative forms*

*iro'mgodorá-will we/you/they* have written ?

*iro'mgodogè-why we/you/they* have written ?

*iro'mgodo'uborá-must we/you/they* have written ?

*iro'mgodo'uribogè-why must we/you/they* have written ?

*igodo'uriborá-are we/you/they* going to write ?

*igodo'uribogè-why are we/you/they* going to write ?

*Interrogative forms  
in la'*

*iro'mgodorá-will we/you/they* have written ?

*iro'mgodo'uborá-must we/you/they* have written ?

*igodo'uriborá-are we/you/they* going to write ?

*Interrogative forms  
in ké'*

*iro'mgodogè-why will we/you/they* have written ?

*iro'mgodo'uribogè-why must we/you/they* have written ?

*igodo'uribogè-why are we/you/they* going to write ?

*birénno syámbú pánglo'mgodorá-Will Birren* have helped Syam ?

*bínóyno thobo'k odù sùro'mgodo'uborá Must Binoy* have done that work ?

*bímólno láiri'k odù págodo'uriborá-Are Bimol* going to read that book ?

*débénno korígí súnílbú ngáikhi'godogè-Why shall Deben* be waiting for Sunil ?

*dórénno korígí módhúbú thínlo'mgodo'uribogè-Why must Doren* have escorted Modhu ?

*gópálnno korígí gho'rí yón:godo'uribogè-Why is Gopal* going to sell the watch ?

## 2 (1/3) Interrogative verbs in 'shall (will)'/ 'must' and 'going to do' with 'pi'

pi` honorific second/third person may occur with the interrogative verbs in kodo'u, shall/will, kodo'u, must and kodo'u, going to do.

### (a) Forms in pi`+lá

ibi`ro`mgodará-will you/they have written ?

ibi`ro`mgodo`uborá-must you/they have written ?

ibi`godo`uriborá-are you/they going to write ?

### (b) Forms in pi`+kè

ibi`ro`mgodogè-why will you/they have written ?

ibi`ro`mgodo`uribogè-why must you/they have written ?

ibi`godo`uribogè-why are you/they going to write ?

## 2 (2/1) lói, negation

lói, marker of negation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kodo'u, shall/will. In such case kodo'u, shall/will and ni`, marker of form are elided.

lói, negation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kodo'u, must. In such case, kodo'u is changed into tau.

lói, negation precedes kodo'u, 'going to do' changing kodo'u, into tau.

### *general forms*

iro`mgoni`-we/you-they will have written

iro`mgodo`uboni`-we/ you / they must have written

igodo`uri-we/you/they are going to write

### *negative forms*

iro`mlói-we/you/they will not have written

iro`mlóido`uboni`-we/you/they must not have written

iróido`uri-we/you/they are not going to write

bíren dímapúr to`tlo`mlói-Biren will not have gone to Dimapúr.

bínóy párá pákhi`rói-Binoy will not be reading his lesson

bímóina thebe`k edù sùkhi`róido`uboni`-Bimoi must not be doing that work

gópáldi` bisanúpúr yénglóido`uri-Gopal is not going to see Bisanupur.

## 270—Syntax

### 2 (2/1/2) ɔ/pi`-honorific person + lói, negation

ɔ, honorific first person and pi`, honorific second/third person may occur with the negative verbs in kɔdɔ'u, 'shall/will', kɔdɔ'u, 'must' and kɔdɔ'u, 'going to do'.

#### (a) ɔ + lói

izɔrɔ'mlói-we will not have written

izɔrɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-we must not have written

izɔróidɔ'urí-we are not going to write

#### (b) pi` + lói

ibi`rɔ'mlói-you/they will not have written

ibi`rɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-you/they must not have written

ibi`róidɔ'urí-you/they are not going to write

### 2 (3/1) lói, negation + lá/kè, interrogation

lá, general interrogation and kè, qualified interrogation change kɔdɔ'u into tɔ in the negative verbs in "shall/will". lá and kè change kɔdɔ'u into tɔ'u in the negative verbs in "must" and "going to do".

#### *general negative forms*

íɔ'mlói-we/you/they will not have written

íɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔni`-we/you/they must not have written

íróidɔ'urí-we/you/they are not going to write

#### *negative interrogative forms*

íɔ'mlóidɔrá-will not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔgè-why will not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔ'ubɔrá-must not we/you/they have written ?

íɔ'mlóidɔ'uribogè-Why must not we/you/they have written ?

íróidɔ'uribɔrá-are not we/you/they going to write ?

íróidɔ'uribogè-Why are not we/you/they going to write ?

#### *negative interrogative forms in lá'*

íɔ'mlóidɔrá-Will not we/you/they have written ?

#### *negative interrogative forms in kè'*

íɔ'mlóidɔgè-why will not we/you/they have written ?



ʒrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not we/you/they have written ?      ɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not we/you/they have written ?

ɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Are not we/you/ they going to write ?      ɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why are not we/you /they going to write ?

bɪrɛnɔ gɔpɔlbɔ pɔnglɔ'mlɔɪdɔrɔ- Will not Biren have helped Gopal ?

bɪnɔɪnɔ mɔdɪhɔbɔ ngɔɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not Binoy have waited for Modhu ?

bɪmɔlnɔ pɔrɔ pɔrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Is not Bimol going to read his lesson ?

gɔpɔlnɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ tɪbɔbɔ'k ɔdɔ sɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔgɛ-Why will not Gopal have done that work ?

mɔdɪhɔnɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ mɔdɔ tɔ'urɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not Modhu have done that ?

mɔdɪhɔpɔnɔ kɔrɪ'gɪ sɪɔmbɔ tɪnglɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why is not Modhop going to escort Syam ?

2 (3/2) pɪ, person+loi, negation+lá/kè, interrogation

pɪ, honorific second/third person may occur with the negative interrogative verbs in kɔdɔ'u, "shall"/"will", kɔdɔ'u, 'must' and kɔdɔ'u, 'going to do'.

(a) pɪ+lɔɪ+lá

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔrɔ-Will not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'ubɔrɔ-Must not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔrɔ-Are not you/they going to write ?

(b) pɪ+lɔɪ+kè

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔgɛ-Why will not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔ'mlɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why must not you/they have written ?

ɪbɪrɔɪdɔ'urɪbɔgɛ-Why are not you/they going to write ?

### 3 Verbs in the Hortative and Imperative Moods

Verbs in the hortative and imperative moods express persons without the honorific implications. They express such persons with the honorific implications taking the markers of the honorific persons.

### 3 (1) Verbs in kè, Hortative mood first person

#### 3 (1/1) cò, honorific first person

cò, honorific first person precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in kè, hortative mood first person.

| <i>general forms</i>  | <i>honorific forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>      |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| párc'm <sub>2</sub> è | pázarc'mgè             | let me/us have read  |
| pákhi'gè              | pázakhi'gè             | let me/us be reading |

o' thobò'k odù sùzòkhi'gè—let me be doing that work

o'ikho'i gópálbú pángzògè—let us help Gopal

### 3 (2) Verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural

#### 3 (2/1) konù/loi, negation

konù/loi, marker of negation follows the markers of aspects in the verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural.

| <i>general forms</i>        | <i>negative forms</i>                            |
|-----------------------------|--|
| párc'msi'-let us have read  | párc'mlóisi'/párc'mgonùsi'- let us not have read |
| pákhi'si'-let us be reading | pákhi'róisi'/pákhi'gonùsi' let us not be reading |

o'ikho'i ho'igrù càgonùsi'/càróisi -let us not eat myrohalam

o'ikho'i thobò'k odù sùkhi'róisi'/sùkhi'gonùsi'-let us not be doing that work

### 3 (2/2) pi', Honorific Second Person

pi', honorific second person may occur with a few verbs in si', hortative mood first person plural (indefinite aspect). In such case, these verbs express honorific imperative mood.

lèngs'i'nbi'si'-please come in

phò'mbi'si'-please be seated

### 3 (3) Verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person

#### 3 (3/1) pi', honorific third person

pi', honorific third person precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person.

*general forms*

páro'mso'nù-let him/them have  
read

pákhi'sonù-let him/them be  
reading

birénno gópálbú pángbi'sonù-let Biren help Gopal

binóyno débénbú ngáibi'khi'sonù-let Binoy be waiting for  
Deben

*honorific forms*

pábi'ro'mso'nù-let him/them have  
read

pábi'khi'sonù-let him/them be  
reading

## 3 (3/2) tɔ, negation

tɔ, marker of negation follows markers of aspects in the  
verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person.

*general forms*

íro'msonù-let him/them have  
written

íkhi'sonù-let him/them be  
writting

*negative forms*

íro'mdɔsonù-let him/them not  
have written

íkhi'dɔsonù-let him/them not be  
writting

débén ngasi' cɔ'tɔsonù-let not Deben go today

dórénnɔ thɔbɔ'k ɔdù sùkhi'dɔsonù-let not Doren be doing  
that work

## 3 (3/3) pɪ, honorific third person + tɔ, negation

pɪ, honorific third person may occur with the negative  
verbs in sonù, hortative mood third person.

ibi'ro'mdɔsonù-let him/them not have written

ibi'khi'dɔsonù-let him/them not be writting

## 3 (3/4) Verbs in -o, imperative mood

## 3 (4/1) pɪ, honorific second person

pɪ, honorific second person precedes the markers of  
aspects in the verbs in -o, imperative mood.

*general forms*

páro'mmù-have read

pákho'-be reading

odo'mno binóybú pángbiyù-please help Binoy

odo'mno gópálbú ngáibi'kho'-please be waiting for Gopal

*honorific forms*

pábi'ro'mmù-please have read

pábi'kho'-please be reading

3 (4/2) *konù*, negation

*konù*, marker of negation follows the markers of aspects in the verbs in -o', imperative mood.

*general forms*

*iro'mmù*-have written

*ikho'*-be writing

*no'ng gópálbú phùgonù*-don't beat Gopal

*no'ng thóbò'k odù sùkhi'gonù* don't be doing that work

*negative forms*

*iro'mgonù*-don't have written

*ikhi'gonù*-don't be writing

3 (4/3) *pi'*, honorific second person + *konù*, negation

*pi'*, honorific second person may occur with the negative verbs in -o', imperative mood.

*pábiro'mgonù*-please don't have read

*pábi'khi'gonù*-please don't be reading

4 Verbs in *lobodi'* and *lo'mlobodi'*4 (1) *co/pi'*, honorific person

*co*, honorific first person and *pi'*, honorific second/third person precede *lobodi'*, subjunctive tense and *lo'mlobodi'*, contingent future perfect tense in the verbs in such tense forms.

*Forms in co*

*izorobodi'*-if we write

*izero'mlobodi'*-if we wrote

*oi'no modù to'uzorobodi'*, *o'ibú binóyno pángbi'goni'*-if I do that Binoy will help me

*oi'kho'ino pángzoro'mlobodi'* *birénno monà pho'nglo'mgo-do'uboni'*-if we helped then Biren would have got the prize  
*odo'mno kho'ngbi'ro'mlobodi'* *odo'mno hàibi'ro'mlòido'uboni'*  
 if you knew you would not have said so.

*Forms in pi'*

*ibi'robodi'*-if you/they write

*ibi'ro'mlobodi'*-if you/they wrote

4 (2) *to*, negation

*to*, marker of negation precedes *lobodi'*, subjunctive tense and *lo'mlobodi'*, contingent future perfect tense in the verbs in such tense forms.

*general forms*

*tárobodi'*-if we/you/they  
 hear

*negative forms*

*tádrobodi'*-if we/you/they do not  
 hear

táro'mlobodi`-if we/you/they  
heard

táro'mdrobodi`-if we/you/they did  
not hear

bíren láktrōbodi` gópál eotlói-if Biren does not come Gopal  
will not go

binóyno pánglō'mdrobodi` mádhō'pno monà phō'nglō'mlói-  
if Binoy did not help then Madhop will not get the prize.

#### 4 (3) eo/pi`, honorific person + tō, negation

eo/pi`, honorific person may occur with the negative verbs in lobodi`, subjunctive tense and lo'mlobodi`, contingent future perfect tense.

##### (a) eo + tō

izōdrobodi`-if you do not write

izáro'mdrobodi`-if we did not write

##### (b) pi` + tō

ibi'drobodi`-if you/they do not write

ibi'ro'mdrobodi`-if you/they did not write

#### 4. 1. 2. 2. 2 Auxiliary verbs in the tense forms expressing persons, negation etc.

##### 1 Main Verbs + tá:i`, "have to do"/yá:i`, "may"

##### 1 (1) eo/pi`, honorific person

eo, honorific first person and pi`, honorific second/third person occur with the main verbs followed by tá:i`, have to do and yá:i`, may.

##### Forms in eo

izōbo tá:i`-we have to write

izōbo yá:i`-we may write

o'ikho'i i'sàno modú kho'ngzōbo tá:i`-we have to know that  
ourselves

o'ikho'i i'sàno láiri'k odu pho'ngzōbo yá:i`-we may publish  
that book ourselves

odo'mno binóybú pángbi'bō tá:i`-you have to help Binoy  
bimólno syámbú ngáibiro'mbo yá:i`-Bimol may have waited  
for Syam

##### Forms in pi`

ibi'bo tá:i`-you/they have to write

ibi'bo yá:i`-you/they may write

1 (1/2) *tə*, negation

*tə*, marker of negation occurs with the main verbs followed by *tá:i`*, have to do and *yá:i`*, may.

*general forms*

*pábo tá:i`-we/you/they have to read*

*pábo yá:i`-we/you/they may read*

*negative forms*

*pádobo tá:i`-we/you/they have not to read*

*pádobo yá:i`-we/you/they may not read*

*débénno thobo`k odù sùdobo tá:i`-Deben has not to do that work*

*gópál dímapúr co`ttobo yá:i` Gopal may not go to Dimapur*

1 (1/3) *co/pi`*, honorific person + *tə*, negation

*co/pi`*, honorific person may occur with the main negative followed by *tá:i`-have to do* and *yá:i`*, may.

(a) *co + tə*

*pázodobo tá:i`-we have not to read*

*pázodobo yá:i`-we may not read*

(b) *pi` + tə*

*pábi`dobo tá:i`-you/they have not to read*

*pábi`dobo yá:i`-you/they may not read*

*o`ikho`ino lo`u odù yónzodobo tá:i`-we have not to sell that paddy*

*odo`mno binóybú kho`ngbi` ro`mdobo yá:i`-you may not have known Binoy*

1 (2) Main Verbs + interrogative forms of *tá:i`* and *yá:i`*

Main verbs may be followed by the interrogative forms of *tá:i`*, have to do and *yá:i`*, may. Such forms of *tá:i`* and *yá:i`* are shown against them below :—

| <i>tá:i`/yá:i`</i>        | Interrogative forms of <i>tá:i`</i> and <i>yá:i`</i> |                    |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------|
|                           | Forms in <i>lá</i>                                   | Forms in <i>kè</i> |
| <i>tá:i`</i> , have to do | <i>táborá</i>  | <i>tábogè</i>      |
| <i>yá:i`</i> , may        | <i>yágodorá</i>                                      | <i>yágodogè</i>    |

*general forms*

pábo tá:i`-we/you/they have  
to read

pábo yá:i`-we/you/they may  
read

*interrogative forms*

pábo táborá-have we/you/they to  
read ?

pábo tábogè-how have we/you  
they to read ?

pábo yágodorá-may we/you/they  
read ?

pábo yágodogè-how may we/you  
they read ?

bíren motómtó cò`tpo táborá-has Biren to go alone ?

bínóyño gópálbú pángbo yágodorá-may Binoy help Gopal ?

bimólno koro`mno thobo`k odù sùbo tábogè-how has Bimo  
to do that work ?

débénno koro`mno motómtó lákpo yágodogè-how may Debe  
come alone ?

1 (2/1) pi`, honorific second/third person, to, negation

The following markers may occur with the main verb:  
followed by the interrogative forms of tá:i`, have to do and yá:i`  
may :

(a) pi`, honorific second/third person

(b) to, negation

(c) pi`, honorific second/third person + to, negation

*Examples :—*

**Forms in lá**

íbibó táborá-have you/they to read ?

ídobó táborá-have not we/you/they to write ?

íbí`dobó táborá-have not you/they to write ?

íbí`bo yágodorá-may you/they write ?

ídobó yágodorá-may not we/you/they write ?

íbí`dobó yágodorá-may not you/they write ?

**Forms in kè**

íbí`bo tábogè-how have you/they to write ?

ídobó tábogè-how have you/they not to write ?

ibi'dobo tábogè-how have you/they not to write ?  
 ibi'bo yágodagè-how may you/they write ?  
 idobo yágodagè-how may not we/you/they write ?  
 ibi'dobo yágodagè-how may not you/they write ?

## 2 Main verbs + Four Auxillary verbs

### 2 (1) cə/pi', honorific person

cə, honorific first person and pi' honorific second/third person occur with the main verbs followed by ngo'mgoni', "can", ngo'mlo'mgoni', "could" yáro'mgoni'; "might" and tho'ki', "should".

#### (a) Forms in cə

izabo ngo'mgoni'-we can write  
 izabo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we could have written  
 izabo yáro'mgoni'-we might have written  
 izapho'm tho'ki'-we should write

#### (b) Forms in pi'

ibi'bo ngo'mgoni'-you/they can write  
 ibi'bo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-you/they could have written  
 ibi'bo yáro'mgoni'-you/they might have written  
 ibi'pho'm tho'ki'-you/they should write  
 o'ino odo'mbú pángzobo ngo'mgoni'-I can help you  
 o'ino thobo'k odù sùzobo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-I could have done that work  
 o'ikho'ino odo'mbú ngáizobo yáro'mgoni'-we might have waited for you  
 o'ikho'i í sáno modù kho'ngzapho'm tho'ki'-we should know that  
 odo'mno o'ibú thinbi'bo ngo'mgoni'-you can escort me  
 odo'mno modù kho'nbi'bo ngo'mlo'mgoni'-you could have thought that  
 binóyno gópálgo kho'nnobibo yáro'mgoni'-Binoy might have consulted with Gopal  
 bírénnə syámgo ú:nobi'pho'm tho'ki'-Biren should meet Syam



## 2 (2/1) Main Verbs+Interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs

Main Verbs may be followed by the Interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such interrogative forms are shown against the four auxiliary verbs below :—

| Four auxiliary verbs | Interrogative forms of the auxiliary verbs |                 |
|----------------------|--|-----------------|
|                      | Forms in lá                                | Forms in kè     |
| ngo'mgoni` can       | ngo'mgodorá                                | ngo'mgodogè     |
| ngo'mlo'mgoni`-could | ngo'mlo'mgodorá                            | ngo'mlo'mgodogè |
| yáro'mgoni`-might    | yáro'mgodorá                               | yáro'mgodogè    |
| tho`k:i`-should      | tho`kporá                                  | tho`kporè       |

### *general forms*

ibo ngo'mgoni`-we/you/they  
can write

ibo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-we/you/  
they could have written

ibo yáro'mgoni`-we/you/they  
might have written

ípho'm tho`k:i`-we/you/they  
should write

### *interrogative forms*

ibo ngo'mgodorá-can we/you/they  
write ?

ibo ngo'mgodogè-how can we/you/  
they write ?

ibo ngo'mlo'mgodorá-can we/you/  
they have written ?

ibo ngo'mlo'mgodogè-how could  
we/you/they have written ?

ibo yáro'mgodorá-might we/you/  
they have written ?

ibo yáro'mgodogè-how might we/  
you/they have written ?

ípho'm tho`kporá-should we/you/  
they write ?

ípho'm tho`kporè-how should we/  
you/they write ?

binóy hoyéng eá'tpo ngo'mgodorá-can Binoy go tomorrow ?

birénnó gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mgodorá-could Biren have  
helped Gopal ?

bimólnò modù ló'ubò yá'ró'mgàdàrá-might Bimol have taken  
that ?  
débénno modù kò'ngphó'm tho'kporá-should Deben know  
that ?  
dórénno kà'ró'mnò ló'u yónbò ngò'mgàdàgè-how can Doren  
sell the paddy land ?  
mádhò'pno kà'ró'mnò sò'iréng íbò ngò'mlò'mgàdàgè-how could  
Madhop have written the poems ?  
múhónno kà'ró'mnò khùtsù'mò'n phò'ngbò yá'ró'mgàdàgè-how  
might Muhon have got his wage ?  
syámno kà'rigi modù tò'uphó'm tho'kpogè-why should Syam  
do it ?

## 2 (2/2) pí, honorific second/third person

pí, honorific second/third person may occur with the main verbs followed by the interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

### (a) Forms with pí and lá

íbì'bò ngò'mgàdàrá-can you/they write ?  
íbì'bò ngò'mlò'mgàdàrá-could you/they have written ?  
íbì'bò yá'ró'mgàdàrá-might you/they have written ?  
íbì'phó'm tho'kporá, should you/they write ?

### (b) Forms with pí and kè

íbì'bò ngò'mgàdàgè-how can you/they write ?  
íbì'bò ngò'mlò'mgàdàgè-how could you/they have written ?  
íbì'bò yá'ró'mgàdàgè-how might you/they have written ?  
íbì'phó'm tho'kpogè-how should you/they write ?

## 2 (3/1) Main Verbs + Negative Forms of the four Auxiliary Verbs

The main verbs may be followed by the negative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such negative forms are shown against the four auxiliary verbs below :—

### *auxiliary verbs*

ngò'mgàní-can  
ngò'mlò'mgàní-could  
yá'ró'mgàní-might  
tho'k:i'-should

### *negative forms of the auxiliary verbs*

ngò'mlói-cannot  
ngò'mlò'mlói-could not  
yá'ró'mlói-might not  
tho'ktè-should not

*general forms*

ibə ngo'mgoni'-we/you/they  
can write

ibə ngo'mlo'mgoni'-we/you/  
they could have written

ibə yáro'mgoni'-we/you/they  
might have written

ipho'm tho'k:i'-we/you/they  
should write

*negative forms*

ibə ngo'mlói'-we/you/they cannot  
write

ibə ngo'mlo'mlói'-we/you/they could  
not have written

ibə yáro'mlói'-we/you/they might  
not have written

ipho'm tho'ktè'-we/you/they should  
not write

binóy hoyéng lákpə ngo'mlói'-Binoy cannot come tomorrow  
birénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlo'mlói'-Biren could not have  
helped Gopal

bímólno syámbú ngáibo yáro'mlói'-Bimol might not have  
waited for Gopal

débénno módhúbú kho'ngpho'm tho'ktè'-Deben should not  
know Modhu

## 2 (3/2) cə/pi', honorific person

cə, honorific first person and pi', honorific second/third  
person may occur with the main verbs followed by the negative  
forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

## (a) cə + negative forms

izəbo ngo'mlói'-we cannot write

izəbo ngo'mlo'mlói'-we could not have written

izəbo yáro'mlói'-we might not have written

izəpho'm tho'ktè'-we should not write

2 (3/2/1) ngo'mlói, cannot but and ngo'mlo'mlói, could not but  
ngo'mlói, "cannot" and ngo'mlo'mlói, "could not"  
express "cannot but" and "could not but" respectively occurring  
with the main negative verbs with tə, negation.

idəbo ngo'mlói'-we/you/they cannot but write

idəbo ngo'mlo'mlói'-we/you/they could not but have written

débénno birénbú pángdəbo ngo'mlói'-Deben cannot but help  
Biren

gópálnə dimápúr cə'ttəbo ngo'mlo'mlói'-Gopal could not but  
have gone to Dimapur

## 2 (4/1) Main Verbs+Negative Interrogative forms of the four Auxiliary Verbs

Main verbs may be followed by the negative interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs. Such forms are shown against the negative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

| Negative forms of the four<br>auxiliary verbs | Negative interrogative forms of the<br>four auxiliary verbs |                  |
|---|---|------------------|
|   | Forms in lá   | Forms in kè      |
| ngə'mlóí-can not                              | ngə'mlóíḍorá  | ngə'mlóíḍogè     |
| ngə'mlɔ'mlóí-could not                        | ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍorà  | ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍogè |
| yáɾɔ'mlóí-might not                           | yáɾɔ'mlóíḍorá   | yáɾɔ'mlóíḍogè    |
| tho'ktè should not                            | tho'ktəḅorá   | tho'ktəḅogè      |

### *negative forms*

íḅɔ ngə'mlóí-we/you/they  
cannot write

íḅɔ ngə'mlɔ'mlóí-we/you/  
they could not have  
written

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóí-we/you/they  
might not have written

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktè-we/you/  
they should not write

### *negative interrogative forms*

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍorá-can not we/you/they  
write ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍogè-why cannot we/you/  
they write ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlɔ'mlóíḍorá-could not we/  
you/they have written ?

íḅɔ ngə'mlóíḍogè-why could not we/  
you/they have written ?

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóíḍorá-might not have we/  
you/they written ?

íḅɔ yáɾɔ'mlóíḍogè-why might not we/  
you/they have written ?

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktəḅorá-should not we/you/  
they write ?

íḅhɔ'm tho'ktəḅogè-why should not we/  
you/they write ?

ḅínóy hɔyéug cə'tpɔ ngə'mlóíḍorá-cannot Binoɔ go tomo-  
rrow ?

biénno gópálbú pángbo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-could not Biren have helped Gopal ?

bímólno modù lɔ'uba yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-might not Bimol have taken that ?

débénno modù ts'upho'm tho'ktɔbɔrá-should not Deben do that ?

dórénnɔ korigi lɔ'u adù lɔ'ibo ngo'mlɔ́dɔgè-why cannot Doren buy that paddy land ?

mádho'pno korigi sɔ'iréng ibɔ ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why could not Madhop have written the poems ?

múhónno korigi khùtsùmo'n pho'ngbo yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why might not Muhon have got his wage ?

## 2 (4/2) pi', honorific second/third person

pi', honorific second/third person may occur with the main verbs followed by the negative interrogative forms of the four auxiliary verbs.

### (a) negative forms with pi' and lá

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ́dɔrá-cann't you/they write ?

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔrá-could not you/they have written ?

ibi'bo yáɔ'mlɔ́dɔra'-might not you/they have written ?

ibi'pho'm tho'ktɔbɔra'-should not you/they write ?

### (b) negative forms with pi' and kè

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ́dɔgè-why cann't you/they write ?

ibi'bo ngo'mlɔ'mlɔ́dɔgè-why could not you/they have written ?

ibi'bo ya'ra'mlɔ́dɔgè-why might not you/they have written ?

ibi'pho'm tho'ktɔbɔgè-why should not you/they write ?

## 4. 1. 2. 2. 3 *Honorific Persons of the Verbs*

### 1 Persons of the Honorific Verbs

Some honorific verbs express the three honorific persons without taking the markers of these persons. In such case, these verbs occur with the honorific nouns used as adjuncts.

o'ino othénpo't kɔ'tlo'mlè-I had given the presents

o'ino lùk kho'n-gè-let me give an additional round of dishes

mohàkno wà hō'nggò'tsonù-let him report the matter  
 nō'ngno kwàgò'k hángpho'm tho'k:i'-you should give the  
 bribe

The honorific verbs shown above may optionally take *cə*, honorific first person.

o'ikho'ino wàpho'm odu táibùngódo hō'nggò'tcoro'miè-we  
 had reported the matter to our elder brother

Some honorific verbs express only the honorific second and third persons with or without *pi'*, marker of such persons occurring with the honorific nouns used as the subjects or nominal adjuncts. In such case, the subject (honorific noun) in the second person takes *pú*, vocative case marker and occurs with the honorific verbs.

(a) subject in the second person with *pú*, vocative

i'nébémobú ! koro'mbo nō'mkhàng tho'lgodogè-oh ! my  
 aunt ! what shawl will you wear ?  
 khúrá i'bùngó ! khúdádó lèngsínù-oh ! my uncle ! please  
 take your seat  
 sonà i'bùngó ! khúdóng phànóidórá oh ! Rajkumar ! will  
 you not smoke  
 táibùngó ! lùk háríborá-oh ! my elder brother ! are you  
 taking meal ?

(b) subject in the honorific third person

sonà i'bèmodi' phunnō khúzáidogí i'ing phànóidó'uri-the  
 Rajkumari is not going to drink the water from the jug  
 sonàkhwádi' sō'nggáido lèngli-the Rajkumar is going to his  
 home.  
 wálho'uso'ngdo o'igyáno lùk hō'uri'-the Brahmin is preparing  
 the meal in the kitchen shed of the deity

2 Use of *cə* in the second/third person and *pi'* in the first person

Use of *cə*, honorific first person in the second/third person and *pi'*, honorific second/third person is taken as offence or discourtesy. But such use of these person markers is done by the elders and superiors towards the juniors.

**(a) co in the second/third person**

lo'isábi'singdi` phí sùzori-the girls are washing the clothes  
 nùpàmòcàsingno sánnòzori-the boys are playing  
 nò'ngnóbú pámzòròbòdì`-oino pì`bì'goni'-if you like I shall  
 give it.

**(b) pi` in the first person**

o'ino nùpàmòcàsingdo lùpà càmò pi`bi`rò'mlè-I had given  
 one hundred rupees to the boys  
 o'ino nòhàrónsingbú pángbi`goni'-I shall help the boys  
 o'ikho'ino sátrò'singbú møyùmdo thinbi`goni'-we will escort  
 the students to their homes

**3 co/pi` used as word forming infix.**

co, honorific first person and pi`, honorific second/third person function as the word forming infixes without expressing their personal meanings. In such case, co/pi` form the obligatory components of some infixed verbs.

**(a) co, word forming infix.**

lo'ngzòrò'mi`-we/you/they offended  
 làkeòrò'mi`-we/you/they outwitted  
 pì`zòrò'mi`-we/you/they fed  
 phòzòrò'mi`-It was beautifull  
 tù:kòcòrò'mi`-we/you/they hated  
 thàzòrò'mi`-we/you/they believed

**(b) pi`, word forming infi**

cánbi`rò'mi`-we/you/they were kind  
 kúbì`rò'mi`-God blessed  
 ngàkpi`rò'mi`-we/you/they forgave  
 tò'mbi`rò'mi`--we/you/they taught

**4. 1. 2. 2. 4 Causation of Verbs**

hò`n is the marker of causation. It occurs with the verbs (both general and interrogative) in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms.

1 (1) *ho'n*, preceding the markers of tenses

*ho'n* causation precedes the markers of tenses in the verbs of the following tenses :—

- (a) Verbs in the present tense
- (b) verbs in the past tense

*Examples :—*

general forms

- (a) *ihə'nle-we/you/they* have got it written
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mle-we/you/they* had got it written

Interrogative forms

- (a) *ihə'nloborá*-have we/you/they got it written ?
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mloborá*-had we/you/they got it written ?  
*bínóyño gópálbú thobó'k odú sùho'nli*-Binoy gets that work done by Gopal  
*bírénnə módhúbú cithí odú ihə'nlo'mborá*-did Biren get that letter written by Modhu ?

1 (2) *həə* preceding the markers of aspects

*ho'n*, causation precedes the markers of aspects in the verbs in the following tenses and tense forms :—

- (a) Verbs in the future tense
- (b) Verbs in *kədo'u*-must
- (c) Verbs in the hortative mood
- (d) Verbs in the imperative mood

*Examples :—*

general forms

- (a) *ihə'nlo'mgəni'-we/you/they* will have got it written
- (b) *ihə'nlo'mgədo'ubəni'-we/you/they* must have got it written
- (c) *ihə'nlo'msi'*-let us have got it written
- (d) *ihə'nlo'mmə-(you)* have got it written (imperative)

Interrogative forms

- (a) *ihə'nlo'mgədo'gə*-why will we/you/they have got it written ?



(b) *ihò'nlò'mgòdògè*-why must we/you/they have got it written ?

*débénno gópáibú thòbò'k odù sùhò'nlò'mgòni*-Deben will have got that work done by Gopal

*dórénno gópáibú ú odù yàhò'nlò'mgòdò'uboni*-Doren must have got that tree cut by Gopal

*ò'ino mádho'ppú cithi odù ihò'nlò'mgè*-let me have got that letter written by Madhop.

*ngò'ngno láiri'k odù syámbú páhò'nlù*-(you) get that book read by Syam

*rázénno bínóybú sèn odù thàhò'nlò'mgòdòrá*-will Rajen have got that money sent by Binoy ?

*rádháno sántibú phí odù sùhò'nlò'mgòdò'uborá* must Radha have got that cloth washed by Santi ?

### 1 (3) *hò'n* preceding the markers of tense forms

*hò'n*, causation precedes the markers of tense forms in the verbs in the following tense forms :—

- (a) Verbs in *kòdò'u*-going to do
- (b) Verbs in *lòbòdi*-subjunctive tense
- (c) Verbs in *lò'mlobòdi*-contingent future perfect tense

*Examples :—*

general forms

- (a) *páho'lgòdò'uri*-we/you/they are going to get it read
- (b) *páho'nlòbòdi*-if we/you/they get it read
- (c) *páho'nlò'mlobòdi*-if we/you/they got it read

Interrogative forms

- (a) *páho'lgòdò'uribògè*-why are we/you/they going to get it read ?

*bínóyno gópáibú thòbò'k odù sùhò'lgòdò'uri*-Binoy is going to get that work done by Gopal

*birénno módhúbú láiri'k odù páhò'nlòbòdi phògòni*-if Biren gets that book read by Modhu, it will be good,

bimólno syámbú sén odù thàho`nlo`mlòbodi`, phòro`mgodo`u-  
boni-if Bimol got that money sent by Syam, it would have  
been good

débénno korigí mádho`ppú ú odù yàho`lgodo`uribogè-why is  
Deben going to get that tree cut by Madhop ?

# 1 (4) ho`n in the main verbs followed by the auxiliary verbs

ho`n, causation occurs with the main verbs followed by  
the auxiliary verbs.

## (a) general forms

ihò`nbo ngo`mgoni`-we/you/they can get it written

ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgoni`-we/you/they could have got it  
written

ihò`nbo yáro`mgoni`-we/you/they might have got it written

ihò`nbo yá:i`-we/you/they may get it written

ihò`nbo tá:i`-we/you/they have to get it written

ihò`npho`m tho`k:i`-we/you/they should get it written

## (b) Interrogative Forms

ihò`nbo ngo`mgodogè-how can we/you/they get it written ?

ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgodogè how could we/you/they have got  
it written ?

ihò`nbo yáro`mgodogè-how might we/you/they have got it  
written ?

ihò`nbo yágodogè-how may we/you/they get it written ?

ihò`nbo tábogè-how have we/you/they to got it written ?

ihò`npho`m tho`kpodè how should we/you/they get it wri-  
tten ?

bírénnò gópálbú thobò`k odù sùhò`nbo ngo`mgoni`-Biren can  
get that work done by Gopal

bínóyño syámbú cithi odù ihò`nbo ngo`mlò`mgoni`-Binoy  
could have that letter written by Syam

bímólno módhúbú sén odù thàho`nbo yáro`mgoni`-Bime  
might have got that money sent by Modhu

dórénnò gópálbú láiri`k odù yónhò`nbo yá:i`-Doren may  
to sell the book by Gopal

débénno módhúbú ù odù yàhò'nbo tá:i'-Deben has to get that tree cut by Modhu

mádhò'pno gópálbú láirì'k odù páhò'npho'm tho'k:i'-Madhop should get that book read by Gopal

## 2 Causative verbs with the markers of persons and negation

Causative verbs (both general and interrogative) may take the following markers :—

- (a) markers of the honorific persons
- (b) markers of negation
- (c) markers of the honorific persons and negation

*Examples :—*

ihò'nbi'rè-you/they have got it written

ihò'ndrè-we/you/they have not got it written

ihò'nbi'drè-you/they have not got it written

ihò'nbi'rò'mlè-you/they had got it written

ihò'nbi'mdrè we/you/they had not got it written

ihò'nbi'rò'múìrè-you/they had not got it written

ihò'nbi'rò'mgonl'-you/they will have got it written

ihò'nbi'mlóì-we/you/they will not have got it written

## 4. 1. 2. 2. 5 Stative Verbs expressing Persons, Negation etc.,

Stative verbs express negation, interrogation, interrobation and negation. They also express causation. Only a few stative verbs express the honorific persons.

### 1 Stative Verbs expressing Negation

#### (a) to, negation

cáodè-it is not big

cáorò'mdè-it was not big

cáodobo tá:i'-it has not to be big

cáodobo yá:i'-it may not be big

cáopho'm tho'kè-it should not be big

#### lól, negation

lóról-it will not be big

cáoróido'ubónì-it must not be big  
 cáoróido'urí-it is not going to be big  
 cáobo ngo'mlól-it cannot be big  
 cáobo ngo'mlóm'lól-it could not have been big  
 cáobo yárá'mlói-it might not have been big  
 ho'ì odù sì'ndè that fruit is not sour  
 í'nsáng odù háoro'mdè-that curry was not delicious  
 lo'ipàn odù ningtho'mthádo ko'nglól-that flower plant will  
 not be dry in the winter  
 módhúno sáodobo tá;i'-Modhu has not to be angry  
 mádhoptì' hóráobo ngo'mlói-Madhop cannot be jovial  
 ho'ì odù múnbo ngo'mlóm'lói-that fruit could not have been  
 ripe  
 rázénno cèksi'nbo yárá'mlói-Rajen might not have been care-  
 full  
 túrégi í'íngdi' sápho'm tho'ktè-water of the river- should  
 not be hot

## 2 Stative Verbs expressing Interrogation

Stative verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the tenses and tense forms express interrogation.

### Forms in lá

cáoborá-is it big ?  
 cáoro'mborá-was it big ?  
 cáogodorá-will it be big ?  
 cáobo ngo'mgodorá-can it be  
 big ?  
 cáobo yágodorá-may it be  
 big ?  
 cáopho'm tho'kporá-should  
 it be big ?

### Forms in kè

cáobogè-how is it big ?  
 cáoro'mbogè-how was it big ?  
 cáogodogè-how will it be big ?  
 cáobo ngo'mgodogè-how can it be  
 big ?  
 cáobo yágodogè-how may it be  
 big ?  
 cáopho'm tho'kpodgè-how should it  
 be big ?

càk odù púmlóborá-is that cooked rice rotten ?

dəbénno módhúdo sáoro'mborá-was Deben angry with  
 Modhu ?

lo'ì odù phozgodorá-will that flower be beautiful ?

mádhó pno cèksl'nbo ngo'mlo'mgodorá can Madhop be care-  
full ?

múhónno korigi horáopho'm tho'kpogè-why should Muhon  
be jovilant ?

phí omúbóno koró'mno ngo'ubo yágodogè-how may the black  
clock be white ?

## 2 (2) Interrogative Stative Verbs expressing Negation

Interrogative stative verbs express negation.

### (a) Forms in lá

co'ttoborá-is it not wet ?

cáoro'mdoborá-was it not big ?

cètlóidoborá will it not be firm ?

### (b) Forms in kè

ko'ngdobo yágodogè-how may not it be dry ?

lálbo ngo'mlóidogè-how cann't it be easy ?

múnbo ngo'mlo'mlóidogè-how could not have been ripe ?

ngo'upho'm tho'ktobogè-how should it not be white ?

## 3 Stative Verbs expressing Causation

Stative verbs express causation

cáoho'nle it has been enlarged

mo'nhó'nlo'mli'-it was softened

so'nhó'nlo'mgoni'-it will have been weakened

ténho'nbo tá:i'-it has to be shortened

tho'uhó'nbo yá:i'-it may be sharpened

tháho'nphe'm tho'k:i'-it should be thickened

## 4 Stative Verbs expressing Persons

### 4 (1) co, honorific first person

co, honorific first person occurs only with a very few  
stative verbs.

cèksl'nzorè-we have been carefull

horáozoro'mi'-we were jovilant

núngáizogoni'-we will be happy

## 4 (2) pi', honorific second person

pi', honorific second person occur with a few stative verbs in the imperative mood (indefinite aspect).

i'nàk khúbi'yù-please be rich

mài pàkpi'yù-please be victorious

pùkcén cáobi'yù-please be noble

pi', honorific second person also occurs with some negative stative verbs in the imperative mood.

ko'nlo'kpi'gonù-please don't be jealous

kho'iràngbi'gonù-please don't be anxious

mipáibi'gonù-please don't be nervous

pùkcén pi'kpi'gonù-please don't be mean

4 (3) cə, honorific person and pi', honorific second/third person occur with some causative stative verbs.

## Forms in cə

ko'nho'nzərə-we have got it strengthened

tènho'nzərə'mi'- we got it shortened

thə'uho'nzəgoni'-we will get it sharpened

thàho'nzəgodə,uboni'-we must get it thickened

## Forms in pi'

ko'nho'nbi'rè-you/they have got it strengthened

tènho'nbi'rə'mi'-you/they got it shortened

thə'uho'nbi'goni'-you/they will get it sharpened

thàho'nbi'godə,uboni'-you/they must get it thickened

## AUXILIARY VERBS

4. 1. 2. 6. 1 Auxiliary Verbs have been referred to in showing the features of tenses and tense forms. They are lo'i, lá, lák, ni', no' ngo'm, ngái, oi, to'u, tá, tho'k and yá.

lo'i, lá, nə', no', ngái, o'i and tá express "be". Meanings of other auxiliary verbs are shown below :—

lák-come

ngo'm-able

to'u-do

tho'k-go out

lá-possible

1 (1) *ni*, *lá* and *no*, express the features shown against them below :—

- (a) *ni*-general statement
- (b) *lá*-general interrogation
- (c) *kè*-qualified interrogation

*ni*, *lá* and *no* are not conjugated. They express "be" in the present indefinite occurring with the nouns used as the subjective complements.

| <i>ni</i> , general statement      | <i>lá</i> , general interrogation    | <i>kè</i> , qualified interrogation  |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| modù o'k <i>ni</i> -that is a pig  | modù o'k <i>lá</i> -is that a pig ?  | modù kori <i>no</i> -what is that ?  |
| mosi`pàt <i>ni</i> -this is a lake | mosi`pàt <i>lá</i> -is this a lake ? | mosi` kori <i>no</i> -what is this ? |
| mà ózá <i>ni</i> -he is a teacher  | mà ózá <i>rá</i> -is he a teacher ?  | mà koná <i>no</i> -who is he ?       |

### 1 (2) Primary Forms + *ni*/*lá*

*ni*, general statement and *lá*, general interrogation occur with the following primary forms:—

- (a) Verbal nouns used as the subjective complements
- (b) Main Verbs in *ni`ngái*, "worth doing"

*Examples :—*

| <i>ni</i> -general statement  | <i>lá</i> -general interrogation   |
|---|--|
| (a) cophù osi` okàibo odù <i>ni</i> -this pitcher is the one that is broken | cophù osi` okàibo odù <i>rá</i> -is this pitcher is the one that is broken ? |
| ho`i osi` omúnbo odù <i>ni</i> -this fruit is the one that is ripe          | ho`i osi` omúnbo odù <i>rá</i> -is this fruit the one that is ripe ?         |
| (b) modù kho`nnoni`ngái <i>ni</i> -that is worth considering                | modù kho`nnoni`ngái <i>rá</i> -is that worth considering ?                   |
| mosi` yéngni`ngáini`-this is worth seeing                                   | mosi` yéngni`ngáirá is this worth seeing ?                                   |

1 (3) Negative Present Indefinite forms of *ni`*

*ni`*, general statement takes the following negative present indefinite forms :—

- (a) *nottè*, general statement (*ni`* +  $\phi$ , TM + to, negation + *ni`*, marker of form)  
 (b) *nottàborá*, general interrogation (*ni`* +  $\phi$ , TM + to, negation + *pò*, infinitive marker + *lá*, general interrogation)

*nottè*, general statement and *nottàborá*, general interrogation occur with the nominal and primary forms associated with *ni`*, general statement.

*nottè*, general statement

*mosi` o`k nòttè*-this is not a pig

*mi` osi` ongàobò odù nòttè*-this person is not the one who is mad

*mosi` yéngni`ngái nòttè*-this is not worth seeing

*nottàborá*, general interrogation

*mosi` o`k nòttàborá*-is not this a pig ?

*mi` osi` ongàobò odù nòttàborá*-is not this person the one who is mad ?

*mosi` yéngni`ngái nòttàborá*-is not this worth seeing ?

1 (4) *ni`*, general statement as the marker of verbs

*ni`*, general statement functions as the marker of the verbs in *kodò`u*, "shall"/"will" and *kodò`u* "must".

*párc`mgoni`*-we/you/they will have read

*pákhigoni`*-we/you/they will be reading

*páro`mgodò`uboni`*-we/you/they must have read

*pákhigodò`uboni`*-we/you/they must be reading

1 (5) *lá*, general interrogation as the marker of general interrogation

*lá*, general interrogation functions as the marker of general interrogation for the interrogative verbs in the three tenses and some tense forms. Thus *lá*, general interrogation replaces *ni`*, general statement in the verbs in *kodò`u* "shall"/"will" and "kodò`u" when general interrogation is expressed.



*ni`, general statement*

író'mgòni` we/you/they will have written

íkhi`gòni`-we/you/they will be writting

író'mgòdò'ubòni`-we / you / they must have written

íkhi`gòdò'ubòni`-we/you/they must be writing

*lá, general interrogation*

író'mgòdòrá-will we/you/they have written ?

íkhi`gòdòrá- will we/you/they be writting ?

író'mgòdò'ubòrá-must we/ you/ they have written ?

íkhi`gòdò'ubòrá-must we/you/ they be writting ?

# 1 (6) *no`, qualified interrogation as emphatic replative marker of qualified interrogation*

*no`, qualified interrogation functions as the emphatic replative marker of qualified interrogation. In such case, no may replace kè, marker of qualified interrogation in the interrogative verbs in the aspects of three tenses and some tense forms other perfect aspect.*

*general forms**in ke`**emphatic forms**in no`**meanings*

íribògè

íribòno`

why are we/you/they reading ?

író'mlibògè

író'm'ibòno`

why were we/you/they reading ?

íkhi`gòdògè

íkhi`gòdòbòno`

why will we/you/they be reading ?

## 2 *lo'i, ngái, ói*

*lo'i, ngái and ói express 'be' in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses taking the conjugated forms for these tense aspects. Such conjugated forms of these verbs occur with the nominal forms.*

### (a) *lo'i*

ká ɔ̀si`dò ɔ̀mbáɔ̀i ɔ̀ni` lo'i-there are two almirahs in this room

úmo`ng ɔ̀dùdò kò'i ɔ̀mo lo'íro`mli`-there was a tiger in that forest

(b) *ngái*

*kóléz odùdò ózá toràto mòngáirè*-there have been only ten teachers in that college

*yùm odùdò nùpà omoto mòngáirò'mi`*-there was only one man in that family

(c) *ói*

*binóy ózá óirí*-Binoy is a teacher

*bimól kírání óirò'mi`*-Bimol was a clerk

2 (1) *lò'i*, emphatic replative marker

*lò'i* functions as the emphatic replative marker of the durative aspects of three tenses. In such case, the forms of *lò'i* for the indefinite perfect and durative aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs in *tùno*, primary suffix.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>             |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>íri</i>           | <i>ídúno lò'i</i><br><i>ídúno lò'irè</i><br><i>ídúno lò'irí</i>                    | we/you/they are writing     |
| <i>író'mli</i>       | <i>ídúno lò'író'mi`</i><br><i>ídúno lò'író'mlè</i><br><i>ídúno lò'író'mli</i>      | we/you/they were writing    |
| <i>íkhi`goni`</i>    | <i>ídúno lò'igoni`</i><br><i>ídúno lò'író'mgoni`</i><br><i>ídúno lò'íkhi`goni`</i> | we/you/they will be writing |

2 (2) *ngài*, emphatic suffix

*ngài* functions as the emphatic suffix. It is suffixed to the infinitive forms of the main verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects followed by *odù/osi`*. In such case, *po*, in the main verbs and *-o* in *odù/osi`* may remain or be dropped.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>         |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------|
| <i>íri</i>           | <i>íribo odù ngài/íridúngài</i><br><i>íribo osi` ngài/írísì`ngài</i> | we/you/they are reading |

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>             |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| irə'mli              | irə'mlibə ɔdù ngàl/irə'mli-<br>dùngàl<br>irə'mlibə ɔsi` ngàl/irə'mlisi` ngàl | we/you/they were<br>writing |

## 2 (3) ói with verbs in ni`ngài

Conjugated forms of ói for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs in ni`ngài, "worth doing".

modù kho`anonì`ngài ói-it is worth considering

modù yéngni`ngài óiro`mgoni` it will have been worth seeing

## 3 lák

### 3 (1) lákli, emphatic replative marker

lákli is the present duration form of lák. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of the present perfect durative occurring with Nouns + to`u, auxiliary verbs in tùno, primary suffix.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| i`ràng to`uro`kli    | i`ràng to`udùno lákli | we/you/they have been<br>agitating |
| sébá to`uro`kli      | sébá to`udùno lákli   | we/you/they have been<br>serving   |

### 4 to`u, component of the compound verbs

to`u forms the obligatory component of some simple secondary compound verbs. Some of such verbs in po are shown below :—

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ci`ro`n to`ubo-flatter                | nàpo`n to`ubo-proud                                      |
| i`ràng to`ubo-agitate                 | tho`u to`ubo-appease evil spirit                         |
| lo`uno`m/no`methàk to`ubo-<br>deceive | tho`ugo`n to`ubo-ensure personal<br>security of the king |
| làihò`u to`ubo-suffer from fever      | tho`uràng to`ubo-arrange                                 |
| lán to`ubo-wage war                   | úsín to`ubo-find a scape goat                            |
| moro`i to`ubo-argue                   | wàkhò`n to`ubo-think                                     |

Noun words of Indo-Aryan origin form the compound verbs with to`u.

bonán to'ubo-spell a word  
 bártón to'ubo-invite  
 bicár to'ubo-hear a case in the  
 court

pro'mán to'ubo-prove  
 púzá to'ubo-worship

phágí to'ubo-cut jokes  
 phársí to'ubo-hang till death  
 sébá to'ubo-serve

sói to'ubo-append signature  
 zói to'ubo-conquer

Compound verbs with to'u express the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses when to'u is conjugated for such aspects of these tenses.

i'ràng to'urè-we/you/they have agitated  
 tho'uràng to'urè-mi'-we/you/they arranged

#### 4 (2) to'u, component of the verbal compounds

to'u forms the obligatory component of the verbal compounds expressing some relational words. In such case, conjugated forms of to'u for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the main verbs+relational words.

khàrò'p to'urè

khàto'k to'urè

khàrí khàrí to'urè

khàbói khàdóbói to'urè

} it has been a little bitter

khàbói làkpói to'urè

khàgúm khàdógúm to'urè

khàgúm lákkúm to'urè

yo'unì'ngci't to'urè

} we/you/they have been on the  
 verge of reaching

yo'unì'ng yo'umàng to'urè

#### 5 ngo'm

##### 5 (1) Conjugated forms of ngo'm

ngo'm takes the following conjugated forms :—

(a) ngo'mgonì, "can" (future indefinite form)

(b) ngo'mlo'mgonì, "could" (future perfect form)

##### 5 (2) ngo'mgnì, can

ngo'mgonì "can" expresses four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

páró'mbo ngo'mgoni`-we/you/they can have read  
 pákhi`bo ngo'mgoni`-we/you/they can be reading

(3) ngo'mlo'mgoni`, could

ngo'mlo'mgoni`, "could" expresses perfect aspect occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-we/you/they should have read  
 sábo ngo'mlo'mgoni`-we/you/they could have made

5 (4) ngo'm expressing 'able'

Ngo'm expresses "able" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present and past tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of ngo'm for these aspects of the two tenses occur with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo ngo'mlè-we/you/they have been able to read  
 pábo ngo'mlè-we/you/they had been able to read

6 tho`k

6 (1) tho`k:i`, "should"

Present indefinite form of tho`k is tho`k:i`, "should"

tho`k:i`, "should" expresses four aspects occurring with the main verbs in such aspects and pho'm, primary suffix.

páró'mpho'm tho`k:i`-we/you/they should have read  
 pákhi`pho'm tho`k:i`-we/you/they should be reading

7 yá

7 (1) Conjugative forms of yá

yá takes the following conjugated forms :—

(a) yá-i`, 'may' (present indefinite forms)

(b) yáro'mgoni`, 'might' (future perfect form)

7 (2) yá:i`, may

yá:i`, 'may' expresses four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

páró'mbo yá:i`-we/you/they may have read  
 pákhi`bo yá:i`-we/you/they may be reading

7 (3) yáro'mgoni`, might

yáro'mgoni`, "might" expresses perfect aspects occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs,

pábo yáro'mgoni`-we/you/they might have read  
 sábo yáro'mgoni-we/you/they might have made

**7 (4) yá expressing "possible"**

yá expresses "possible" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the present and past tenses occurring with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

yári, present durative form expresses "possible" in the present indefinite, yáro'mi, past indefinite form expresses "possible" in such tense aspect.

pábo yári-it is possible to read

pábo yáro'mi-it was possible to read

Conjugated forms of yá for the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses express "possible" in such aspects of these tenses.

pábo yárè-it has been possible to read

pábo yáro'mlè-it had been possible to read

**8 tá**

**8 (1) tá with the Nominal forms**

tá expresses "be" in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of tá for these aspects of the three tenses occur with the nouns used as the subjective complements.

birén phàdo`k tárè-Biren has been a prisoner

bínóy,di` lo`ibàk moca tá,i`-Binoy is a gentle man

pùng mongà tárogoni`-it will be five o'clock.

**8 (2) tá, obligative tense**

tá, obligative tense expresses the indefinite aspect. In such case, conjugated forms of tá for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses occur with the infinitive form of the main verbs.

pábo tá:i`/tárè-we/you/they have to read

pábo táro'mi`/táro'mlè-we/you/they had to read

pábo tágoni`/táro'mgoni`-we/you/they will have to read

## 9 Auxillary Verbs as the Emphasisers

Auxiliary verbs other than lá and ngo'm function as the emphasisers forming the components of the emphatic verbal compounds in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms. They occur as the emphatic replative markers of the tenses, tense forms, and verbal forms. Use of the the auxiliary as the emphasisers will be shown in the next Section on the "Emphatic Verbs".

### EMPHATIC VERBS

4. 1. 2. 6. 2 Verbs in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms signify emphasis on their meaning taking emphasisers. Such emphasisers may be classified into two groups viz., (a) emphatic infixes and (b) emphatic suffixes.

#### 4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 1 *Emphatic Infixes*

Emphatic infixes are the monosyllabic forms, They precede the markers of the present/past tense and also the markers of aspects for the futures tense and tense forms.

The following components are also used as the emphatic infixes :—

- (a) markers of the durative and perfect durative aspects of the three tenses
- (b) four relational words viz., ci'n, ko't, to'k and tho

#### 1 Emphatic Infixes

##### 1 (i) kài, to't, tèk, tù

kài, to't, tèk and tù occur with a few verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| kàoro'mi`            | kàokhàiro'mi`         | we/you/they kicked |
|                      | kàotho'tlo'mi`        |                    |
|                      | kàothèklo'mi`         |                    |
|                      | kàothùro'mi`          |                    |

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>  | <i>meanings</i>      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| yàn:goni`            | yànkhaìgoni`<br>yàntho`tkoni`<br>yànthèkkoni`<br>yànthùgoni` | we/you/they will cut |

## 1 (2/1) khi`

khi` occurs with the verbs in the following tenses :—

- (a) Verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the past tense
- (b) Verbs in the future perfect

*Examples :—*

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>            |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) thàro`mi`        | thàkhi`ro`mi`         | we/you/they sent           |
| thàro`mlè            | thàkhi`ro`mlè         | we/you/they had sent       |
| (b) thàro`mgoni`     | thàkhi`ro`mgoni`      | we/you/they will have sent |

## 1 (2/2) khi` as the emphatic replative marker of the past tense

khi` emphatic infix functions as the emphatic replative marker of the past tense. In such case, khi` may replace lo`m, marker of the past tense in the verbs in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>          |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| thàro`mi`            | thàkhi`               | we/you/they sent         |
| thàro`mlè            | thà khre`             | we/you/they had sent     |
| thàro`mli`           | thàkhri`              | we/you/they were sending |

## 1 (2/3) lo, lo`m, li

lo`m and li occur with verbs in the aspects of the future tense shown against them below:—

(V = Verb in the future tense)

- (a) V, indefinite/perfect + lo
- (b) V, durative + lo`m
- (c) V, perfect/durative/perfect durative + li



*Examples : —*

| <i>general forms</i>                                      | <i>emphatic forms</i>   | <i>meanings</i>  |
|---|---|--|
| (a) thàgoni`<br>thàro`mgoni`                              | thàrogoni`<br>thàro`mlogoni`                                  | we/you/they will send<br>we/you/they will have sent  |
| (b) thàkhi`goni`  | thàro`mkhi`goni`  | we/you/they will be sending ?  |
| (c) thàro`mgoni`<br>thàkhi`goni`<br>thàro`kkhi`-<br>goni` | thàro`mgodo`uri<br>thàkhigodo`uri<br>thàro`kkhi`go-<br>do`uri | we/you/they will have sent<br>we/you/they will be sending ?<br>we/you/they will have been<br>sending |

## 2 Markers of Tense Aspects used as the Emphatic Infixes

Markers of the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and future tenses and also the markers of the past durative function as the emphatic infixes occurring with stative verbs in the indefinite aspect of three tenses.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>            | <i>meanings</i> |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| cáowi`               | cáori<br>cáoro`klí               | it was big      |
| cáoro`mi`            | cáoro`mli                        | it was big      |
| cáogoni`             | cáokhi`goni`<br>cáoro`kkhi`goni` | it will be big  |

## 3 Relational Words used as the Emphatic Infixes

ci`n, ko`t, to`k and tho are the relational words. They also function as the emphatic infixes occurring with a few functive verbs in the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

| <i>general forms</i>       | <i>emphatic forms</i>           | <i>meanings</i>                                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| ci`n phàrè<br>pho`tkoni`   | phàzi`nlè<br>pho`tci`n:goni`    | we/you/they have been caught<br>it will be stitched |
| ko`t kho`nlè<br>línglo`mi` | kho`n:go`tlè<br>língkho`tlo`mi` | it has been selected<br>it was established          |
| to`k o kárè<br>yónlo`mi`   | káotho`klè<br>yóntho`klo`mi`    | we/you/they have forgotten<br>we/you/they sold      |

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| tho                  | khə̀'nbə'mi`          | we/you/they thought                |
|                      | phət:kəni`            | we/you/they will make a<br>passage |

#### 4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 2 EMPHATIC SUFFIXES

‡ kə̀, nə, nə, pə̀, tə, tənə. to`, yè

kə̀, nə, nə, pə̀, tə, tənə, to` and yè are emphatic suffixes. They occur with the verbs in the indefinite and durative aspects of the three tense with varying degrees of emphasis on such verbs. Emphatic suffixes other than yè also occur with verbs in the perfect aspect of the three tenses.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>   | <i>meanings</i>          |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------|
| iri                  | iriko`<br>irino<br>irinè<br>iribo`<br>irido<br>iridənə<br>irido`<br>iriyé                   | we/you/they are writing  |
| iro'mli              | iro'mliko`<br>iro'mlino<br>iro'mlinè<br>iro'mlibo`<br>iro'mlido<br>iro'mlidənə<br>iro'mliyé | we/you/they were writing |

#### EMPHATIC MARKERS

4. 1. 2. 6. 2. 3 The following components are used as the emphatic markers of (a) tenses, (b) tense forms, and (c) verbal forms :—

- (a) Markers of moods—kè, si`, sənù, markers of the hortative mood  
o`, marker of the imperative mood

- (b) marker of negation—to, marker of negation for present and past tenses
- (c) additive infixes—khi`, li
- (d) auxiliary verbs—lo'i, lák, ni`, no`, ngàì, óí, tá, tho`k, yá

# 1. Additive Infix and Auxiliary Verbs as the Emphatic Markers of the Tenses

## (a) khi`, emphatic marker of past tense

khi`, additive infix functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the past tense. In such case, khi` may replace lo'm, marker of past tense in the aspects of the past tense other than the perfect durative aspect.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>          |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| iro'mi`              | ikhi`                 | we/you/they wrote        |
| iro'mlè              | ikhrè                 | we/you/they had written  |
| iro'mli              | ikhri`                | we/you/they were writing |

## (b) lo'i, emphatic marker of durative aspect of the tenses

lo'i, auxiliary verb functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the durative aspect of the three tenses. In such case, conjugated forms of lo'i for the indefinite, perfect and durative aspects of the three tenses occur with main verbs in túno, primary suffix.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>             |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| iri                  | idúno lo'i            | we/you/they are writing     |
|                      | idúno lo'irè          |                             |
|                      | idúno lo'iri          |                             |
| iro'mli              | idúno lo'iro'mi`      | we/you/they were writing    |
|                      | idúno lo'iro'mlè      |                             |
|                      | idúno lo'iro'mli      |                             |
| ikhi`goni`           | idúno lo'igoni`       | we/you/they will be writing |
|                      | idúno lo'iro'mgoni`   |                             |
|                      | idúno lo'ikhi`goni`   |                             |

## (c) lákli, emphatic marker of present perfect durative

lákli, is the present durative form of lák, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replacive marker of the present perfect

**durative occurring with Noun + to'u, auxiliary verb in túno, primary suffix.**

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| i'ràng to'uro'kli    | i'ràng to'udúno lákli | we/you/they have been<br>agitating |
| sébá to'uro'kli      | sébá to'udúno lákli   | we/you/they have been<br>serving   |

## 2 Emphatic Replative Marker of Tense Forms

### (a/1) tho'ktè, emphatic marker of "must"

tho'ktè is the negative present indefinite form of tho'k, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of "must" in the indefinite and perfect aspects occurring with the negative verbs in such aspects, to, negation and pho'm primary suffix.

| <i>general forms</i>   | <i>emphatic forms</i>        | <i>meanings</i>                |
|------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| kho'nggodo'uboni'      | kho'ngdopho'm tho'ktè        | we/you/they must know          |
| kho'nglo'mgodo'u-boni' | kho'nglo'mdopho'm<br>tho'ktè | we/you/they must have<br>known |

### (a/2) yádè/yároi, emphatic marker of "must"

yádè is the negative present indefinite form of yá, auxiliary verb. yároi is the negative future indefinite form of yá.

yádè/yároi functions as the emphatic replative marker of "must" in the four aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in such aspects and to, negation.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>             | <i>meanings</i>                  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| iro'mgodo'uboni'     | iro'mdobo yádè<br>iro'mdobo yároi | we/you/they must have<br>written |
| ikhi'godo'uboni'     | ikhi'dobo yádè<br>ikhi'dobo yároi | we/you/they must be wri-<br>ting |

### (b/1) tá:i', emphatic marker of "should"

tá:i', is the present indefinite form of tá, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker of "should" in the

perfect, durative and perfect durative aspects occurring with the infinitive forms of the main verbs in such aspects.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                 |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| író'mpho'm tho'k:i`  | író'mbo tá:i`         | we/you/they should have written |
| íkhí'pho'm tho'k:i`  | íkhí'bo tá:i`         | we/you/they should be writing   |

(b/2) Markers of Hortative and Imperative Moods as emphatic markers of "should"

Markers of the hortative and imperative moods function as the emphatic replacive markers of "should" in the four aspects and the interrogation occurring with the interrogative verbs in these aspects. In such case *kè*, hortative mood first person express "should" in the second person and *—o`*, imperative mood express 'should' in the first person.

Emphatic forms in *lá*, general interrogation

- íkhí'si`rá/íkhó`rá—should we be writing ?
- íkhí`gèrá—should you be writing
- íkhí`sonúrá—should he/they be writing ?

Emphatic forms in *kè*, qualified interrogation

- íkhí'si`gè/íkhó`gè—why should we be writing ?
- íkhí`gègè—why should you be writing ?
- íkhí`sonùgè—why should he/they be writing ?

(b/3) *to*, emphatic marker of "should"

*to*, marker of negation functions as the emphatic marker of "should" and the qualified interrogation. In such case, *to* occur with (a) *ni`*, auxiliary verbs or with (b) the infinitive form of the verbs in *di`*, emphatic case marker.

| <i>general forms</i>      | <i>emphatic forms</i>    | <i>meanings</i>      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| cò'ttpho'm tho'k-<br>pogè | cò'ttoni`<br>cò'ttobodi` | why should not we go |

### 3 Emphatic Replacive Markers of the Verbs

## 3 (1) Emphatic Markers replacing—i, general marker

The five auxiliary verb *viá.*, *ni.*, *ngài ói*, *tá* and *to'u* function as the emphatic replacive markers of the verbs in the present and past tenses. They may thus be used in place of *i*, general marker of the verbs in the present and past tenses. *tá* occurs as *tái* (present indefinite form) and *to'u* takes the conjugated forms for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses.

(a) *ni*

*ni*, occurs with of the following types of verbs :—

- (i) infinitive forms of the main verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses.
- (ii) infinitive forms of the main verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses followed by *po't*, thing, *zàt*, variety, *odù*, that, or *osi*, this (*po* in the main verbs and — *o* in *odù/osi* may remain or be dropped).

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>   | <i>meanings</i>             |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>iri</i>           | <i>iriboni</i><br><i>iribopo'tni/iripo'tni</i><br><i>iribozàtni/irizàtni</i><br><i>iribo odù ni/iridùni</i><br><i>i ibo osi ni/irisi'ni</i>   | we/you/they are writing     |
| <i>iro'mli</i>       | <i>iro'mliboni</i><br><i>iro'mlibopo'tni/iro'-<br/>mlipo'tni</i><br><i>iro'mlibozàtni/iro'mlizàtni</i><br><i>iro'mlibo odù ni/iro'mlidùni</i><br><i>iro'mlibo osi'ni,iro'mlisi'ni</i> | we/you/they were<br>writing |

(a/1) *nottè*

*nottè*, is the negative present indefinite form of *ni*. It occur with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in the indefinite aspects of the present and past tense

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>       | <i>meanings</i>  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| <i>kho'oggi</i>      | <i>kho'ngdobo nottè</i>     | we/you/they know |
| <i>kho'nglo'mi</i>   | <i>kho'nglo'mdobo nottè</i> | we/you/they knew |

(b) *ngài*

*ngài*, occurs with the infinitive forms of the verbs in the durative and perfect durative aspects of the present and past tenses followed by *odù*, that or *osi*, this. In such case, *po* in the main verbs and —o in *odù/osi* may remain or be dropped.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>                    | <i>meanings</i>  |
|----------------------|--|------------------|
| <i>iri</i>           | <i>iribo odù ngài/iridùngài</i>          | we/you/they are  |
|                      | <i>iribo osi ngài/irisi ngài</i>         | writing          |
| <i>iro'mli</i>       | <i>iro'mlibo odù ngài/iro'mlidùngài</i>  | we/you/they were |
|                      | <i>iro'mlibo osi ngài/iro'mlisi ngài</i> | writing          |

(c) *ói, tái*

*ói* and *tái* are suffixed to the infinitive forms of the main verbs in the four aspects of the present and past tenses. In such case, these verbal compounds with *ói/tái* are used only in the second and third persons.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>iri</i>           | <i>iribói</i>         | you/they are writing  |
|                      | <i>iribodái</i>       |                       |
| <i>iro'mli</i>       | <i>iro'mlibói</i>     | you/they were writing |
|                      | <i>iro'mlibodái</i>   |                       |

(d) *to'udè*

*to'udè* is the negative present indefinite form of *to'u*, auxiliary verb. It occurs with the infinitive forms of the negative verbs in the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>        | <i>meanings</i>  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>kho'nggi</i>      | <i>kho'ngdobo to'udè</i>     | we/you/they know |
| <i>kho'nglo'mi</i>   | <i>kho'nglo'mdobo to'udè</i> | we/you/they knew |

(d/1) *to'u* with the Reduplicated Compound Verbs

Negative forms of *to'u*, auxiliary verb for the indefinite and perfect aspects of the three tenses negate the reduplicated compound verbs in these aspects of the three tenses. In such case, these reduplicated compound verbs take infinitive forms.

| <i>general forms</i>        | <i>emphatic forms</i>              | <i>meanings</i>           |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>kho'iràng kho'isáodè</i> | <i>kho'iràng kho'isáobo to'udè</i> | we/you/they are not moody |

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i>         | <i>meanings</i>                                      |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| lò'isì' lò'ithò'ndè  | lò'isì' lò'ithò'nbò<br>tò'udè | we/you/they do not<br>praise                         |
| lò'mkèt lò'mháidè    | lò'mkèt lò'mháibo<br>tò'udè   | we/you/they are not<br>obstinate                     |
| pùkmén páoméndè      | pùkmén páoménbò<br>tò'udè     | we/you/they do not<br>console                        |
| tì'nzén làicèndè     | tì'nzén làicènbò<br>tò'udè    | we/you/they do not<br>suffer from chronic<br>disease |

### 3 (2) Emphatic Markers replacing *ni'*, general marker

#### (a) —i', emphatic replative marker

—i', general marker of the verbs in the present and past tenses functions as the emphatic replative marker of the verbs in the aspect of the future tense other than the indefinite aspect. In such case, these emphatic verbs take *li*, emphatic infix,

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| író'ngónì'           | író'ngòdò'urì         | we/you/they will have written      |
| ìkhi'gónì'           | ìkhi'gòdò'urì         | we/you/they will be writing        |
| író'kkhi'gónì'       | író'kkhi'gòdò'urì     | we/you/they will have been writing |

#### (b) nòttè, emphatic replative marker

*nòttè* is the negative present indefinite form of *ni'*, auxiliary verb. It functions as the emphatic replative marker occurring with the infinitive form of the negative verb in the future indefinite.

| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| kho'ngónì'           | kho'nglòido'ubò nòttè | we/you/they will know |

#### 3 no' replacing *kè*, marker of qualified interrogation

*no'* functions as the emphatic replative marker of the qualified interrogation. In such case, *no'* may replace *kè*, marker of qualified interrogation in the verbs in the aspects of the three tenses other than the perfect aspect.



| <i>general forms</i> | <i>emphatic forms</i> | <i>meanings</i>                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| iribogè              | iribono`              | why are we/you/they writing       |
| iro`mlibogè          | iro`mlibono`          | why were we/you/they writing      |
| ikhi`godogè          | ikhi`godobono`        | why will we/you/they be writing ? |

#### 4. 1. 2. 6. 3 COORDINATION OF VERBS

In a sentence with more than one verb, such verbs can be conjoined by using *omsùng* ‘and’ when the Subject is the same.

Shám lák:i` + Shyam pho`mi` > Shyam lák:i` *omsùng* phàmi`-  
‘‘Shyam comes and sits’’

Rámno págoni` + Rámno igoni` > Rámno págoni` *omsùng* igoni`-‘‘Ram will read and write’’

When there are more than one verbal compound in the same sentence, they may also be conjoined by using *omsùng*, ‘and’ provided the subject is the same. In such case, the auxiliary verb in the first verbal compound is deleted.

mohàk pábo ngo`mgoni` + mohàk íbo ngo`mgoni` > mohàk pábo *omsùng* íbo ngo`mgoni`-‘‘he can read and write’’.

mohàk láklo`mbo yá:i` + mohàk pho`mlo`mbo yá:i` > mohàk láklo`mbo *omsùng* pho`mlo`mbo yá:i`-‘‘he may have come and sat’’.

### DERIVATIVES

4. 1. 2. 6. 4 Verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers and modifiers are derived from the verbs. Some adverbs and conjunctions are also derived from the verbs.

#### 1. Modifiers

Modifiers are derived from the roots of verbs by adding to such roots the following markers :—

(a) *logo*, ‘after doing’

(b) *lo`mdáido*, ‘on the eve of doing’

- (c) *nobo*, 'in order to do' (*no* in *nobo* may be repeated)
- (d) *podɔ*, 'in doing' (*po*, marker of infinitive + *to*, locative)
- (e) *túnɔ/tónɔ/no*, 'doing' (*no* cases reduplication of the modifiers)
- (f) *no*, "ly" as "kindly" (*no* occurs only with the stative verbs)

*Examples :—*

- (a) *párago*, after reading
- (b) *páro'mdáido*-on the eve of reading
- (c) *pá:nónobo*-in order to read
- (d) *pábodo*-in reading
- (e) *pádúnɔ/pádónɔ/páno páno*-reading
- (f) *páno*-thinly  
*páknɔ*-widely

*débéɛ cāk cārago lákkoni*ⁱ-Deben will come after taking his meal

*dámúnɔ sír'ómdáido nóng táro'mi*ⁱ-it rained on the eve of Damu's death

*gópáno pá:á pá:nónobo màgi kádo pho'mlo'mi*ⁱ-Gopal sat in his room to read his lessons.

*mádho'pno thəbo'k sùbodo ɔpo'nbo khəro théngnəre'mi*ⁱ-Madhop met some obstacles in doing that work

*módhúnɔ wàri' pádúnɔ/pádónɔ/páno páno moto'm lèno'mi*ⁱ-Modhu spent his times reading the story

*syámno tò'pno cə'tlo'mi*ⁱ-Shyam went slowly.

**1 (2) Segmental similarity between the modifiers in *no* and primary/derived adverbs in *no***

There is segmental similarity between the modifiers in *no* "ly" as in "kindly" and the primary/derived adverbs in *no*, instrumental.

**(a) modifiers in *no***

*cúmno*-correctly

*cèno*-firmly

*ko'mno*-loosely

*síngno*-wisely

*tò'pno*-slowly

*tèno*-briefly

lúmno-heavily  
lâino-easily  
nânno-neatly  
pânno-thinly  
pâkno-widely

tônno-humbly  
tho'uno-bravely  
thânno-thickly  
tho'tno-tenderly  
wángno-highly

- (b) Primary adverbs in no  
hénno-more

yámno-much, very

- (c) derived adverbs in no

hánno-already  
kónno-later  
lâpno-far  
no'kno-near  
phono-well

tóino-often  
tháino-long ago  
thino-ill  
thúno-soon  
yàngno-fast

### 1 (3) co/pi', honorific person

co, honorific first person and pi', honorific second/third person may occur with the verbal modifiers other than those in no, "by" as in "kindly". In such case, these modifiers have accord with the persons of the subjects in the sentences.

*Forms in co*

*Forms in pi'*

*meanings*

irorogo

ibi'rogo

after writing

iro'mdáido

ibi'ro'mdáido

on the eve of writing

izono

ibi'no

in order to write

izobodo

ibi'bodo

in writing

izodúno

ibi'dúno

writing

o'i cāk cāzorogo cō'tcogē-let me go after having meal

o'ina thobō'k sūzorō'mdáido odo'mbú kō'uzō'i-I call you on the eve of my doing the work

odo'mno bínóybú pángbi'nobō bírén thàbi'ro'kri'-you send Biren to help Binoy

odo'mao so'iréng ibi'bodo káncipúr ni'si'ngbi'yù-Please remember Kanchipur in writing the poems

odo'mno sén thàbi'ro'ktúno o'ikho'ibú pángbi'khi'-you helped us sending money to us

## 2 to, negation with the Derivatives

to, marker of negation occurs with the five types of the derivatives viz., verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers, adverbs, conjunctions and modifiers.

## 2 (1) to, negation with the verbal nouns

to, negation occurs with some verbal nouns in po.  
 kho`ngdobo, ignorance; kho`ngdobodì` pàmbo`i omo ni`-  
 ignorance is bliss  
 ngo`mdobo; inability; ngo`mdobodì` ngàkpi`goni`-inability  
 will be excused  
 óidobo, lie; óidobo ngànggonù-don't tell lies  
 óitho`ktobo, impossibility; óitho`ktobodì` búdúsíngí dèk-  
 sɔnárídoto yáowi-impossibility is found only in the dictionary of the fools  
 pángdobo, cowardice; pángdobono i`káibo no`ngbo`nli-  
 cowardice brings shame.  
 pëndobo, discontent; pëndobono i`ràng odù  
 ho`uho`nbóni`-discontent causes the agitation.  
 séngdobo, impurity; séngdobodì` ɔséagbodagi khèuno`i-  
 impurity is different from purity

## 2 (2) to, negation with the verbal qualifiers

to, negation occurs with some functive verbal qualifiers in li, durative aspect and po. In such case, these qualifiers express perfect aspect.

kho`ngdribo wàpho`m-unknown matter  
 li`dribo wàri`-untold story  
 lóidribo thobo`k-unfinished task  
 po`ktribo ɔngàng-unborn baby  
 pho`ngdribo láiri`k-unpublished book  
 pho`tribo phí-unstitched cloth  
 phùtribo yérùm-unboiled egg

## 2. (3) to with the adverbs

to, negation occurs with a few derived adverbs,  
 nɔttɔno-`except` (ni, be)

photto'no-"ill" (pho, good) ; məkho'ino módhúbú pho'ttono  
ngàngno'-they speak ill of Modhu

yámdonq-"less" ( yám, many ) ; mádho'pti` yámdono  
pho'ngi`-Madhop gets less

yámdro'bodo-"at least" ; yámdro'bodo bírenno lúpà torá  
pho'nggoni`-Biren will get at least ten rupees

i'kho'ng kho'ng:ho`udono-"all of sudden" (kho'ng, know)

i'to't to'ttono-"often" (to't, break)

## 2 (4) to with the conjunctions

to, negation occurs with a few derived conjunctions.  
nottro'go-"or" (ni`, be) ; ram nottro'go syám-Ram or  
Shyam

nottro'bodi`-"if not", "otherwise" ; pábúngi páoták insi`,  
nottro'bodi` sáogoni`-let us obey our father's advice, other-  
wise he will be angry

lá nottro'go... lá omo, "either ... or", módhúrá nottro'go  
mádho'plá omo either Modhu or Madhop

to nottono... sù, "not only but also" ; rámta nottono syámsù  
cotpo yá:i`-not only Ram but also Shyam may go

## 2 (5) to with the modifiers

to, negation occurs with the modifiers in (a) nobo-"in  
order to do", (b) pado, "in doing" and túno, "doing". In such  
case, túno expresses "without doing" and is changed into tono.

pá:donobo in order not to read

pá:dobodo-in not reading

pá:dono-without reading

bínóyno gópálgó ú:nadonobo moyúmdagi co'ttho'klo'mi`-  
Binoy went out of his home in order not to see Gopal

bírenno so'iréng idobodo po'tthapho'm kho'nglo'mdè-Biren  
was restless in not wrtling poems

gópáino wapho'm odu` kho'ngdonq ngànglo'mi`-Gopal spoke  
without knowing the matter

2 (5/1) *təno*, "without doing" and *təno*, "doing"

There is segmental similarity between *təno*, "without doing" and *təno*, "doing". *tə*, negation is an a'onic syllable and is thus not stressed. *tə* in *təno*, "doing" is compressed from *tú* in *lúno*; "doing" and thus stressed.

*kho'ngdəno*, without knowing

↓

*kho'ngdəno*, knowing

2 (5/2) *cə/pi*, honorific person + *tə* negation

*cə/pi*, honorific person may occur with the negative modifiers

*negative forms*

*negative forms*

*meanings*

in *cə*

in *pi*

*izədəno*

*ibi'dəno*

in order not to write

*izədəbədə*

*ibi'dəbədə*

in not writing

*izədəno*

*ibi'dəno*

without writing

*ə'ino bímólǝ úǝnəzədəno* *ə'igi kádo phə'mzəro'mi* -I sat in my room in order not to see Bimol

*ə'ikho'idí thəbo'k suzəbədə* *po'thəphə'm kho'ngzadə* -we are restless in not doing works

*ə'ikho'ino pánzi yéngdəno iskúlgí zátrá húnəbəni* -we lay the foundation stone of the school without consulting the astrologer

*ədo'mnə bínó bú fəngbi'dəno* *wəphə'i ngəngbi'ri* -you are speaking irrelevant things not to help Binoy

*ədo'mdi' sə'iréng idəbədə* *núgəck núgəbəni'ro'mgoni* -you will have been melancholous in not writing poems

*gópálnə məcànùpə tàkpi'dəno yəm si'dp'kpi'ro'mi* -Gopal dismantled the house without informing his son

## 3 Primary affixes with the Derivatives

Nine primary infixes viz., *cə*, *ci'*, *kə't*, *kài*, *nə*, *pi'*, *tək*, *tə* and *thi'* may occur with some of the verbal nouns, verbal qualifiers and modifiers.

C—, Primary prefix also occurs with some of the verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers.

### 3 (1) Primary Affixes with the Verbal Nouns

— ɔ—ɔcúmbo, truth; ɔcúmbo ngàngs'i, let us speak the truth  
 ɔp'ubo, obstacles; ɔ'p'o'nbasing ɔsi lo'uthókodoboni,  
 these obstacles must be removed.

co— o'izobo, advantage; o'izobo khoro lákkoni,  
 some advantages will come  
 tházobo, confidence; tházobono cánnobo p'ok:h'onli, con-  
 fidence promotes intimacy.

ein— 'ins'inbo, instigation; màikoi khoroɔgi 'insinbono kh'otnobo  
 odu th'ok:h'onbon'i, instigation from some quarters causes  
 the quarrel.

tins'inbo, addition; tins'inbod'i kháidokpɔɔgi kh'ennoni  
 addition is different from subtraction.

ka't— cáokh'otpo, progress; cáokh'otpodi' ɔhúngbono pur'okkon'i  
 changes will bring progress.

thág'otpo, praise; thág'otpodi' láphàobo súmh'otli, praise  
 captivates even the gods.

kai— p'okkhàibo, explosion; hén b'omb pokkhàibono khúnzasing-  
 bú mipáihonli, explosion of the hand granades causes panic  
 among the villagers.

y'ikkhàibo, obstacles; y'ikkhàibono thob'okki kh'ongc'ot  
 t'op:h'onli obstacles delay the progress of the work.

no— kho'nnobo, discussion; kh'onnobono kh'annobo' k'ok:h'onli'  
 discussion removes the difference

tánnobono, competition; tánnobono lolón i'tik cáokh'ot:h'onli;  
 competition promotes trade.

pi— ngàkp'ibo, forgiveness; ngàkp'ibodi' ɔrémbogi khúdo'm n'i,  
 forgiveness is the badge of nobility,

to mb'ibo, teaching; to'mb'ibodi' ɔzagi ma'ho'u n'i, teaching  
 is the duty of the teacher.

tok— cáoth'okpo, pride; cáoth'okpodi' dós ɔmo n'i, pride is a fault.  
 kháid'okpo, subtraction; kháid'okpodi' tins'inbodogi khè-  
 nn'ɔi, subtraction is different from addition.

- tho— c'okthobo, fatigue; c'okthobona bírénbú c'otpa ngo'mh ondré,  
fatigue renders Biren unable to go.  
s'othobo, backwardness, s'othobona cáokh'otpa th'inh'ani,  
backwardness delays progress.
- th'i— khúdóng th'ibo, danger; khúdóng th'ibo pùnmom'ok máiy'o-  
knogodo'ubon'i, all the dangers must be faced.  
no'mth'ibo, foul smell; nomth'ibo odúno mór'om oídúno, due  
to the foul smell.

### 3 (2) Primary Infixes with the Verbal Qualifiers

- o— opumbo ngà, rotten fish;  
ophùtpa yerùm, boiled egg
- co— phozobo loi, beautiful flower,  
thàzobo morùp, reliable friend
- c'in— hàiz'inbo wàr'on, misrepresented statement;  
ph'otc'inlombo phi', stitched cloth
- k'ot— cáokh'otlombo lo'ibák, developed country;  
pakhollobi nupi, nervous woman.
- kài— sàtkàirobo l'oi, blossomed flower;  
sègàirobo phi, torn cloth
- no— cánnorobo morùp, intimate friend,  
kháinnorob'i tallo'i, divorced wife.
- o+no— opánnobo m'is'ok, particular person;  
os'oknobo sénpho'm, fixed amount of money
- pi— cánb'ibo wàho'i, kind words;  
ngàkp'irobo mórán, forgiven offence
- to'k— cáoth'oklombo núpà, proud man;  
'intho'klobbo m'i, excommunicated person
- tho— c'okthorobo núpà, tired man;  
s'otthorobo mopho'm, back-ward area
- thi— sàth'irobo wàpho'm, serious matter;  
to'mthir'obo m'i, cruel person
- ### 3 (3) primary Infixes with the Modifiers
- co— hàizonobo, in order to request;  
thàzodúno, believing
- c'i'n— 'ins'ínlogo, after instigating;  
tí'ns'indúno, adding



- k'ot—cáokh'otnobo, in order to make progress;  
 lingkh'otúno, establishing  
 kái—thúgáirogo, after breaking,  
 yànkhaídúno, cutting ( tree )  
 no—kh'onnonobo, in order to discuss;  
 tá: norogo, after consulting  
 p'i—ngàkp'inobo, in order to forgive;  
 to'mb'irogo, after teaching.  
 to'k—kháido'knobo, in order to substract;  
 láoth'oklago, after announcing  
 tho—c'okthodúno, being tired;  
 wánthorogo, after fainting  
 thi—sáth'irogo, after being serious;  
 to'mth'idúno, being cruel

### 3 (4) Relational Words with the Modifiers

The following relational words may occur with the modifiers other than those in no :—

- (a) c'in, k'ot, t'ok, tho  
 (b) m'on, mi'no  
 (c) m'ingci't, n'ing, m'ang  
 (d) l'op, lí, t'ok, kúm,...lák'kúm, kúm,..., to'gúm, p'oi,...,  
 lák'p'oi, p'oi,..., to'b'oi

#### Examples—

- (a) cóngs'inlago, after jumping inside, cóngth'oklago, after jumping outside, cóngkh'otlago, after jumping upwards, cóngthorogo, after jumping below  
 (b) càm'ondúno, eating two much  
 càm'ianodúno, eating together  
 (c) y'oun'ing'c'it to'uro'mda'ido, on the eve of reaching  
 yo'un'ing yo'umang to'uro'mda'ido  
 (d) khàr'ap to'udono,  
 khàto'k to'udúno  
 khàri' khàri to'udúno being a little  
 khàgúm la'kkúm to'udúno bitter  
 khàgúm khàðogúm to'udúno  
 khàb'oi lák'p'oi to'udúno  
 khàb'oi khàðob'oi to'udúno

## SENTENCE

4:2:1 *Simple Sentence*

The simplest sentence has a nominal word ( noun or noun equivalent ) as a subject and a verb as a predicate

bi'réñ ph'òm'i, Biren sits

módhú lépp'i, Modhu stands

nùpà məcàsi'ng sànnoró'm'i, the boys played;

nóng tágo'ni it will rain.

## 4. 2. 1. 1. 1. Deletion of Subject.

Subject of the verbs in the imperative mood may be deleted.

lèngb'ir'ò. (you) please go

ph'omb'is'i, please be seated

tùmmr'i; (you) sleep

## 4. 2. 1. 2 Adjuncts with N and V

The subject or the predicate or both may have one or more adjuncts before them.

h'oud'ongno c'òt'i, the cat goes

ò p'íkpo h'oud'ongno t'òpno c'òt'i  
small cat slowly goes

"The small cat goes slowly"

màgi' òp'íkpo h'oud'ongno yámno t'òpna c'òt'i  
his small cat very slowly goes.

"his small cat goes very slowly"

The adjuncts to the subject may be verbal qualifiers, possessive noun or other Qualifiers described earlier in the Nominal phrase

Modifying adjuncts may be verbal Qualifiers, nominal modifiers or nouns with the case markers other than the genitive and vocative,

òb'òk ph'òm'òm'i, the grand-mother sat

òb'òk hóúz'íkto tùm'innò ph'òm'òm'i, the grand-mother sat  
silently just now

mohàkno momàgi' monàkto ph'òm'òm'i, he sat near his mother.

màha'k kh'ongno c'òt'òm'i, he went on foot.

mohàk módhúgo sànnom'inn'oi, he plays with Modhu

úgdagi' úná kénli, the leaf falls from the tree

## 4. 2. 1, 3. Sentence with the Complements

## 4. 2. 1. 3. 1 Sentence with the Subjective Complements

Subject + Nominal Complement + n'ì

b'írén l'òumí n'ì, Biren is a peasant

Gópál ózá n'ì, Gopal is a teacher

módhú sí'nm'ì n'ì, Modhu is a worker

The nominal complement does not take sí'ng, plural marker

o'ikh'oi kí'tán'ì n'ì, we are clerks

nokh'oi lúci'ngba n'ì, you are leaders

mokh'oi m'ínáí n'ì, they are servants,

In a sentence with subject + nominal complement + n'ì, the complement may be defined by possessive pronouns and verbal qualifiers,

b'ínóy òig'ì mósúp n'ì, Binoy is my friend

módhóp òphóbó m'ì n'ì, Madhop is a good person

## 2(1) Subject+Verbal Noun+n'ì

In a sentence with subject+verbal noun+n'ì, the subject is defined by os'ì this/these and the verbal noun is qualified by, odu; that/those or by verbal qualifiers and odù, that/those.

lól os'ì onzàngbó odù n'ì, this flower is the one that is red

ngà os'ì opúmto odù n'ì- this fish is the one that is rotten

The verbal nouns in the above sentence type may express the past indefinite taking the marker of such tense aspect.

núpá os'ì ngoràng lál'c'imbó odù n'ì, this man is the one who came yesterday

y'otpák os'ì ngoràng p'ir'ombó odù n'ì, this spade is the one that was given yesterday

The verbal nouns may take p'ì, female marker having concord with the feminine gender of the subject in the sentence.

lúkhrá os'ì làiréb'ì odù n'ì, this widow is the one who is poor

núp'ì os'ì houz'ik Ìs'òì s'òk'p'ì odù n'ì, this women is the one who sings now.

nùp'i moca os'i ngoràng láklomb'i odù n'i, this girl is  
the one who came yesterday

### 3. Replacement of n'i by nott'e, lá etc.

In the sentence with subject + Nominal adjunct/verbal  
Noun + n'i, this, n'i may be replaced by the following:—

(a) nottè ( negative )

(b) lá ( interrogative )

(c) notto'rá ( interrogative negative )

Examples:—

(a) bí'rén l'oum'i nottè, Biren is not a peasant

nùpi osi ngoràng láklomb'i odù nottè, this woman is not  
the one who came yesterday

(b) mosi o'k lá, is this a pig ?

nùp'a os'i ongaobo odù rá. is this man the one who is mad ?

(c) modù pát notto'rá, is not this a lake ?

yerùm os'i ophùtpo notto'ro', is not this egg the one that  
is boiled ?

### 4. Replacement of n'i by n'o

In the sentence with subject + nominal complement + n'i,  
this n'i may be replaced by n'o.

modù kono n'o, who is that ?

mosi kori n'o, what is this ?

### 4. 2, 1. 3. 2 Sentence with the Direct Objects

#### (1) Subject+ Direct Object+Verb Tr.

When transitive verbs and their objects occur, the normal word order is subject+object+predicate

nùpà macàno kómlá cá:ro'm'i, the boy ate the orange  
ophobo nùpàmacà os'ino yámna thúmbo kómlá omo cá:  
ro'm'i, this good boy ate a very sweet orange,  
o'tonbo nùpàmacà odùno yámno t'opno thob'ok to'uro'm'i,  
the idle boy started the work very slowly,

#### (2) Object+ Subject+ Verb

In the sentence with subject+object+verb, the object  
may be placed before the subject if emphasis on the subject  
is intended

məs'bu mádh'opno pámi'nè, Madhop likes this.

mocábú rádháno kó'uriyé, Radha is calling her child

mopábú mohákno káorèné, he has forgotten his father

### 3. Deletion of Subject

In the sentence of the above type, the subject is dropped when the idea of passive voice is expressed.

húrāno phàkhrè, the thief had been caught

n'oudo'ng hàtlomli, the cat had been killed

'ingkhón yóno'mlogon'i, the homestead land will have been sold

th'ong l'on'omlogon'i, the door will have been locked

### 4 Optional deletion of object

In the sentence of the above type, object may optionally be dropped,

núpāmocà síngno pá'i, the boys read (lesson)

núp'imocà síngno s'c'i, the girls sing (songs)

### 4, 2 1, 3. 3 Sentences with the Indirect and Direct objects

When there are direct and indirect objects in the sentence, the normal word order is subject+object—dative+object—accusative+transitive verb. Dative object takes to, locative and accusative object takes pú, accusative.

mopāno mocádo sén p'i, the father gives money to his child

mocákno makh'oido tho'uno omosung pángg'on p'ir'om'i, he gave them courage and strength

moyāmbano ophobo ongàng odúdo oco'ubo láir'ik omo p'i, the elder brother gives that good boy a big book

Dative object may be placed before the subject if emphasis on such object is intended.

mong'ondo n'i 'ing kómá p'ibo  
to him is o orange give

It is to him that I give the orange

to you is he pen give  
 It is to you that he gives the pen

#### 4 2. 1, 3. 4 Sentences with the Direct object and objective complement

When there are object and objective complements in the sentences, the normal word order is subject + accusative object + objective complement + verb. Accusative object takes *pú*, accusative. Adjuncts to the nominal units precede such units. Adjuncts to the verb have different positions,

*Khúnzàsingno birénbú lucingbo kh'ònlé,*  
 the villagers have elected Biren their leader  
*ningtho'uno brájobásibú ménzór hàplo'm'i,*  
 the king appointed Brajobasi the Major  
*mohàkki moténgno mádh'oppú 'inàk khúnhon'i,*  
 his help makes Madhop rich

*owàngbo phido'msing os'ino khàgémbobú oth'oibo ningtho'u*  
*omo oih'onl'om'i,* those noble ideals made Khagemba a  
 great king

Verbal nouns can be used as the objective complements. In such case, the verbal nouns occur with the nominal adjuncts.

*gópáino láir'ik pábo mádh'opno ú:ì,* Madhop see Gopal  
 reading a book

*modhúno o'ngk h'otpo syámno yénglo'm'i.* Syam matched  
 Modhu working out the sum

*nùp'imocà odùno mùrùm mùrùm sònbo rádháno tàr'om'i,*  
 Radha heard the girl murmuring something.

#### 4 2.1.4 Position of Adverbs in Simple Sentences

In the sentences with a single nominal phrase and a verb, the adverb precedes the verb or sometimes comes before the subj-ct.

*birén ngoràng lálklo'm'i*  
*ngoràng birén lálklo'm'i*

Biren came yesterday

*binóy os'ido ph'omli*  
*os'ido binóy ph'omli'*

Binoy is sitting here:

In the sentences with the objects and complements or with direct and indirect objects, the adverbs can take several positions. Such positions do not cause any change in the meaning of the different elements of the sentence. But some of such positions of the adverbs signify emphasis on some elements,

rámno bírénbú ɔs'ido kɔ'uro'm'i      Ram called Biren here  
 rámno ɔs'ido bírénbú kɔ'uro'm'i  
 ɔs'ido rámno bírénbú k'ɔuro'm'i      Syam saw Gopal yesterday  
 syámno gópálbú ngoràng úro'm'i  
 syámno ngoràng gópálbú úro'm'i  
 ngoràng syámno gópálbú úro'm'i

### COMPLEX SENTENCE

4.2.2.0 Complex Sentences consist of the following clauses:—

- (a) one or more independent clauses
- (b) one or more dependent clauses

Verbs and Verbal compounds in the independent clauses of the complex sentences are same as those in simple sentences,

Dependent clauses in the complex sentences may be classified into the following groups:—

- (a) Adjective Clauses
- (b) Relative Clauses
- (c) Adverb Clauses

Verbs and Verbal compounds in the adjective, relative and adverb clauses take replative markers in place of 'i/n'i, general marker. Such replative markers with these verbs functions both as the markers of verbal forms and Subordinators. They express "who", "whoever", "which", "whichever", "as much as", "since" etc.

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in 'i/n'i; general marker occur in the Relative clauses. They are followed by the subordinators/functioners.

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the adverb clauses take some replative subordinators. Such subordinators are used in place of i, general marker. They express 'though', 'when', 'whenever', 'while' etc,

## ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

4. 2. 2. 1 Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the adjective clauses take the following replacive markers in place of—*in*, general marker:—

(a) *po*, 'who' "which", "that" (*po*, marker of infinitive)

(b) *pogi*, 'that' (*po*+*ki*, genitive)

*po*, "who", "which", "that" and *pogi*, "that" replaces *in*, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

(a) Verbs in the Present Tense

(b) Verbs in the Past Tense

(c) *tá:l*, obligative tense (*tá*, auxiliary verb)

(d) *th`ok:i*, "should" (*th`ok*, auxiliary verb)

(e) *yá:l*, "may" (*yá*, auxiliary verb)

*po*, "who", "which", "that" and *pogi*, "that" replace *n*, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

(a) Verbs in the future tense

(b) Verbs in *kodó'u*, "must"

(c) *ngó'mgon'i*, 'can' (*ngó'm*, auxiliary verb)

(d) *ngó'mbó'mgon'i*, "could" (*ngó'm*, auxiliary verb)

(e) *yáromgon'i*, 'might' (*yá*, auxiliary verb)

*1 po*, "who" "which" "that"

1 (1) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in *po* expressing tenses/tense forms

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds

*in-in*

*màno h`oi cá:l*. he eats  
the fruit

*màno h`oi càróm'l*, he  
ate the fruit

*màno h`oi càbo tá:l*, he  
has to eat the fruit

Verbal Compounds

*in po*

*màno càbo h`oi*, the fruit  
that he eats

*màno càr`ombó h`oi*, the  
fruit that he ate

*màno càbo tábo h`oi*, the  
fruit that he has to eat.



máno h'oi cábo yá:i, he  
may eat the fruit  
máno h'oi cáph'om th'ok;i  
he should eat the fruit

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in nì

máno h'oi cágon'i,  
he will eat the fruit  
máno h'oi càgod'ubon'i,  
he must eat the fruit  
máno h'oi càbo ngo'mgon'i,  
he can eat the fruit  
máno h'oi càbo ngo'ml'o  
mgon'i,  
he could have eaten the fruit  
máno h'oi cab'o yár mgon'i,  
he might have eaten the fruit

máno cábo yábo h'oi, the  
fruit that he may eat  
máno cáph'om th'okpo h'oi,  
the fruit that he should eat

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in po

máno càgod'ouribo h'oi,  
the fruit that he will eat  
máno càgo'd'ubo h'oi, the  
fruit that he must eat  
máno cábo ng'omgodo'ubo  
h'oi, the fruit that he can eat  
máno cábo ng'oml'omgo-  
d'ubo h'oi, the fruit that  
he could have eaten  
má'o cábo yár'omgodo'ubo  
h'oi, the fruit that he might  
have eaten.

binóyno sábo thùm'ok odù módhúno l'ogon'i, Modhu  
will buy the basket that Binoy makes

càk càrombo l'oisáb'ising odù rádháno pánggon'i, Radha will  
help the girls who took the meal.

débéno yónbo tábo l'ou odú syámno l'ogon'i, Syam will buy  
the paddy land that Deben has to sell.

dóreno pábo yábo lárik odú gópáno p'igon'i, Gopal will  
give the book that Doren may read.

dámúno sùgod'our'ibo thob'ok odù nóbinno yéngs'ingon'i,  
Nobin will supervise the work that Damu will do.

gópáno pábo ng'omgodo'ubo lair'ik odù komóno p'igon'i  
Komol will give the book that Gopal can read.

módhúno yónbo yáro'mgodo'ubo láir'ik odu syámno l'oir'o-  
mgod'ubon'i, Syam would have bought the book that Modhu  
might have sold.

1 (2) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po qualifying the Nouns in  
the cases.

Verb and Verbal Compounds in *pɔ*, 'who', 'which', 'that' qualify the nouns in the cases other than the genitive and the vocative.

(a) nominative

káléndo sàtpɔ l'ɔi, the flower that blooms in the summer  
ngor'ang lakl'ɔmbo nùp'i, the woman who came yesterday.

(b) accusative

biréno pábo lair'ik, the book that Biren reads.

hùrànbəno hàtl'ɔmlɔbo nùp'i, the woman who had been killed by the thief.

(c) instrumental

bimcino ibo kolom the pen with which B'mol writes.

binóyno h'ɔi h'ɔkpo c'ɔi, the stick with which Binoy plucks the fruit.

(d) locative

débénno tùm'l'ɔmbo ká, the room in which Deben slept;  
gópáino c'ɔtkɔdɔ'luribo moph'om, the place where Gopal will go.

(e) ablative

mɔnà kémlɔbo ú:sing, the trees from which the leaves have shed.

sén múb'ikhro'bo nùp'ising, the women from whom money had been snatched away.

(f) dative

mohàk kidom'ok débénno láir'ik p'ikh'ibo nùpà, the man for whom Deben gave the book,

mohàkkidom'ok syámno sén p'ikh'ibo morùp, the friend for whom Syam gave money.

### 1(3) Verbs/Verbal compounds in *pɔ*, expressing Persons and Negation

Some Verbs and Verbal Compounds in *pɔ*, with *cɔ/p'i*, person and *tɔ/l'ɔi*, negation are shown below:—

(a/1) cɔ, honorific first person

o'ino sùzobo thob'ok, the work that I do

o'ino sùzoro'mbo thob'ok, the work that I did

o'ino sùzobo yábo thob'ok, the work that I may do

(a/2) p'i, honorific second/third person

odómno sùb'igadoúribo thob'ok, the work that you will do

od'omno sùb'ibo ng'omgado'ubo thob'ok, the work that you  
can do

odomno sùb'ibo yáro'mgado'ubo thob'ok, the work that  
might have done.

(b/1) to, negation

o'ino sùdobo thob'ok, the work that I do not do

o'ino sùro'mdobo thob'ok, the work that I did not do

o'ino sùdobo yábo thob'ok, the work that may not do

(b/2) cɔ/p'i, person+to, negation

o'ino sùzodobo thob'ok, the work that I do not do

o'ino sùzoro'mdobo thob'ok, the work that I did not do

od'omno sùb'idobo thob'ok, the work that you do not do

od'omno sùb'iro'mdobo thob'ok, the work that you did not  
do

(c/1) loi, negation

o'ino sùbido'uribo thob'ok, the work that I will not do

o'ino sùbo ngo'mlôido'ubo thob'ok, the work that I cannot  
do

o'ino sùbo yár'omlôido'ubo thob'ok, the work that I might  
not have done

(c/2) cɔ/p'i, person+loi, negation

o'ino sùzerôido'uribo thob'ok, the work that I shall not do

o'ino sùzobo ng'omlôido'ubo thob'ok, the work that I cannot do

od'omno sùb'io ng'oml'omlôido'ubo thob'ok, the work that  
you could not have done

ed'omno súb'ibo yáso'mlóidóúbo thob ok, the work that you might not have done

1/4) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po defined by the Modifiers in po. Verbs and Verbal compounds in po defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkpo m'ising, the person who maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkpo yábo m'ising, the persons who may maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thàkkodo'uribo m'ising, the persons who will maintain their families earning the wage

khùtsùmo'n tándúno moyùm thaákp ngo'mgodo'ubo m'ising the persons who can maintain their families earning the wage

( ) Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses

(a) p'i, emphatic replacive marker

p'i, female marker may optionally replace po, 'who', 'w' 'that' in the verbs and verbal compounds when such v and verbal compounds qualify the human nouns in the feminine gender.

| general forms    | emphatic forms    | meanings         |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| thob'ok súro'mbo | thob'ok súro'mb'i | the women        |
| nùp'ising        | nùp'ising         | who did the work |

|                     |                     |                   |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| thob'ok súbo ngo'm- | thob'ok súbo ng'om- | the women who can |
| g'oubo nùp'ising    | godo'ub'i nùp'ising | do the work       |

(b) hàibo, emphatic replacive marker

hàibo is the emphatic replacive marker used in place of po, 'who', 'which', 'that'. It is the indefinite form of hàì, say and functions as the functor or subordinator following the conjugated verbs in the indefinite aspect of the three tenses,

| general tenses | emphatic tenses in | meanings        |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| in po          | in hàibo           |                 |
| màno pángbo    | m'ino páng'i       | the person whom |
| m'i            | hàibo m'i          | he helps        |

|   |                 |                 |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|
| màno pánglò'mbò m̀ì   | màno pánglò'm̀ì | the person whom |
|   | hàibo m̀ì       | he helped       |
| màno pànggòdò'uribòm̀ì                                      | màno pànggoǹì  | the person whom |
|   | hàibòm̀ì        | he will help    |
| birénno pá:i hàibo láir'ík odù gópàldò p'ìrogò, let me give |                 |                 |
| Gopal that book that Biren reads                            |                 |                 |
| syàmna hàtlò'm̀ì hàibo nùpà odù púlísno phàre, the police   |                 |                 |
| has arrested the man who killed Syam                        |                 |                 |

## 2 pogi', that

pogi, that occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds of the adjective clauses in the aspects of the tenses and tense forms. In such case, these verbs and verbal compounds qualify a few inanimate nouns like páo, news, thòud'òk, event, wàr'ì, story etc.

### (a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in i Verbs/Verbal Compounds in pogi

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| mà láksi; he came                   | má lákpogi páo,              |
|                                     | the news that he comes       |
| mà láklò'm̀ì, he came               | mà láklò'mbogi páo,          |
|                                     | the news that he came        |
| mà lákpò:tá'ì he has to come        | mà lákpò:tábogi páo          |
|                                     | the news that he has to come |
| mà lákpo yá:ì, he may come          | mà lákpo yábogi páo, the     |
|                                     | news that he may come        |
| má lákphò'm th'òk'ì, he should come | mà lákphò'm th'òkpogi páo    |
|                                     | the news that he should come |

### (b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in-n'ì Verb/Verbal Compounds in pogi

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| mà lákkan'ì, he will come | ma lakkòdòubogi pao, the |
|                           | news that he will come   |

mà lákkodcubon'i, he  
must come

mà lákpo ngo'mgon'i. he  
can come

mà lákpo ngo'mlo'mgon,i, he  
could have come

mà lákpo yáo'mgon'i. he might  
have come

ma lakko'do'ubogi pao, the  
news that he must come

mà lákpo ngo'mgodo'ubogi,  
páo, the news that he can  
come

mà lákpo ngo'mlo'mgodo'u-  
bagi páo, the news that he  
could have come

mà lákkpo yáo'mgodo'ubo-  
gi páo, the news that he might  
have come

birenno huranbo hatpogi pao syam nosu tai, Syam hears  
the news that Biren killed the thief

binóyno khutsumon phongpho'm th'okpogi wà'i gópáino\* taso  
nú, let Gopal hear the story that Binoy should get his wage

bímólno ko'i pho'bo ngo'mgodo'ubagi páo modhunosu tòi,  
Modhu hears the news that Bimol can catch the tiger

## 2.2) hàibo, emphatic replative marker

hàibo, emphatic replative marker may replace pogi, hat  
In such case, hàibo follows the conjugated verbs and verbal  
compounds of the adjective clauses.

| generals forms                    | emphatic forms                      | meanings                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| mà lákpogi páo                    | mà lák:i hàibo páo                  | the news that he<br>comes    |
| mà lákpo yábogi<br>-pho           | mà lákpa yái hàibo pao              | the news that<br>he may come |
| mà lákpo ngo'mgo-<br>do'ubogi páo | mà lákpo ngo'mgoni-<br>go hàibo páo | the news that he<br>can come |

## RELATIVE CLAUSE

4.2.2.2 Verbs and Verbal Compounds of the relative clauses take the following markers in place of 'i/n'i, general marker:—

- a) po od'i, 'what' (po, marker of infinitive+odù, that )
- b) posing odù, 'whoever' 'those who', 'whatever,, ( po+sing, plural marker+odù, that )

The two replacive markers shown above replace 'i, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- a) Verbs in the present tense
- b) Verbs in the past tense
- c) tá:i, obligative tense (tá, auxiliary verb)
- d) th'ok:i, should (th'ok, auxiliary verb)
- e) yá:i, may (yá, auxiliary verb)

The two replacive markers replace n'i, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- a) Verbs in the future tense
- b) Verbs in kido'ú, must
- c) ngo'mgon'i, can ( ngo'm, auxiliary verb)
- d) ngo'lo'mgon'i, could ( ngom, auxiliary verb)
- e) yáro'mgon'i, might (yá, auxiliary verb)

In the relative clauses, verbs and auxiliary verb in-i/n'i, shown above are followed by the following subordinators/functioners:-

- a) hàibo, that (hà, say+po, marker of infinitive)
- b) mo'dúd'i, that ( modù, that+d'i, emphatic replacive case marker)

1 po odù, what

1(1) Verbs/Verbal Compounds in po od'u expressing tenses and tense forms,

po odù, what refers to the subjects and occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds based on the roots of the transitive verbs.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in -i

màno párá odù tàk:i,  
he teaches the lesson  
màno párá odù tàklo'm`i,  
he taught the lesson  
màno párá odù pábo tá:i,  
he has to read that lesson  
màno párá odù pábo yá:i,  
he may read that lesson  
màno párá odù pápho'm th`ok:i  
he should read that lesson

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in n`i

màno párá odù tàkko`n`i,  
he will teach the lesson  
màno párá odù tàkkodo`ubon`i,  
he must teach that lesson  
màno párá odù tàkpo ngo`mgon`i,  
he can teach that lesson  
màno párá odù tàkpo ngo`mlo`m-  
gon`i, he could have taught the  
lesson  
màno párá odù tàkpo yáro`mgo-  
n`i, he might have taught the  
lesson

bínóyno hàiríbo odù tá:s`i, let us hear what Binoy is saying  
bírénnò pámló`mbo odù mádhópno pírogon`i, Madhop will  
give what Biren wanted

bímólnò to`ubo tábo odù nóbínno to`urogon`i, Nobin will do  
what Bimol has to do,

débénno tàkkodoúr`ibo odù tàsonù, let him hear what Deben  
will teach.

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in po`odù

màno tàkpo odù, what he  
teaches  
màno tàklo`mbo odù,  
what he taught  
màno pábo tábo odù,  
what he has to read  
màno pábo yábo odù,  
what he may read  
màno pápho'm th`okpo odù,  
what he should read

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in podù

màno tàkkodo`uribo odù,  
what he will teach  
màno tàkkodo`ubo odù,  
what he must teach  
màno tàkpo ngo`mgodo`ubo  
odù, what he can teach  
màno tàkpo ngo`mlo`mgo-  
do`ubo odù, what he could  
have taught  
mano takpo yaromgodoubu  
odu, what he might have  
taught



dórenno kha'ngbo ngo'mgodo'ubo odù kl'angde, Doren does not know what he can know,

gópálna ibo yáro'mgodo'ubo odù idè, Gopal does not write what he might have written.

## 1/2) Verbs in po odù, what expressing Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po odù, "what" with co/p'i person and to/lói, negation are shown below:—

(a/1) co, honorific first person

o'no izobo odù, what I write

o'ino izoro'mbo odù, what I write

o'ino izobo yábo odù, what I may write.

(a/2) pi, honorific second/third person

od'omno ib'igodo'ur'ibo odù, what you will write

od'omno ib'ibo ngo'mgodo'ubo odù, what you can write

od'omno ib'ibo yáro'mgodo'ubo odù, what you might have written

(b/1) to, negation

o'ino idobo odù, what I do not write

o'ino iro'mdobo odù, what I did not write

o'ino idobo yábo odù, what I may not write

(b/2) co/p'i, person+to, negation

o'ino izodobo odù, what I do not write

o'ino izoro'mdobo odù, what I did not write

od'omno i'b'idobo odù, what you do not write

od'omno ibiromdobo odu, what you did not write

(c/1) loi, negation

o'ino iroidouribo odu, what I shall not write

o'ino ibo ngo'mlóidobu odù, what I cannot write

o'ino ibo yáro'mlóido'ubo odù, what I might not have written

(c/2) co/p'i, person+loi, negation

o'ino izoroidoribo odù, what I shall not write

o'ino izobo ngo'mlòidòúbo odù, what I cannot write

od'omno ib'iròidòúribo odù, what you will not write

od'omno i'bibo ngo'mlòidòubo odù, what you cannot write

1(3) Verbs in po odù, what defined by the modifiers

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in po odù, "what" defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

khùdò'm p'idùno màno hàibo odù, what he says giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno màno hàibo yábo odù, what he may say giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno màno haigdo'ubo odù, what he will say giving examples

khùdò'm p'idùno nàno hàibo ngo'mgdo'ubo odù, what he can say giving examples.

2 po síng odù, 'whoever' those who, whatever

2(1) Verbs in po síng odù, whoever

po síng odù, "whoever" refers to the human nouns used as the subjects and occurs with the Verbs based on the roots of the Intransitive and transitive verbs

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in—ì

màbù m'ising odùno pànglò'm'ì  
those persons help him

màbù m'ising odùno fànglò'mi,  
those persons helped him

màbù m'ising odùno pàngbo tá:i,  
those persons have to help him

màbù m'ising odùno pàngbo  
yá:i, those persons may help  
him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds

in pòsìng odù

màtù pàngbo síng odùno,  
whoever helps him

màbù fànglò'mbo síng  
odùno, whoever helped  
him

màbù pàngbo tábosìng  
odùno, whoever has to help  
him

màbù pàngbo yábosìng  
odùno, whoever may help  
him

màbù m'ising odùno pángpho'm  
th'ok:í, those person should  
help him

(b) Ve bs/Verbal Compounds  
in n'í

màtù m'ising odùno pánggon'í,  
those persons will help him

màbù m'ising odùno pángbo  
ngo'mgon'í, those persons can  
help him

màbù m'ising odùno pángbo  
yáro'mgon'í, those persons might  
have helped him

biénbù pángbasíng odù màno káo:è, Biren forgets whoever  
help him

cá odù tho'kpo yábo síng odùdo p'is'í, let us give the tea to  
whoever may take it.

débénbù y'okpho'm th'okpsíng odùno màbù tho'uwóidè,  
whoever should look after Deben neglects him

dórénbù dímapúrdó thínb'igado'uribo síng odùno mòng'ondagi  
lùpà tarà pho'nglè, whoever will escort Doren to Dimapur  
has got one hundred rupees from him

gópáltù kó'ubo ngo'mgado'ubosíng odù màno n'ingsíngdè,  
Gopal does not remember whoever can save him.

khùtsùmó'n pho'ngbo yáro'mgado'ubosíng odùno khùtsùmó'n  
tán'ó'mdè, whoever might have got wage did not demand it

2(1/2) Verbs in po síng odù, those who

posing odù, 'those who' refers to the human nouns used as  
the objects. It occurs with the verbs and verbal compounds  
based on the roots of the transitive verbs.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in í

màno m'ising odùb'u páng'í, he  
helps those person

màbù pángpho'm th'okpsíng  
odùno, whoever should help  
him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in po síng odù

màbù pánggado'uribo síng  
odùno, whoever will help him

màbù pángbo ngo'mgado'ubo  
síng odùno, whoever can help  
him

niàbù pángbo yáro'mgado'ubo  
síng odùno, whoever might  
have helped him

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in posing odù

màno pángbo síng odùno,  
those who are helped by  
him

màno m'ising odùbù  
pánglo'm'i, he helped those  
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo  
yá'i, he may help those  
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángpho'm  
th'ok'i, he should help those  
persons

màno pánglo'mbosing odùno,  
those who were helped by him

màno pángbo yábsing odùno,  
those who may be helped by  
him

màno pángpho'm th'okposi'eg  
odùno, those who should be  
helped by him

**(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds**

in n'i

màno m'ising odùbù pánggon'i  
he will help those persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo  
ngo'mgon'i, he can help those  
persons

màno m'ising odùbù pángbo  
yáro'mgon'i,

**Verbal Compounds**

in posingodo

màno pánggodo'uribosing odùno  
those who will be helped by  
him

màno pangbo ngomgodo'ubo  
sing odùno, those who can  
be helped by him

màno pángbo yáro'mgodo'ubo-  
sing odùno, those who might  
have been helped by him

birénno pánglo'mbosing odùbù màno káodè, Biren does not  
forget those who were helped by him.

binóyno y'okpo tábsing odùbù màno tho'uwóldè, Binoy  
neglects those who have to be looked after by him

bimólno 'ikài khúmnopho'm th'okposing odùbù màno ka-  
rémn'oi, Bimol mocks at those who should be respected by  
him

dórénno ú:ngodo'uribo sing odù moyùmdo, lo'ihe'duri', those  
who will be met by Doren are at their homes

púlino phábo ngo'mgodo'ubo sing odù phádrè, police has  
not arrested those who can be arrested.

syámno pángbo yáro'mgodo'ubo sing od'unso mào ú:ro'ndé  
those who might be helped by Syam did not meet him

2(1/3) Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u; whatever  
posing odù, "whatever" refers to the inanimate nouns  
used as the subjects or objects.

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in -'i

màno h'oisíng odù càg'i,  
he eats those fruits

màno ho'isíng odù càro'm'i,  
he eat those fruits

màno ho'isíng odù càbo yá 'i,  
he may ate those fruits

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in n'i

màno h'oisíng odù càgon'i  
he will eat those fruits

màno h'oisíng odù càbo  
ngó'mgon'i, he can eat  
those fruits

mano ho'isíng odù càbo yárom-  
goni, he might have eaten  
those fruits

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in posing od'u

màno càbosing od'u; what-  
ever he eats

màno càro'mbosing od'u,  
whatever he ate

màno càbo yábosing od'u,  
whatever he may eat

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in posing od'u

màno càgodo'uribosing od'u,  
whatever he will eat

màno càbo ngo'mgodo'ubosing  
od'u, whatever he can eat

mano càbo yáro'mgod'ubo ing  
odu, whatever he might have  
eaten

bínōino hàibosing od'u káogonù, don't forget whatever  
Binoy says

birénno tàklo'mbosing od'u n'ingsínggodo'ubon'i, whatever  
Biren taught must be remembered

bímóyno càribosing od'udo cini` hàpkonù. don't mix any  
sugar to whatever Bimol is eating

dórénno íribosing od'u pás'i, let us read whatever Doren is  
writing

débénno ò'igodo'uribosing od'u makhòino tàonù, let them hear whatever Deben will narrate

## 2(2/1) Verbs in posing odù expressing Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u, 'whatever' 'those' who' and 'whatever' express negation taking the markers of negation.

### (a) to, negation

màbù pángdodosing od'uno, whoever do not help him

màbù pánglo'mdobosing od'uno, whoever did not help him

màno pángdobo sing od'uno, those who are not helped by him

màno pánglo'mlobosing od'uno, those who were not helped by him

màno càdodosing od'uno, whatever he does not eat

màno càro'mdobosing od'uno, whatever he did not eat

### (b) loi, negation

màbù pánglòido'uribosing od'uno, whoever will not help him

màbù pángbo ngo'mlòido'uribosing od'uno, whoever cannot help him

màno pánglòido'uribosing od'uno, those who will not be helped by him

màno pángbo ngo'mlòido'ubosing od'uno, those who cannot be helped by him

màno càroido'uribosing od'u, whatever he will not eat

màno càbo ngo'mlòido'ubosing od'u, whatever he cannot eat

## 2(2/2) Verbs in posing odù expressing Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in posing od'u, "whoever" express honorific third person, such person and negation taking the markers of those two features.

ò'ibù pángb'ibo sing od'uno, whoever help me

ò'ib'u pángbidobo sing od'uno' whoever do not help me

màbù pángb'iró'mbosing odùno, whoever helped him

màbù pángb'iró'mdobosing odùno, whoever did not

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in *posing odù*, "those who" and "whatever" express the honorific persons and negation taking the markers of such features.

o'ino pángzobosing odùno, those who are helped by me

o'ino pángzodobosing odùno, those who are not helped by me

od'omno pángbibosing od'uno, those who are helped by you

od'omno pángb'idobosing od'uno, those who are not helped by you

o'ino izobosing od'u. whatever I write

o'ino izodobosing od'u, whatever I do not write

od'omno ib'ibosing od'u, whatever you write

od'omno ib'idobosing od'u, whatever you do not write

## 2(3) Verbs in *posing od'u* defined by modifiers

Some verbs in *posing od'u* defined by the modifiers are shown below:—

kh'udo'm p'idúno màbù tàkposing od'u, whoever teach him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màbù tàklo'mbosing odù, whoever taught him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màno tàkposing od'uno, those who are taught by him giving examples

kh'udo'm p'idúno màno tàklo'mbosing od'uno, those who were by taught him giving examples

kàncipúr s'ingthádúno kóbí kómólno íbosing od'u, whatever Poet Komol writes describing Kanchipur

kàncipúr s'ingthádúno kóbí kómólno iró'mbosing od'u, whatever Poet Komol wrote describing Kanchipur

## 2(4/1) Verbs in *posing od'u*, whoever with-o, primary prefix

Verbs in *posing* *odù*, "whoever," express present perfect taking *o*, primary prefix.

*okh'ongbasing odùdo ho'ngsi*, let us ask whoever have known  
*arákposing odùdo cá p'iktho'kkon'i* tea will be given to  
 whoever have come

*otumbasing odùdo khùtsùmo'n p'irói*, wage will not be given  
 to whoever have slept

2(4/2) Verbs in *posing* *odù*, whatever with *o*, primary prefix

Stative Verbs in *posing* *odù*, "whatever" express present indefinite taking—*o*. primary prefix.

*oháobasing odù càs'i*, let us eat whatever is delicious.

*okhàbasing odù hùido p'igan'i*, the dog will be given whatever is bitter

*othumbasing odù nohàr'oisingno càgon'i*, the youths will eat  
 whatever is sweet.

## 2(5) Emphatic Replative Markers replacing *posing* *odù*

The following emphatic replative markers may be used in place of *posing* *odù*; "whoever" "those who" and "whatever":—

(a) *pomokho'i* (*po*, marker of infinitive + *mokho'i*, emphatic replative plural marker)

(b) *p'ising odù* (*p'i*, female marker + *sing*, plural marker + *odù* that)

(2/5/1) *pomokh'ol* replacing *posing* *odù*, whoever, whatever, and those who

*pomokh'ol* may replace *posing* *odù*, "whoever" "whatever" and "those who".

| general forms            | emphetic forms           | meanings              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>oháobasing odùno</i>  | <i>oháobomokh'oino</i> — | whatever is delicious |
| <i>othumbasing oduno</i> | <i>othumbomokh'oino</i>  | whatever is sweet     |



|                               |                              |                                 |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| okh'ongbosing<br>odùno        | okh'ongbomakh'òino           | whoever have known              |
| orákpasing odùno              | orákpomakh'òino              | whoever have come               |
| màno pángbosing<br>odùno      | màno pángbo-<br>makh'òino    | those who are helped<br>by him  |
| màno pánglóm-<br>bosing odùno | màno pánglómbo-<br>makh'òino | those who were helped<br>by him |

(2/5/2) p'ising odù replacing posing odù, whoever

p'ising odù may replace posing odù, "whoever" when posing odù refers to the human nouns in the feminine gender.

| general forms                   | emphatic forms                   | meanings                    |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ngos'ì lákpasing<br>odùno       | ngos'ì lákp'ising<br>odùno       | whoever come to-<br>day     |
| ngoràng láklóm-<br>bosing odùno | ngoràng láklómb'ì-<br>sing odùno | whoever came yes-<br>terday |

3 hàibo, and modùd'ì expressing "that" (relative pronoun)

"that" (relative pronoun) is expressed by the following markers:—

(a) hàibo (hai, say+po, marker of Infinitive)

(b) modùd'ì (modu, that+di; emphatic case marker)

3(1) hàibo. "that"

hàibo, "that" follows the conjugated Verbs and Verbal Compounds;

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in—ì

mà lák'ì, he comes

mà lákpo tá'ì, he has to  
come

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in—ì followed by hàibo

mà lák'ì hàibo tà'ì, that  
he comes is heard

mà lákpo tá'ì hàibo tà'ì,  
that he has to come is  
heard

mà lákpo yá:ì, he      ma lákpo yá:ì hàibo tà:ì, that he may  
may come      may come is heard

(b) Verbs/Verbal Com-      Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
pounds in-n'ì      in n'ì followed by hàibo

mà lákkan'ì, he will      mà lákkan'ì hàibo tà:ì, that he will  
com      come is heard

mà lákpo ngo'mgon'ì      mà lákpo ngo'mgon'ì hàibo tà:ì. that  
he can come      he can come is heard

gópál lákkan'ì hàibo syámno tà:ì, Syam hears that Gopal  
will come

módhúno modù to'uro'mbo yá:ì hàibo birénno thàzo:ì, Biren  
believes that modhu might have done it

prithibi os'ì tùm'mì hàibo binóyno utkan'ì. Binoy will show  
that earth is round,

3(1/2) hàibo, "that" replaced by hàinno

hàino, emphatic replacive marker is a compound of hàì,  
say and no, Instrumental. hàino may replace hàibo, "that"  
when hàibo follows some verbs and verbal compounds.

| general forms<br>with hàibo         | emphatic forms<br>with hàino        | meanings                             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| mà lák:ì hàibo<br>tà:ì              | mà lák:ì hàino<br>tà:ì              | that he comes is<br>heard            |
| màno hùránlo'mdè<br>hàibo thàzono'ì | màno hùránlo'mdè<br>hàino thàzono'ì | that he did not<br>steal is believed |

3(2) modùd'ì, "that"

modùd'ì, "that" follows the verbs and verbal compounds  
derived from the roots of the stative verbs and modified  
by osúkki motík, "so much".

(a) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in—'ì

mohàk osúkkimot'ik ko'nli, he is  
so much strong

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in-'ì followed by modùd'ì  
mohàk osúkkimot'ik k'onli  
modùd'ì ko'ì phà:ì, he is so  
much strong that he cat-  
ches the tiger.

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo  
yá:'i, he may be so much  
strong

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo  
yá:'i, modúd'i k'o'i phábo ngo'-  
mgon'i. he may be so much  
strong that he can catch the  
tiger

(b) Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in n'i

mohák osùkki mot'ik k'olgon'i,  
he will be so much strong

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in n'i followed by modúd'i

mohák osùkki mot'ik k'olgon'i  
modúdi k'o'i phábo ngo'mgo-  
n'i, he will be so much strong  
that he can catch the tiger

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo  
ngo'mgon'i, he can be so  
much strong

mohák osùkkimot'ik k'onbo  
ngo'mgon'i modúd'i k'o'i phábo  
ngo'mgon'i, he can be so  
much strong that he can eat-  
ch the tiger

débéndi osùkkimot'ik c'okthoré modúd'i wápháobo ngàngdré  
Deben is so much tired that he has not uttered any word

dórénd'i osùkkimot'ik to'mth'i modúd'i mab'ok pháobo tán-  
th'ok:'i, Doren is so much cruel that he even drives out his  
grand-mother

3(2/2) modúd'i, emphatic replative marker

modúd'i also functions as the emphatic replative marker  
replacing hàibo, "that" (the general marker). modúd'i follows  
the verbs and verbal compounds of independent clauses, while  
hàibo follows the verbs and verbal compounds of the relative  
clauses.

general forms  
with hàibo

emphetic forms  
with modúd'i

meanings

mà lák:'i hàibo  
syámno tà:'i

syámno tà:'i modúd'i  
mà lák:'i

Syam hears  
that he comes

màno modù tó'ngon'ì  
hàibo syámno tház'oi

syámno tház'ì  
modúd'ì màno  
modù tó'ngon'ì

Syam be-  
lieves that  
he will do  
that

## ADVERB CLAUSE

4.2.2.3 Verbs of the adverb clauses take the following markers in place of 'i/n'ì, general marker:—

(1) Free Markers replacing -'i/n'ì, general marker in the verbs and verbal compounds in the tenses and tense forms.

(2) Bound markers replacing -'i/n'ì, general marker in the verbs and verbal compounds in the present and past tenses.

### 4.2.2.3.1 Free Markers of the Verbs of the Adverb clauses

Free markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are shown below:—

(a) pò odùk, "as much as" (pò, marker of infinitive+odùk that much)

(b) pòn'ino, "since" (pò+n'ì, "be" verb+nò, instrumental)  
1. pò odùk, as much as

pò odùk, "as much as" replaces -'ì, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the present tense
- 2) Verbs in the past tense
- 3) tá:'ì, obligative tense (tá, auxiliary verb)
- 4) th'òk:'ì, should (th'òk, auxiliary Verb)
- 5) yá:'ì, may (yá, auxiliary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in-'ì

1) i, we/you/they write

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in-pò odùk

ibo odùk, as much as we/  
you/they write

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2) ɪrɔ'mɪ, we/you/they wrote                | ɪrɔ'mbɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as we/you/they wrote               |
| 3) ɪbɔ tɔ:ɪ, we/you/they have to write      | ɪbɔ tɔbɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as we/you/they have to write      |
| 4) ɪphɔ'm th'ok:ɪ, we/you/they should write | ɪphɔ'm th'okpɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as we/you/they should write |
| 5) ɪbɔ yá:ɪ, we/you they may write          | ɪbɔ yábɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as we/you/they may write          |

bírénno n'ombɔ ɔɔɔk syámsù n'om:ɪ, Syam works as much as Biren works

bínóyno mɔcà núngsɪrɔ'mbɔ ɔɔɔk módhúnɔsù núngsɪrɔ'mɪ, modhu loved his child as much as Binoy did

bímóino mádh'oppù pángbɔ yábɔ ɔɔɔk gópáɪnɔsù pángbɔ yá:ɪ, Gorál may help Madhop as much as Bimol may do

(b) pɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as replacing nɪ, general marker

pɔ ɔɔɔk, 'as much as', replaces nɪ, general marker in the following verbs and auxiliary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the future tense
- 2) Verbs in kɔɔɔ'dɔ'u, 'must'
- 3) ngo'mgonɪ. "can" (ngo'm, auxiliary verb)
- 4) ngo'mɔ'ngo'mgonɪ. "could" (ngo'm, auxiliary verb)
- 5) yáɔ'ngo'mgonɪ, "might" (yá, auxiliary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in—nɪ

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in pɔ ɔɔɔk as much as

{1} ɪgon:ɪ we/you/they  
will write

ɪgɔɔ'urɪbɔ ɔɔɔk, as much as  
we/you/they will write

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (2) Igodsuboni, we/you/<br>they must write                   | igodo'ubo, odùk, as much as<br>we/you/they must write                        |
| (3) ibo ngo'mgon'i, we/<br>you/they can write                | ibo ngo'mgodo'ubo odùk, as<br>much as we/you/they can<br>write               |
| (4) ibo ngo'mlo'mgon'i,<br>we/you/they could<br>have written | ibo ngo'mlo'mgodo'ubo<br>odùk, as much as we/you/<br>they could have written |
| (5) ibo yaro'mgon'i, we/<br>you/they might have<br>written   | ibo yaro'mgodo'ubo odùk,<br>as much as we/you/they<br>might have written     |

binóyno n'omgodo'uribo odùk s;ámsù n'omgon'i, Syam will work as much as Binoy will do

birénno péisá tánbo ngo'mgodo'ubo odùk módhúno ngo'mgon'i, Modhu can earn money as much as Biren can do.

1(1/2) pon'ino, since

pon'ino; "since" replaces — i, general marker in the following verbs and auxillary verbs:—

- 1) Verbs in the present tense
- 2) Verbs in the past tense
- 3) tá:i obligative tense (tá, auxillary verb)
- 4) th'ok:i, should (th'ok, auxillary verb)
- 5) yá:i, may (yá, auxillary verb)

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in—i

- 1) i, we/you/they write
- 2) iro'm'i, we/you/they  
write

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
in pon'ino

- ibon'ino, since we/you/they  
write
- iro'mbon'ino, since we/you  
they wrote

3) *ibo tá:ì, we/you/they*  
have to write

*ibo tábon'ino, since we/*  
*you/you/they have to*  
*write*

4) *ipho'm th'ok:ì, we/you/*  
*twey should write*

*ipho'm th'okpon'ino, sin-*  
*ce. we/you/they should*  
*write*

5) *ibo yá:ì, we/you/they*  
may write

*ibo yábon'ino, since we/*  
*you/they may write*

*débénno thob'ok sùbon'ino khùtsùmo'n pho'nggon'ì, since*  
*Deben does the work he will get the wage*

*dórenno mádh'oppù pánglombon'ino, màbù mádh'opno káo-*  
*rói, since Doren helped Madhop, he will not be forgotten by*  
*Madhop*

*dámúno sén pho'ngbo yábon'ino sén pùradobo yá:ì. since*  
*Damu may get money he may not burrow any money*

(b) *pon'ino, 'since' replacing n'ì, general marker*

*pon'ino, "since," replaces n'ì, general marker in the fol-*  
*lowing verbs and auxiliary verbs:—*

1) Verbs in the future tense

2) Verbs in *kodo'u*, "must"

3) *ngo'mgon'ì, "can" ( ngo'm, auxiliary verb )*

4) *ngo'mbo'mgon'ì, "could" (ngo'm. auxiliary verb )*

5) *yáro'mgon'ì, "might" (yá, auxiliary verb )*

Examples:—

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
*in-n'ì*

1) *igon'ì, we/you/they*  
*will write*

2) *igodouboni, we/you/*  
*they must write*

Verbs/Verbal Compounds  
*in pon'ino*

*igodo'uribon'ino, since we/*  
*you/they will write*

*igodo'ubon'ino. since we/you/*  
*they must write*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3) <i>ibò ngò'mgò'nì, wè/you/they</i><br>can write               | <i>ibò ngò'mgòdò'ubò'nìno,</i><br>since we/you/they can<br>write                       |
| 4) <i>ibò ngò'mlò'mgò'nì, wè/you/</i><br>they could have written | <i>ibò ngò'mlò'mgòdò'ubò'nì-</i><br><i>no,</i> since we/you/they<br>could have written |
| 5) <i>ibò yáò'mgò'nì, wè/you/</i><br>they might have written     | <i>ibò yá'ò'mgò'dò'ubò'nì,</i><br>since we/you/they might<br>have written              |

*bìrén cò'tkòdò'uribò'nìno sýámsú cátkò'nì,* since Biren will go Syam will also go

*bínòyno módhúbù pánggòdò'ribò'nìno módhúno gópálgi mòtèng* l'ouroi. Since Binoy can help Modhu, he (Modhu) will not take Gopal's help.

## 2(1/1) Verbs in *pò odùk* and *pòn'ino* expressing Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in *pò odùk*. "as much as" and *pòn'no*, "since" express negation taking the markers of negation.

*màno n'òmdòbo odùk,* as much as he does not work

*màno n'òmdòbo yábo odùk,* as much as he may not work

*màno n'òmdòbò'nò.* since he does not work

*màno n'òmbò ngò'mlòidò'uribò'nìno,* since he cannot work

## 2(1/2) Verbs in *pò oduk* and *pò'ino* expressing Persons, Persons and Negation

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in *pò odùk*, "as much as" and *pòn'ino*, "since" express the honorific persons, such persons and negation taking the markers of such features.

### (a/1) *cò*, honorific first person

*c'ino n'òmzòbò'nìno,* since I work

*c'ino n'òmzòbo odùk,* as much as I work

### (a/2) *cò*, honorific first person + *to*, negation

*c'ino n'òmzòdòbo odùk,* as much as I do not work



a'ino n'omzadobon'ino, since I do not work

(b/1) p'i, honorific second/third person

od'omno n'omb'ibo odük, as much as you work,

od'omno n'ombibon'ino, since you work

(b/2) p'i, honorific second/third person+to, negation

od'omno n'omb'idobo odük, as much as you do not work

od'omno n'omb'idobon'ino, since you do not work

2(2) Verbs in po odük and pon'ino defined by the Modifiers

Verbs in po odük, "as much as" and pon'ino, "since" may be defined by the modifiers.

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo odük, as much as Binoy teaches giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo yábo odük, as much Binoy may teach giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpon'ino, since Binoy teaches giving examples

khüdo'm p'idüno binóyno takpo yábon'ino, since Binoy may teach giving examples

2(3) pon'ino, since replaced by po mör'omno.

po mör'omno, emphatic replacive marker is a compound of po, marker of infinitive, mör'om, reason and no, instrumental. It may replace pon'ino, "since" in the verbs and verbal compounds in the indefinite aspect of the tenses and tense forms.

general forms in  
pon'ino

emphatic forms  
in po mör'omno

meanings

ibon'no

ibo mör'omno

since he writes

iro'mbon'ino

iro'mbo mör'omno

since he wrote

ibo yábon'ino

ibo yábo mör'omno

since he may  
write

#### 4.2.2.3.2 Bound Markers of the Verbs of Adverb Clauses

Bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are compound forms. Final components of such markers are case markers, plural markers and relational words. Initial components of these markers are shown below:—

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1) aspect markers—   | lɔ, perfect aspect<br>li, durative aspect                     |
| 2) other components— | hək, at once<br>nɔ, primary infix<br>pɔ, marker of infinitive |

Bound markers of the verbs of Adverb clauses are shown below:—

(a) Bound Markers with lɔ, perfects aspect

lɔbɔm'ɔktɔdɔ, even if, even though ( lɔ+pɔ, marker of infinitive +m'ɔk, infix+ɔ only.+ɔ, locative )

lɔbɔmɔtúngɔdɔ, after (lɔ+pɔ+mɔtúng, relational word+ɔ)

lɔbɔd'i, subjunctive tense (lɔ+pɔ+d'i, emphatic replacive case marker)

lɔ'mlɔbɔd'i, contingent future perfect tense ( lɔ'm, marker of past tense+lɔbɔd'i)

lɔbɔsù, though, although ( lɔ+pɔ+sù, too )

(b) Bound Markers with li durative aspect

libɔ mɔkh'ɔi, so long as ( li+pɔ+mɔkh'ɔi, emphatic replacive plural marker)

ling'ɔidɔ, while ( li+ng'ɔi, infix+ɔ, locative )

phàtríngɔ'i, no sooner...than ( phat, infix+ɔ, negation+ling'ɔidɔ while )

tríng'ɔidɔ, before ( ɔ, negation+ling'ɔidɔ, while )

tríbɔmɔkh'ɔi, till, until ( ɔ, negation+libɔmɔkh'ɔi, so long as.)

(c) Bound Markers with other components

hək pɔgɔ, as soon as ( hək, at once+pɔ, marker of infinitive +kɔ, comitative)

nə̀bò, so that ( nə̀, infix + pò )

pə̀gúmno, just as.. so ( pò + kúm, primary adverb + nə̀, instrumental )

pə̀khùdingò, whenever ( pò + khùding, each + tó, locative )

pə̀mòtò'mdò, when ( pò + mòtò'm, time + tó )

Bound markers of the verbs of adverb clauses replace-general marker. They do not occur with the markers of the tenses and tense forms. They express one of the three aspects viz., (a) indefinite, (b) perfect and (c) durative. They express one of these three aspects of the present tense modifying the verbs of the independent clauses in the present and future tenses. They express one of the three aspects of the past tense modifying the verbs of independent clauses in the past tense.

#### 1(1) Indefinite Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses:—

- 1) hə̀k, pə̀gò, as soon as
- 2) lə̀bòmə'ktòdò, even if, though
- 3) lə̀bòsù, though, although
- 4) pə̀gúmno, just as ... so
- 5) pə̀khùdingò, whenever
- 6) pə̀mòtò'mdò, when
- 7) phà̀htríng'òidò, no sooner... than
- 8) tríbòmə̀kh'ò, till, until
- tríng'òidò, before

Examples:—

Verbs in-i,  
general marker

Verbs with the Bound Marker

i, wə̀/you/    1) hə̀k íbə̀gò, as soon as we/you/they write/wrote they write.

iro'm'i, we/you/ 2) írobom'ektado, even if we/you/they write/  
they wrote wrote

3) írobosù, though we/you/they write/wrote

4) íbogúmno, just as we/you/they write/wrote

5) íbakhùdingdo, whenever we/you/they write/  
wrote wrote

6) íbomoto'mdo, when we/you/they write/wrote

7) íphàthring'ido, no sooner we/you/they  
write/wrote... than

8) ídribomokho'i, till we/you/they write/wrote

9) ídringo'ido, before we/you/they write/wrote

màno pára hék íbogo syámsù i, as soon as he writes his  
lesson Syam also writes

màno pára írobom'ektado, syámd'i idè, even if he writes his  
lesson Syam does not write

màno pára írobosù syámd'i idè, though he writes his les-  
son Syam does not write

màno pára íbogúmno syámsù i, just as he writes his les-  
son so Syam writes

màno pára íbakhùdingdo syámsù i, whenever he writes his  
lesson Syam also writes

màno pára íbomoto'mdo syámsù i, when he writes his les-  
son Syam also writes

màno pára íphàthring'ido syámno i, no sooner he writes  
his lesson than Syam writes

màno pára ídribomokho'i syámd'i írói, till he writes his les-  
son Syam will not write

màno pára ídringo'ido syámno i, before he writes his les-  
son Syam writes

#### (b) Past Indefinite

màno pára hék íbogo syámsù íro'm'i, as soon as he wrote  
his lesson Syam wrote

màno párà írobom'òkíàdo syám'dì író'm'dé, even if he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno párà írobosù syám'dì író'm'dè, though he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno párà íbògùmnò syámsù író'm'ì, just as he wrote his lesson so Syam wrote

màno párà íbòkhùdíngdò syámsù író'm'ì, whenever he wrote his lesson Syam also wrote

màno párà íbomotò'mdò syámsù író'm'ì, when he wrote his lesson Syam also wrote

màno párà íphàttríng'ìdò syámno író'm'ì, no sooner he wrote his lesson than Syam wrote

màno párà ídribomòkhò'ì syám'dì író'm'dè, till he wrote his lesson Syam did not write

màno párà ídríngò'ìdò syámno író'm'ì, before he wrote his lesson Syam wrote

## 1(2) Perfect Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

ìbomotúngdò. 'after' is used to express the perfect aspect of the present and past tenses.

Examples:—

Verbs in —ì, general  
marker

Verbs in ìbomotúngdò, after

íré, we/you/they have  
written

ìrobomotúngdò, after we/you/they have/  
had written

író'm'ì, we/you/they  
had written

dórenno láklobò motúngdò gópál càtkon'ì, after Doren has come Gopal will go

dórenno dímapúr yò'urəbò motúngdò mádh'opno ímpháí thàd'òkkon'ì, after Doren has reached Dimapur, Madhop will leave Imphal

(b) Past Indefinite

dórénnə lákklobə mətúngdə gópál c'ətləm'i, after Doren had come Gopal went

dórénnə dímpúr yə'urəbə mətúngdə mádh'opnə 'imphál thàd'oklóm'i, after Doren had reached Dimapur Madhop left Imphal

1(3) Durative Aspect of the Present and Past Tenses

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the durative aspect of the present and past tenses:—

(1) líboməkhə'i, so long as

(2) língə'ido, while

Examples:—

Verbs in -i, general  
marker

íri, we/you/they are  
writing

íro'mlí, we/you/they  
were writing

Verbs with the bound markers

(1) íriboməkh'oi, so long as we/  
you/they are/were writing

(2) íringə'ido, while we/you/they  
are/were writing

bírénnə párà páriboməkh'oi mománo mágí monáktə phəm'i,  
so long as Biren is reading his lesson his mother sits near  
him.

bírénnə párà páringə'ido nóng tá:t'i, while Biren is reading  
his lesson it rains

(b) Past Durative

bírénnə párà páriboməkh'oi mománo mágí monáktə phə'mlóm'-  
m'i, so long Biren was reading his lesson his mother sat  
near him

bírénnə párà páringə'ido nóng táro'm'i, while Biren was  
reading his lesson it rained

### 1(3/2) Modification of li, durative aspect

li durative aspect expresses such aspect of the present and past tenses forming the initial component of the following bound markers:—

| Bound Markers              | Verbs with the Bound Markers                          |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1) libomokho'i, so long as | iribomokho'i, so long as we/you/they are/were writing |
| 2) lingo'ido, while        | iring'ido, while we/you/they are/were writing         |

li, durative aspect expresses the indefinite aspect of the present and past tenses forming the intervocal component of the following bound markers:—

| Bound Markers                           | Verbs with the Bound Markers                      |
|---|---|
| 1) phattringo'ido, no sooner . . . than | iphattring'ido, no sooner we/you/they write/*rote |
| 2) tring'ido, before                    | idring'ido, before we/you/they write/wrote        |
| 3) iribomokho'i, till, until            | idribomokho'i, till we/you/they write/wrote       |

### 1(4) Indefinite Aspect of the Tense Forms

The following bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clauses are used to express the indefinite aspect of the tense forms;—

- 1) lo'bad'i, subjunctive tense in the present indefinite form,
- 2) lo'mlobad'i, contingent future perfect tense in the past indefinite form
- 3) nobo, "so that" in the indefinite aspect form of "may"

Examples:—

**Verbs in -i, general marker**

i, we/you/they write

irəm'i, we/you/they wrote

iboyá:i, we/you/they may write

**Verbs with the Bound markers**

1) irəbəd'i, if we/you/they write

2) irə'mləbəd'i, if we/you/they wrote

3) inəbə, so that we/you/they may write

màno pángləbəd'i syámsù cə̀tkən'i, if he helps then Syam will also go

màno pánglə'mləbəd'i syámsù cə̀tlo'gədo'ubən'i, if he helped then Syam would have gone

màno syámbù pángb'inəbə mən'əndə lùpə torá p'irè, he has been given ten rupees so that he may help Syam .

màno syámbù dimápúrdə thínb'inəbə mən'əndə ghəri omə p'igən'i, he will be given a watch so that he may escort Syam to Dimapur

**1(4/2) Modification of lə, perfect aspect**

lə, perfect aspect expresses such aspect of the present and past tenses forming the initial component of ləbəmətúngdə, "after".

**Verbs in -i, general marker**

irè, we/you/they have written

irə'mlə, we/you/they had written

**Verb in ləbəmətúngdə, after**

irəbəmətúngdə, after we/you they have/had written

lə, perfect aspect expresses the indefinite aspect of the present/past tense and tense forms forming the initial component of the following bound markers:—

**Bound Markers**

1) ləbəm'əktədo, even if, even though

**Verbs with the Bound Markers**

irəbəm'əktədo, even if we/you/they write/wrote



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2) lobosù, though, although                     | irobosù, though we/you/they write/wrote |
| 3) lobod'i, subjunctive tense                   | irobod'i, if we/you/they write          |
| 4) lo'mlobod'i, contingent future perfect tense | iso'mlobod'i, if we/you/they wrote      |

## 2(1) Verb with the Bound Markers expressing Persons

Verbs of the adverb clauses with bound markers express the honorific persons taking the markers of such persons.

### (a) co, honorific first person

izorobod'i, if we write

izorabosù, though we write/wrote

izorabom'oktoda, even if we write/wrote

izorabomatúngdo, after we have/had written

izoribamokho'i, so long as we are/were writing

izoringo'ido, while we are/were writing

### (b) p'i, honorific second/third person

ib'irobod'i, if you write

ib'irobosù, though you write/wrote

ib'irobom'oktoda, even if you write/wrote

ib'irobomatúngdo, after you have/had written

ib'iribamokho'i, so long as you are/were writing

ib'iringo'ido, while you are/were writing

o'ino thob'ok hék sùzabgo nong tá'i, as soon as I work, it rains

o'ino thob'ok sùzabo khùdingdo nong tá'i, whenever I work it rains

o'no thob'ok sùzabo moto'mdo nong tá'i, when I work it rains

od'omno thob'ok hék sùb'ibogo nóng tá:i, as soon as you work it rains

od'omno thob'ok sùb'ibo khùdingdo nóng tá:i, whenever you work it rains

od'omno thob'ok sùb'ibo motomdo nóng tá:i, when you work it rains

## 2(2) Verbs with the Bound Markers expressing Negation

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the following bound markers express negation taking to, marker of negation:—

| Bound Markers                                   | Negative Verbs with Bound Markers                         |
|---|---|
| 1) labom'ektodo, even even                      | idrabom'ektodo, even if we/you/they do not/did not write  |
| 2) labad'i, subjunctive tense                   | idrabad'i, if we/you/they do not write                    |
| 3) la'mlabad'i, contingent future perfect tense | ira'mdrabad'i, if w./you/they did not write               |
| 4) labasù, though                               | idrabasù; though we/you/they do not/did not write         |
| 5) nobo, so that                                | idanobo, so that we/you/they may not write                |
| 6) pogúmmo, just as .. so                       | idabagúmmo, just as we/you/they do not/did not write so   |
| 7) pokhùdingdo, whenever                        | idabokhùdingdo, whenever we/you/they do not/did not write |
| 8) pomoto'mdo, when                             | idabomoto'mdo, when we/you/they do not/did not write      |

bírenno càttrabom'ektodo syámd'i còtl'i, even if Biren does not go Syam goes

bírenno càttrabad'i syámsù càtlól, if Biren does not go Syam will also not go

birénno c'ottlo'mdrobad'i syámsú c'ottlomlo'i, if Biren did not go  
Syam will not have gone

birénno càttrobosù syámd'i cà'kon'i, though Biren does not go  
Syam will go

birénno c'ottobagùmnno syámsù c'ottè, just as Biren does not  
go so Syam does not go

birénno c'ottobakhùdingdo syámd'i càtl'i, whenever Biren does  
not go Syam goes

birénno c'ottobomoto'mdo syámd'i càtl'i, when Biren does not  
go Syam goes

birénno syámbù c'ot:h'ondanobo mòng'ondo lùpà torà p'igon'i,  
Biren will be given ten rupees so that he may not allow  
Syam to go.

## 2(2/2) Negative Verbs with Bound Markers expressing Persons

Negative verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound  
markers have already been shown. Such verbs express the ho-  
norific persons taking the markers of these persons.

### (a) co. honorific first person

izodrobom'əktədo, even if we do not/did not write

izodrobəd'i, if we do not write

izoro'mdrobad'i, if we did not write

izodrobosù, though we do not/did not write

izodonobo, so that we may not write

izodobomoto'mdo, when we do not/did not write

### (b) p'i, honorific second/third person

ib'idrobom'əktədo, even if you do not/did not write

ib'idrobəd'i, if you do not write

ib'ira'mdrobad'i, if you did not write

ib'idəbəsù, though you do not/did not write

ib'idənbə, so that you may not write

ib'idəbəmətə'mdə, when you do not/did not write

## 2(3) Verbs with Bound Markers defined by Modifiers

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers may be defined by the modifiers.

lèptúno cá th'əkləbəm'əktədə, even if we/you/they take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əkləbə'd'i, if we/you/they take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əklə'mbəd'i, if we/you/they took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əkləbəsù, though we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əknəb, so that we/you/they may take tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əkpəgúmnə, just as we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əkpəkhùdngdə, whenever we/you/they take/took tea standing

lèptúno cá th'əkpəmətə'mdə, when we/you/they take/took tea standing

## 2(4) Bound Markers occurring with Auxiliary Verbs

Bound markers of the adverb clauses may occur with the four auxiliary verbs viz., ngo'm, tá, th'ok and yá. In such case, these auxiliary verbs express the meanings shown against them below:—

( AVs=auxiliary Verbs )

| A.Vs  | meanings of A.Vs<br>occurring with-1/ni<br>General Markers | meanings of AVs<br>occurring with Bound<br>Markers |
|-------|--|--|
| ngo'm | can, could   | able   |
| tá    | obligative tense   | necessary  |

|       |           |             |
|-------|-----------|-------------|
| th`ok | should    | neccessary  |
| yá    | may,might | permissible |

a) ngo'm. able+bound markers

íbo ngo'mlobom`oktado, even if we/you/they are/were able to write

íbo ngo'mlobod`i, if we/you/they are able to write

íbo ngo'mlo'mlobod`i, if we/you/they were able to write

íbo ngo'mlobosù, though we/you/they are/were able to write

íbo ngo'mbo moto'mdo, when we/you/they are/were able to write

(b) tá/th`ok, neccessary+bound markers

íbo tá:bhom`oktado/ípho'mthoklabb m`oktado, even if it is was neccessary to write

íbo tárobod`i/ípho'm th`oklobod`i, if it is neccessar to write

íbo táro'mlobod`i/ípho'm th`oklo'mlobod`i, if it was neccessary to write

íbo tárobosù/ípho'm th`oklobosù, though it is/ was neccessary to write

íbo táboma'tomdo/ípho'm th`okpomoto'mdo, when it is/was neccessary to write

(c) yá, permissible+bound markers

íbo yárobom`oktado, even if it is/was permissible to write

íbo yárobod`i, if it is permissible to write

íbo yáro'mlobod`i, if it was permissible to write

íbo yárobosù, though it is/was permissible to write

íbo yábomoto'mdo, when it is/was permissible to write

2(4) Emphatic Bound Markers of the Verbs of Adverb Clauses

Emphatic bound markers of the verbs of the adverb clause may optionally be used in place of some bound markers when emphasis on the verbs of adverb clauses is intended. Such emphatic bound markers are shown against their corresponding bound markers below:—

| Bound Markers     | Emphatic Bound Markers | Meanings          |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1) lobod'i        | logod'i                | subjunctive tense |
| 2) lobom'oktoda   | lobophàoba             | even if           |
| 3) lobomatúngda   | loga                   | after             |
| 4) lobosù         | logosù, túnosù         | though            |
| 5) pagúmno        | poda'uno               | just as... so     |
| 6) phàttring'oida | la'm..phàttring'oida   | no sooner...than  |
| 7) tribomakhoi    | tribophàoba            | till              |
| 8) tring'oida     | tring'aimomàngda       | before            |

Examples:—

| general forms with bound' markers | emphatic forms with emphatic bound markers | meanings                 |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| 1) írobod'i                       | írogod'i                                   | if he writes             |
| 2) írobom'oktoda                  | írophàoba                                  | even if he writes        |
| 3) írobomatúngda                  | íroga                                      | after he has written     |
| 4) írobosù                        | írogaù, ídúnosù                            | though he writes         |
| 5) íbogúmno                       | íboda'uno                                  | just as he writes so     |
| 6) íphàttring'oida                | íro'm íphàttring'oida                      | no sooner he writes than |
| 7) ídribomakh'oi                  | ídribophàoba                               | till he writes           |
| 8) ídring'oida                    | ídring'aim'màngda                          | before he writes         |

## 2(5/2) lo'm, emphatic additive marker

lo'm, marker of the past tense functions as the emphatic additive marker occurring with the verbs of the adverb clauses in the past tense with the following bound markers:—

- 1) hèk... pogo, as soon as
- 2) lobom`ektado, even if, even though
- 3) lobomotúngo, after
- 4) lobosù, though, although
- 5) libomokh`oi, so long as
- 6) líng`ido, while
- 7) pogúmno, just as... so
- 8) pakhù`ingdo, whenever
- 9) pomoto`mdo, when
- 10) tribomokh`oi, till, until
- 11) tringo`ido, before

## Examples:—

| general forms<br>with bound<br>markers | emphatic forms with<br>lo'm and bound<br>markers | meanings                  |
|--|--|---------------------------|
| 1) hèk ibogo                           | hek irambogo                                     | as soon as he<br>wrote    |
| 2) irabom`ektado                       | iró'mlobom`ektado                                | even if he wrote          |
| 3) irabomotúngo                        | iró'mlobomotúngo                                 | after he had<br>written   |
| 4) irabosù                             | iró'mlobosù                                      | though he wrote           |
| 5) iribomokh`oi                        | iró'mlibomokh`oi                                 | so long as he was writing |
| 6) iring`ido                           | iró'mlíng`ido                                    | while he was writing      |
| 7) ibogúmno                            | iró'mbogúmno                                     | just as he wrote ...so    |

|                   |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 8) ibòkhùdìngdò   | irò'mbòkhùdìngdò  | whenever he wrote |
| 9) ibòmòtò'mdò    | irò'mbòmòtò'mdò   | when he wrote     |
| 10) idribòmòkh'òì | irò'mdribòmòkh'òì | till he wrote     |
| 11) idrìng'òdò    | iròmdrìng'òidò    | before he wrote   |

## COMPOUND SENTENCES

4.2.3.0 Compound Sentences consist of two or more main clauses joined by the conjunctions ( both conjunctive and disjunctive ). Such conjunctions have been shown in the Morphology. They are discussed here in detail.

1 òdùbù, but

bìrén lálò'm'ì òdùbù càk càrò'mdè. Biren came but did not take the meal

bínóyd'ì sìnḡ'ì òdùbù tò'n'ì, Binoy is wise but idle

1(2) òdùbù replaced by tò'u;ì:gúmbàsùḡ

òdùbù, "but" may be replaced by tò'n'ì:gúmbàsùḡ, emphatic form when òdùbù disjoins a positive verb and a negative verb provided such verbs are derived from the same root.

general form

emphatic form

bìrèndò sèn p'irò'm'ì òdùbù  
syámddò'ì p'irò'mdè

bìrèndò sèn p'irò'm'ì tò'u;ì:gúmbà  
sùḡ syámddò'ì p'irò'mdè

meaning — Biren was given the money but Syam was not given the money

1(3) òdùbù, "but" replaced by Emphatic Forms

òdùbù, "but" may be replaced by the three emphatic forms viz, d'ì, sù..d'ì and tò...d'ì, when òdùbù disjoins a positive verb and a negative verb provided these verbs are derived from the different verb roots. In such case, these three emphatic forms are added to the verbs causing reduplication of these verbs.



## general form

mà cà:ì odùbù

thòkté

## emphatic forms

mà càd'ì cà:ì thòkt'ì thòkt'é

mà càsù cà:ì thòkt'ì thòktè'

mà cáto cà:ì thòkt'ì thòktè

meaning— he eats but does not drink

## 2 odùm'òkpù, even then

cíth'ì on'ì thàré odùm'òkpù páokhúm lákté, two latters have been sent even then no reply has come

débéndo lùpà torà plìé odùm'òkpù hénno páml'ì, Deben has been given ten rupees even then he is asking for more

## 2(2) odùm'òkpù, "even then," replaced by Emphatic Forms

odùm'òkpù, "even then" may be replaced by the two emphatic forms viz, odùm'òktodo and odùphàobodo.

## general forms

mà càk càrè odùm'òkpù

cá thòkn'ìnglè

## emphatic forms

mà càk càrè odùm'òktodo cá

thòkn'ìnglè

mà càk cà è odùphàobodo cá

thòkn'ìnglè

meaning— he has taken his meal even then he has liked to take tea

## 3 omosùng, "and"

binóy omosùng bírénno í, Binoy and Biren write

binóyno í omosùng bírénno pá:ì, Binoy writes and Biren reads

binóyno íro'mgon'ì omosùng páro'mgon'ì, Binoy will have written and read.

It is possible to avoid coordination at one point or more points by using modifiers when the verbs of the main clauses have the same subject and show sequential action.

## (a) use of coordination

màno syámdogí sén lə'uro'm'i, kómlá lə'iro'm'i ɔmosùŋ càrə'-  
m'i, he took money from Syam, bought orange and ate it

## (b) use of modifiers

-syámdogí sén lə'urəgo kómlá lə'idúno mánə càrə'm'i, after ta-  
king money from Syam, buying orange he ate it

## 3(2) ɔmosùŋ, "and" replaced by Emphatic Forms.

ɔmosùŋ, "and" may be replaced by the three emphatic forms viz, ɔdúgo, ɔmod'i and ɔmoh'iksùŋ when ɔmosùŋ coordinates the verbs of the main clauses having the same subject.

general form

emphatic forms

màno í ɔmosùŋ  
pá:i

màno í ɔdúgo pá:i  
màno í ɔmod'i pá:i  
màno í ɔmoh'iksùŋ pá:i

meaning — he writes and reads

## 3/3) ɔmosùŋ, "and" replaced by -'o emphatic form

ɔmosùŋ, "and" may be replaced by -'o, emphatic form, when ɔmosùŋ coordinates two monosyllabic nominal forms. In such case, -'o is added to both the nominal forms.

general forms

emphatic forms

meanings

h'oi ɔmosùŋ

h'ci:'o lə'i:'o

fruit and

lə'i

flower

ngà ɔmosùŋ

ngà:'o càk:'o

fish and cooked

càk

rice

## 4 lánottrogo .. lá ɔmo, "either .. or"

h'olno'uráno'ttrogo kómlárá ɔmo càs'i, let us eat either mango  
or orange

so'ngómlá nöttrogo cárá ɛ́omo th'òksoṇù, let him drink either milk or tea

4(2) lá nöttrogo.....lá ɛ́omo, "either.....or" replaced by lá...lá ɛ́omo

lá nöttrogo.....lá ɛ́omo, "either.....or" may be replaced by lá . lá ɛ́omo, emphatic form.

| general forms                   | emphatic forms       | meanings                         |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| ho'irá nöttrogo<br>lo'irá ɛ́omo | ho'irá lolirá ɛ́omá  | either fruit<br>flower           |
| ngàrá nöttrogo<br>càklá ɛ́omo   | ngàrá càklá<br>ɛ́omo | either fish<br>or cooked<br>rice |

5 mər'əmd'i, "because"

bínóy lák'óí mər'əmd'i làihòu h'òuri, Binoy will not come because he is suffering from fever

bírén khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói mər'əmd'i thòb'òk sùdè, Biren will not get his wage because he does not do the work

6 mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore"

bínóy làihòu h'òu:ì mər'əm əs'ino lák'óí, Binoy is suffering from fever therefore he will not come

bírén thòb'òk sùdè mər'əm əs'ino khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói, Biren does not do the work therefore he will not get his wage

6(2) mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore" replaced by mər'əm ədùno

mər'əm əs'ino, "therefore" may be replaced by mər'əm ədùno, emphatic form.

| general form   | emphatic form                          |
|--|--|
| mà lóktè mər'əm<br>əs'ino sən pho'nglói                      | mà lóktè mər'əm<br>ədùno sən pho'nglói |
| meaning—he does not come therefore he will not get the money |  |

7 nè, "as well as"

h'oinè lo'inè, fruit as well as flower

h'uinè h'oud'ongnè, dog as well as cat

7/2) nè, "as well as" replaced by sù

nè, "as well as" may be replaced by sù, emphatic form.

| general forms | emphatics forms | meanings                       |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| ngànè càknè   | ngàsù càksù     | fish as well as<br>cooked rice |
| tháonè thúmnè | tháosù thúmsù   | oil as well as salt            |

8 nattro'go, "or"

biren ngos'i lákpə yá'i nattro'go hoyéng lákkon'i, Biren may come today or will come tomorrow

binóy k'othén c'otkon'i nattro'go pará págon'i. Biren will go to market or will read his lesson

9 nattro'bad'i, "otherwise, if not"

pàbúnggi páotàk ins'i nattro'bad'i sáogon'i, let us follow father's advice, otherwise he will be angry

thob'ok sùgonù nattro'bad'i khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói, let them do the work otherwise they will not get the wage

9/2) nattro'bad'i, "otherwise, if not" replaced by nattro'god'i

nattro'b'i, "otherwise, if not" may be replaced by nattro'god'i, emphatic form.

| general form               | emphatic form              |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| thob'ok sùs'i nattro'bad'i | thob'ok sùs'i nattro'god'i |
| khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói       | khùtsùmo'n pho'nglói       |

meaning— let us work otherwise we will not get our wage

10 tənattro'no, ...sù'. "not only but also"

m'itin adudo pakh'ongto natto'no lo'isab'isingu laklo'm'i, not only the boys but also the girls came in the meeting

mádh'opt'i p'onghoto natto'no to'no'mbosu yá'i, Madhop may not only be foolish but also be idle

módhuno ibotonatto'no pabosu yá'i, Modhu may not only write but also may read

### 3 4 CONCORD

4. 3. 0 Manipuri has well knit concord systems, The main concord relations are the following:—

#### 1 Verb-Noun Concord

#### 2 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord

#### 4.3 1. Verb-Noun Concord in Plural

The following verbs, verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers in the feminine gender with p'i keep concord with the human nouns in such gender:—

- a) Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses in p'i
- b) Verbal nouns in p'i derived from the stative verb roots and used as the Subjective Complements
- c) Verbal Qualifiers in p'i derived from the stative verb roots

Examples:—

a) makh'oibù y'oklo'mb'i mab'ok, the grandmother who looked after them

b) nup'i as'i ongaob'i adu n'i, this woman is the one who is mad

c) asingb'i nup'i, the wise woman

#### 4.3.2 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord

#### 4.3.2.1 Verb-Personal Pronoun Concord in Feminine Gender

The following verbs, verbal nouns and verbal qualifiers in the feminine gender with p'i may occur with the personal pronouns showing the feminine gender of such pronouns:—

- a) Emphatic Verbs of the Adjective Clauses in p'i
- b) Verbal nouns in p'i used as the Subjective Complements
- c) Verbal Qualifiers in p'i derived from the stative verb roots

Examples:—

(I) First Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'ì ó'ínò, I who looked after my grandmother

b) ó'id'ì pùmnóm'ók thád'oklób'ì n'ì, I am the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'óngb'ì ó'ikh'òino, we who are foolish

(II) Second Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'ì nshàkno, you who looked after the grandmother

b) n'óngd'ì pùmnóm'ók thád'oklób'ì n'ì, you are the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'óngb'ì nakh'òino, you who are foolish

(III) Third Person

a) ob'okpù y'oklò'mb'ì màno, she who looked after the grandmother

b) màd'ì pùmuóm'ók thád'oklób'ì n'ì, she is the one who has sacrificed everything

c) op'óngb'ì makh'òino, they who are foolish

#### 4.3.2.2 Verb First Personal Pronoun Concord

##### 1 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord in Plural

Verbs in s'i, hortative mood first person plural have concord with the first personal pronoun in the plural.

o'ikho'i h'oino'u càs'i, let us eat the mango

o'ikh'oi párá pákh'is'i, let us be reading our lesson

## 2 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord [without honorific implication]

The following verbs in the first person have concord with the first personal pronouns used as the subjects—

a) Verbs in ho'u, near in the indefinite and durative aspects of the future tense

b) Verbs in kè/s'i, hortative mood

c) Interrogative verbs in s'i. "should"

Examples:—

a) o'i os'ido ph'omh'oukh'igon'i, I shall be sitting here

b) o'i párá págè, let me read my lesson

o'ikh'oi h'oino'u càs'i, let us eat the mango

c) o'ikh'oi ngas'i c'ots'irá, should we go today?

## 3 Verb-First Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the honorific first person with co have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'i/nónái o'i thob'ok sùzerí, I am doing the work

o'i/nónái o'i os'ido ph'omzoh'oukh'igon'i, I shall be sitting here

o'i/nónái o'i párá pázokh'igè, let me be reading my lesson

o'ikh'oi/nónái o'ikh'oi ngas'i c'otcobo ngo'mgon'i, we can go today,

Verbs and Verbal Compounds in the honorific first person derived from the honorific verb roots have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'i/nonái o'i c'in séngzori, I am cleaning my mouth

o'ino/nonái o'ino os'ido lùpà càmo k'otcoh'ugon'i, I shall be giving one hundred rupees here

o'i/nonái o'i kh'ong hámzoge, let me answer the call of nature

o'i/nonái o'i lùk kho'nzobo ngo'mgon'i, I can give additional round of dishes

#### 4 Verb/Modifiers-First Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implication

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific first person have concord with the first personal pronouns and honorific first personal pronouns.

o'id'i/nonái o'id'i càk càzorogo p'otházoro'm'i I took rest after taking my meal

o'id'i/nonái o'id'i wàr'i tázadúno os'ido ph'omzah'uhk'igon'i, I shall be sitting here hearing the story

o'ino/nonái o'ino sèn pho'ngzorogo séndón singzoge, let me pay my debt after getting the money

o'ikh'oid'i/nonái o'ikh'oid'i khùtsùmo'n tánzadúno moirángdo lo'izobo ngo'mgon'i, we can stay at Moirang earning the wage

#### 4.3.2.3 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord

##### 1 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord without honorific implications

The following verbs in the second person have concord with the second personal pronouns used as the subjects:—



- a) Emphatic verbal compounds with *óí/tá`i* in the present and past tenses
- b) Verbs in the Imperative Mood
- c) Interrogative Verbs in *kè*, "should"

**Examples:—**

- a) *n`ong`lì nòyàmbabù phùribói/phùribodá`i*, you are beating your elder brother
- b) *nokh`oi thob`ok sùkh`o*, (you) go on doing the work
- c) *n`ong párá pákh`igèrá*, should you be reading your lesson ?

**2 Verb-Second Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications**

Verbs in the honorific second person with *p`i* have concord with *od`om*, "you" (honorific singular) used as the subject.

*od`omsù cá th`ekp`iridono*, you are taking tea

*od`omd`i nóngyáido c`ak cáb`iribói/cáb`iribodá`i*, you are taking your meal at the midnight

*od`omsù írúzb`ir`o*, (you) please take bath

*od`omno sán odù ínb`ibo tá`i*, you have to wear that shawl

*od`omno modù yéngb`igèrá*, should you see that ?

Verbs in the honorific second person derived from the honorific verb roots also have concord with *od`om*, "you" (honorific singular).

*od`omaù cá phánb`iridono*, you are taking tea

*od`omd`i nóngyáido lùk háb`iribói/háb`iribodá`i*, you are taking meal at the midnight

od'omsù cáithob'ir'ò, (you) please take bath

od'omno sán odù th'onb'ibo tá'i, you have to wear that shawl

od'omno modù m'ityéng táb'igèrá, should you see that?

## 2(2) Replacement of od'om by Honorific Human Nouns

od'om, "you" (honorific singular) used as the subject of the verbs in the honorific second person may be replaced by the honorific human nouns. In such case, these honorific human nouns are in the Vocative Case,

yàmbùngsù cá phànb'iridono, oh! my elder brother! you are taking tea

yàmbùngd'i nóngyáido lùk háb'iribói/háb'iribodá'i, oh! my elder brother! you are taking the meal at the midnight

yàmbùngsù cáithob'ir'ò, oh! my elder brother! (you) please take bath

yàmbùngsù sáa odù th'onb'ibo tá'i, oh! my elder brother! you have to wear that shawl

yàmbùngsù modù m'ityéng táb'igèrá, oh! my elder brother! should you see that?

## 3 Verbs/Modifiers-Second Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific second person have concord with od'om "you" (honorific singular).

od'omd'i thob'ok sùb'irigo khùtsùmo'n pho'ngb'iri, you are getting your wage after doing the work

od'od'i wàr'i páb'idúno mato'm lènb'iribói/iènb'iribodá'i, you are spending your time reading the story

od'omo lùk háb'inobo cáithob'ir'ò, (you) please take bath to have meal

od'omno wàr'i tàb'idúno pótháb'ibo tá'i, you have to take rest hearing the story

od'omno módhúgo ù:nob'inocho mabù ngáib'ikh'igèrà, should you be waiting for Modhu to see him ?

#### 4.3.2.4 Verb Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord

##### 1 Verb-Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord without honorific implications

The following verbs in the third person have concord with the nouns and third personal pronouns used as the subjects: —

- a) Verbs in h'ou, "far" in the indefinite and durative aspects of the Present Tense
- b) Verbs in h'ou "near" in the indefinite and durative aspects of the Future Tense
- c) Emphatic Verbal Compounds with ói/tá:i in the Present and Past Tenses
- d) Verbs in sonù, Hortative Mood
- e) Interrogative Verbs in sonù, "should"

Examples: —

- a) bírénd'i/mád'i ádo ph'omh'ouri, Biren is sitting over there
- b) bírénd'i/mád'i as'ido sánnh'oukh'igon'i, Beren/he will be playing here
- c) bíréano/máno moyámbobù phùríbói/phùríbojá:i, Biren/he is beating his elder brother
- d) bírénd'i/mád'i hoyéng c'etsónù, let Biren/him go tomorrow
- e) bírénbù/mábù párá pákh'isonúrá, should Biren/he be reading his lesson ?

##### 2 Verbs-Noun/Third Personal Pronoun Concord with honorific implications

Verbs in the honorific third person with pī have concord with the honorific human nouns and third personal pronouns used as the subjects.

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù pángb'iro'mì, the Rajkumar/he helped Syam

sonokhwàd'i/màd'i os'ido syámbù ngáib'ih'òukh'igon'i, the Rajkumar/he will be waiting for Syam here

sonokhwàsù/màsù yèknobòbù pángb'iribói/pángb'iribodá:i, the Rajkumar/he is helping the enemy

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù ngáib'isonù, let the Rajkumar/him wait for Syam

sonokhwàno/màno syámbù thínb'isonùrá, should the Rajkumar/he escort Syam ?

Verbs in the honorific third person with pī derived from the honorific verb roots have concord with the honorific human nouns used as the subjects.

sonokhwàd'i àdo khùdóng phàn'b'ih'òuri, the Rajkmur is smoking over there

sonokhwàd'i os'ido lùk háb'ikh'igon'i, the Rajkumar will be taking meal here

sonokhwàd'i nóngyáido s'onggádo lèrgb'iribói/lèngb'iribodá:i, the Rajkumar is going to his home at the midnight

sonokhwàno s'óngóm phàn'b'isonù, let the Rajkumar drink the milk

sonokhwàno modù m'ityéng táb'ikh'isonùrá, should the Rajkumar be seeing that ?

sonokhwàd'i co'ukido lèngs'inb'iri, the Rajkumar is sitting on the chair

sonokhwàd'i oyùkto cáithob'iro'mbo yá:i, the Rajkumar may have taken bath in the morning

### 3 Verb/Modifier-Noun Concord in Honorific Third Person

Verbs and modifiers in the honorific third person with p'i have concord with the honorific human nouns used as the subjects.

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'inóbò ádò màbù ngáib'ih'ouri, the elder brother is waiting for Syam over there to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'inóbò màbù os'ido ngáib'ikh'igo-n'i, the elder brother will be waiting for Syam here to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'inóbò màbù ngáib'iribói/ngáib'iribodá'i, the elder brother is waiting for Syam to help him

yàmbùngd'i syámbù pángb'inóbò màbù ngáib'iro'mbò yá:y; the elder brother may have waited for Syam to help him

#### 4.3.3 Presence/Absence of Concord between Verbs of Main and Dependent Clauses

There may be presence or absence of concord in the tenses and tense forms between the verbs of the main and dependent clauses in the complex sentences.

##### 4.3.3.1 Verbs of Main and Dependent Clauses in Tenses and Tense Forms

###### 1 Same Aspects of same Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the following verbs of the dependent clauses may be in the same aspects of the same tenses and tense forms:—

- a) Verbs of Adjective Clauses
- b) Verbs of Relative Clauses
- c) Verbs of Adverb clauses with Free Markers

Examples:—

###### 1) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

bírenno pánglómbo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglóm'i, Syam helped those persons who were helped by Biren

bírenno pángbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo yá'i, Syam may help those persons who may be helped by Biren

bírenno pánggodo'uribo m'ising odù syámnosù pánggon'i, Syam will help those persons who will be helped by Biren

bírenno pángbo ngo'mgodo'ubo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo ngo'mgon'i, Syam can help those persons who can be helped by Biren

#### b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

bírenbù pánglómboising odù syámnosù pánglóm'i, Syam helped whoever helped Biren

bírenno pánglómboising odù syámnosù pánglóm'i, Syam helped those who were helped by Biren

bírenno hàiro'mbo odù syámnosù hàiro'm'i, Syam said what Biren said

bíren lálóm'i hàibo syámnosù tàro'm'i, Syam heard that Biren came

#### c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

bírenno n'ombo odùk syámnosù n'om'i, Syam works as much as Biren works

bírenno n'ombon'ino owámón phóng'i, since Biren works he gets his wage

### 2 Different Aspects of same Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the verbs of the dependent clauses shown above may be in the different aspects of the same tenses and tense forms.

#### a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

bírenno pánglómbo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglóm'i, Syam helped those persons who had been helped by Biren

**birénno pánglo'mbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pángbo yá'i**  
 Syam may help those persons who may have been helped by Biren

**birénno pánglo'mgodo'uribo m'ising odù syámnosù pánggon'i,**  
 Syam will help those persons who will have been helped by Biren

#### b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

**birénbù pánglo'mlibasing odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i,** Syam  
 helped whoever were being helped by Biren

**birénno pánglo'mlibasing odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i,** Syam  
 helped those who were being helped by Biren

**birénno háiro'mlibo odù syámnosù háiro'm'i,** Syam said what  
 was being said by Biren

**birénno háiro'mlibasing odù syámnosù háiro'm'i,** Syam said  
 whatever was being said by Biren

#### c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

**birénno n'omlo'mlibo odùk syámnosù n'omlo'm'i,** Syam wor-  
 ked as much as Biren was working

**birénno n'omlo'mlibon'iso owàmo'n pho'nglo'm'i,** since Biren  
 was working he got his wage

While the verbs of the dependent clauses express the indefinite aspect of the given tenses and tense forms, the verbs of the main clauses may express the perfect/durative aspect of such tenses and tense forms.

#### a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

**birénno pánglo'mbo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'm'i,** Syam  
 had helped those persons who were helped by Biren

**birénno pángbo yábo m'ising odù syámnosù pánglo'mbo yá'i,**  
 Syam may have helped those persons who may be helped by Biren

## 382—Syntax

### b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

birénàbù pánglò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù pánglò'mlè, Syam had helped whoever helped Biren

birénno pánglò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù pángl'mlè, Shyam had helped those who were helped by Syam

birénno hàirò'mbò odù syámncsù hàirò'mlè, Syam had said what was said by Biren

birénno hàirò'mbòsìng odù syámncsù hàirò'mlè, Syam had said whatever was said by Biren

### c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

birénno n'ombò odùk syámncsù n'omlè, Syam has worked as much as Biren works

birénno n'ombon'ìno ówámò'n phò'nglè, since Biren works he has got his wage

## 3 Different Aspects of different Tenses and Tense Forms

Verbs of the main clauses and the verbs of the dependent clauses shown above may be in the different aspects of the different tenses and tense forms.

### a) Verbs of Main and Adjective Clauses

birénno pánglò'mbò m'ising odù syámncsù pángkh'ìgon'ì, Syam will be helping those persons who was helped by Biren

birénno pángbò yábo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglè, Syam has helped those persons who may be helped by Biren

birénno pánggòdò'urìbo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglò'mlè, Syam had helped those persons who will be helped by Biren

birénno pángbò ngo'mgòdò'ubo m'ising odù syámncsù pánglò'mgon'ì, Syam will have helped those persons who can be helped by Biren



## b) Verbs of Main and Relative Clauses

birénbù pánglò'mbòsing òdù syámnoòsù pánglò'mgon'ì, Syam will have helped whoever helped Biren

birénno pánglibòsing òdù syámnoòsù pánglò'mbo yá:'ì, Syam may have helped those who are being helped by Biren

birénno hàirò'mbo òdù syámnoòsù hàirò'mgon'ì, Syam will have said what was said by Biren

birénno hàiribòsing òdù syámnoòsù hàirò'mbo yá:'ì, Syam may have said whatever is being said by Biren

## c) Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses

birénno n'omlò'mbo òdùk syámnoòsù n'omlò'mgon'ì, Syam will have worked as much as Biren worked

birénno n'omkh'igòdò'uribon'ino òwàmo'n phò'ngbo yá:'ì, since Biren will be working he may get his wage

## 4.3.3.2 Verbs of Main and Adverb Clauses in Tenses and Tense Forms

## 1 Same Aspects of Present and Past Tenses

Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers express one of the three aspects of the present and past tenses viz., indefinite, perfect and durative. Such aspects of these tenses may be expressed by the verbs of the main clauses keeping concord with the verbs of these adverb clauses.

## a) Indefinite Aspect

màno hék lákpoḡ syámsù lák:'ì, as soon as he comes Syam also comes

màno lákpoḡúmno syámsù lák:'ì, just as he comes so Syam also comes

màno lákpo mto'mdo syámsù lák:'ì, when he comes Syam also comes

màno lákphàttring'oido syámsù lzk:t, no sooner he comes  
than Syam also comes

màno lákpo khùdingdo syámsù láklo'm'i, whenever he came  
Syam also came

màno láktring'oido syámsù láklo'm'i, before he came Syam  
also come

màno lálklobomo'ktodo syámd'i láklo'mdè, even if came Syam  
did not come

màno lálklobosù syámd'i láklo'mdè, though he came Syam  
did not come

màno láktribokho'i syámd'i la'klo'mdè, till he came Syam  
did not come

#### b) Perfect Aspect

màno la'klobomo'túngdo syámsù la'klè, after he has come  
Syam has come

màno la'klobomotúngdo syámsù la'klo'mlè, after he had  
come Syam had also come

#### c) Durative Aspect

màno íribomokh'oi syámsù íri, so long as he is writing Syam  
is writing

màno íring'oido syámsù íro'ml'i, while he was writing Syam  
was writing

### 1(2) Different Aspects of Present and Past Tenses

Verbs of the main clauses my express the aspects of  
the present and past tense other than those denoted by the  
verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers,

(V=Verb of Adverb Clause

VV=Verb of Main Clause )

#### a) V in Indefinite Aspect and VV in Perfect Aspect

màno hək lākpəgo sya'msù lāklè, as soon as he comes syam has also come

màno lākpəgúmno syámsù lāklè, just as he comes so Syam has come

màno la'kpo mətə'mdɔ sya'msù lāklè, when he comes Syam has also come

màno lākpəháttring'ɔido syámsù la'klè, no sooner he comes than Syam has also come

màno lākpəkhùdingɔ sya'msù la'klə'mlè, whenever he came Syam had also come

màno la'ktring'ɔido sya'm la'klə'mlè, before he came Syam had come

màno la'kləbom'əktɔdo sya'md'i la'klə'mdrè, even if he came Syam had not come

màno la'kləbəsù sya'md'i la'klə'mdrè, though he came Syam had not come

màno lāktriboməkhə'i syámd'i lāklə'mdrè, till he came Syam had not come

b) V in Perfect Aspect and VV in Indefinite Aspect

màno la'kləbɔ mətúngɔ sya'msù ta'k'i, after he has come Syam also comes

màno la'kləbɔ mətúngɔ sya'msù la'klə'mli, after he had come Syam also comes

c) V in Durative Aspect and VV in Indefinite Aspect

màno n'əkləboməkhə'i syámsù n'ək'i, so long as he is laughing Syam also laughs

màno n'əkləng'ɔido syámsù n'ək'ə'm'i, While he was laughing Syam also laughed

1(3) V in Present Tense and VV in Tense Forms

While the Verbs of the adverb clauses with the bound markers express one of the three aspects of the present tense viz., indefinite, perfect and durative, the verbs of the main clauses may express the aspects of the future tense and tense forms.

a) V in Present Indefinite and VV in Perfect Aspect of Tense Forms

màno hək ləkpoɣə syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, as soon as he comes  
Syam will also have come

màno ləkpoɣúmno syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, just as he comes so  
Syam will also have come

màno ləkphàtting'ido syámsù ləklo'mgon'i, no sooner he  
comes than Syam will also have come

màno ləkpo khúdingdo syámsù ləklo'mbo ya'i, whenever  
he comes Syam may also have come

màno ləktríng'ido syámsù ləkpo ya'ro'mgon'i, before he  
comes Syam might also have come

màno ləklobom'oktoto syámd'i lək' mbə nga'mlói, ever  
if he comes Syam cannot have come

màno ləklobosù syámd'i ləkpo ngo'mlo'mlói, though he comes  
Syam could not have come

màno ləktribomokh'oi syámd'i ləktoɔo ta'rè, till he comes  
Syam has had not to come

b) V in Present Perfect and V V in Indefinite Aspect of Tense Forms

màno ləklobo motúngdo syámsù ləkoni, after he has come  
Syam will also come

màno ləklobo motúngdo syámsù ləkpo ya'i, after he has  
come Syam may also come

c) V in Present Durative and VV in Indefinite Aspect of Tense Forms

màno ləklibomokh'oi syámsù lək'oni, so long as he is co-  
ming Syam will also come

màno tákling'oido syámsù la'kpo ya':i, while he is coming  
 Syam may also come

## 2 Three Tense Forms

When subjunctive (conditional) tense and contingent future perfect tense are expressed in the complex sentences, the verbs of the dependent clauses with the bound markers take indefinite aspect form of present/past tense and the verbs of the main clauses take indefinite/perfect aspect form of the future tense and tense forms

màno c'otlobod'i syámsù c'otkon'i, if he goes Syam will also  
 go

màno c'otlo'mlobod'i syámsù c'otlo'mgon'i, if he went Syam  
 would have gone

When "may" is expressed with the help of the verb of the dependent clauses with nobo, "so that", the verbs of the main clauses take indefinite/perfect aspect form of the tenses and tense forms,

màno syámbù dimápúrdò thínb'inobo mong'ondo lúpà càmo  
 p'ìgon'i, he will be given one hundred rupees so that he may  
 escort Svam to Dimapur

---

## 5 LEXIS

**5.1 Present day Manipuri vocabulary consists of the words from the following sources:—**

- a) Native Manipuri**
- b) A good number of words of NIA origin**
- c) A fairly good number of words of Arabic and Persian origin**

Besides these, a limited number of words from the European languages also, especially from English have been accepted by Modern Manipuri.

### **5.2 Phonological Forms of Loan Words**

Loan words undergo some phonological changes.

#### **5.2.1 Loan Words of NIA Origin**

Phonological changes in the loan words of NIA origin have been shown in the following Sections of PHONOLOGY:-

- a) Internal Morphophonemic Changes in Loan Words (Pp 80-90)**
- b) Morphophonemic Changes of Consonants in Loan Words (Pp. 122-148)**

#### **5.2.2 Loan Words of Arabic and Persian Origin**

Vowels (monophthongs) other than -e in the initial, intervocal and final position in the loan words of Arabic and Persian origin undergo some morphophonemic changes. Such changes will be shown here.

**1(1) o > a**

##### **a) Arabic Words**

omin > ámin, revenue officer

hozzam > házám, barbar

mormot > mórám'ot, repair to the buildings

##### **b) Persian Words**

ocar > ácár, pickle

comca > cámo'c, spoon

hophta > háptá, week

## 1(2) &gt;i

## a) Arabic Words

zurmana&gt;zóri, fine

## b) Persian Words

nosa&gt;nísá, intoxication

jonjir&gt;zinzúr, a kind of gold necklace

## 1(3) &gt;0

## a) Arabic Words

dakhel&gt;dókhon, physical occupation of property

## b) Persian Words

caddar&gt;cádór, a kind of shawl

nomuna&gt;nómná, model

resom&gt;resom, velvet

## 1(4) &gt;oi

## a) Arabic Word

boyana&gt;bóiná, advance payment of money

## b) Persian Word

sohi&gt;sóí, signature

## 2-a

## 2(1) a&gt;o

## a) Arabic Words

okhobar&gt;kho'bo'r, news

kobza&gt;ko'po'co' iron implement used in locking the doors

kharij&gt;kho'lás, discharge of prisoners

comca&gt;cámo'co,, spoon

## 2(2) a&gt;ai

## a) Persian Word

pajama&gt;páizámá

## 3-i

-i In the Arabic words changes into-&gt;,-a and-o.

## a) &gt;o

kolfoyet&gt;kolph'ot, explanation

## b) i&gt;a

kharij&gt;kho'lás, discharges of the prisoners

## c) i&gt;o

akil&gt;ákón, intelligence

## 6.2 Replacement of Manipuri Script by the Bengali Script

Manipuri language written in the Bengali script became the official language of Manipur during the British rule (1891 AD-1947 AD). It was also used as the medium of Instruction and Examination during such rule.

The legacy left by the British rulers continues even today, Manipuri language written in the Bengali Script is now the official language and the medium of Instruction and Examination from the Primary to the Postgraduate levels.

## 6.3 Vowels and Consonants in Manipuri Script

Number of the vowels and consonants in the Manipuri script are same as those in the western scripts viz, the scripts used in writing the NIA languages like Bengali, Hindi etc. Pronunciation of such vowels and consonants in the Manipuri script is same as that in the western scripts, There will be no difficulty in using the Manipuri script in place of the Bengali script in the writing Manipuri, the Official Language. There has thus been a public demand since 1965 for using the Manipuri script for writing Manipuri, the Official Language. This demand had to confront with the so-called prayer of some misguided persons. Such prayer is that words in the Manipuri language to be written in the Manipuri script should be spelt according to the rules of the book, "wàk'oklón thléé solái omàilón pù'ok", This prayer is calculated to cause (a) confusion in the spelling of the Manipuri words and (b) delay in using the Manipuri script. It thus provoked criticism and opposition but it was vigorously publicised and propagated with the blessing and patronage of the politicians. There has thus been inordinately long delay in using the Manipuri script in writing Manipuri, the Official Language.

## 6. 5 Wakoklon System

Rules for spelling the Manipuri words written in the book, "wàk'oklón thléé solái omàilón pù'ok" will be referred to as the "wàk'oklón system".

If the Manipuri words are to be spelt according to the



wàk'ókón System, the vowels, diphthongs and consonants in the language are to be represented by and pronounced as the monosyllabic and compound words. These words and spelling of the Manipuri words with the help of such words will be shown here.

# 1 Words representing Consonants

## 1(1/1) Words representing Stops and Nasals in Syllable Initial Position

Unaspirated Voiceless stops and nasals in the syllable initial position are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

### Consonants      Words representing Consonants in Syllable Initial Position

|    |               |
|----|---------------|
| k  | k'ók, head    |
| p  | pá, eyelid    |
| t  | tín, spittle  |
| m  | m'ít, eye     |
| n  | ná, ear       |
| ng | ngó'u, palate |

## 1(1/2) Words representing Stops and Nasals in Syllable Final Position

Monosyllabic words representing the stops and nasals in the syllable initial position take l'onsúm, supreme god head when such words represent these consonant phonemes in the syllable final position.

### Consonants      Words representing Consonants in Syllable Final Position

|    |                                  |
|----|----------------------------------|
| k  | k'ók:l'onsúm (k'ók, head=k)      |
| p  | pá:l'onsúm (pá, eyelid=p)        |
| t  | tín:l'onsúm (tín, spittle=t)     |
| m  | m'ít:l'onsúm (m'ít, eye=m)       |
| n  | ná:l'onsúm (ná, ear=n)           |
| ng | ngó'u:l'onsúm (ngó'u, palate=ng) |

## 1(1/3) Words representing Voiced stops in Syllable Initial Position

monosyllabic words representing the stop consonants in Syllable initial position take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent the voiced stops in the syllable initial position.

| Consonants | Words presenting the Consonants in Syllable Initial Position |
|------------|--|
|------------|--|

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| b | pá:lóm ( pá, eyelid=p )    |
| d | tín:lóm ( tin, spittle=t ) |
| g | k'ók:lóm ( k'ók, head=k )  |

### 1(2/1) Words representing Aspirated Voiced Stops

Aspirated Voiceless stops are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

| Consonants | Words representing Consonants |
|------------|-------------------------------|
|------------|-------------------------------|

|    |                   |
|----|-------------------|
| kh | khó'u, throat     |
| ph | phó'm, EM, heaven |
| th | thó'u, EM, breast |

### 1(2/2) Words representing Aspirated Voiced Stop

Monosyllabic words representing the aspirated voiceless stops take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent aspirated voiced stops.

| Consonants | Words representing Consonants |
|------------|-------------------------------|
|------------|-------------------------------|

|    |                              |
|----|------------------------------|
| bh | phó'm:lóm (phó'm, heaven=ph) |
| dh | thó'u:óm (thó'u, breast=th)  |
| gh | khó'u:lóm (khó'u, throat=kh) |

### 1(3/1) Words representing -l, -c and -s

-l, -c and -s are represented by the following monosyllabic words:—

| Consonants | Words representing Consonants |
|------------|-------------------------------|
|------------|-------------------------------|

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| l | lái, god    |
| c | c'in, mouth |
| s | s'óm, hair  |

### 1(3/2) Words representing -r, -z and -zh

Monosyllabic words representing -l, -c and -s take lóm, voicing or divine life force when such words represent -r, -z and -zh.

| Consonants | Words representing Consonants |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| r          | lái:lóm (lái, god=l)          |
| z          | c'in:lóm (c'in, mouth=c)      |
| zh         | sóm:lóm (s'óm, hair=s)        |

#### 1(4) Words representing -h, -w and -y

-h, -w and -y are represented by the following monosyllabic words:

| Consonants | Words representing Consonants |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| h          | hùk, EM, body                 |
| w          | wài, EM, wind                 |
| y          | yàng, backbone                |

#### 1(5) Defects of Words representing Consonants

Compound words with lóm, voicing or divine life force representing the unaspirated voiced stops, aspirated voiced stops, -r, -z and -zh have the following defects:—

a) These words do not represent the sounds of such consonant phonemes.

b) These words are disyllabic compound forms. They thus make the spelling of the given words very long and clumsy.

Compound words with l'onsúm, supreme god head representing the unaspirated voiceless stops and nasals in the syllable final position are very long compound forms. They make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

## 2 Words representing Vowels

### 2(1/1) Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

Words representing the vowels (monophthongs) in the syllable final position and the syllable intervocal position are shown below:—

## 396—Graphology

### Vowels Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

|   | with $\phi$ ( zero) Tone | with lúm, Falling Tone |
|---|--------------------------|------------------------|
| o | on`op                    | o:a`op: lúm            |
| a | a:n`op                   | a:n`op: lúm            |
| e | e:n`op                   | e:n`op:lúm             |
| o | o:n`op                   | o:n`op: lúm            |
| i | i:n`op                   | i:n`op:lúm             |
| u | ùn:n`op                  | ùn:n`op:lúm            |

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

|                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| i, blood            | n`op, add |
| lúm, falling tone   | ùn, skin  |
| or vital life force |           |

### 2(1/2) Defects of Words representing Vowels in Syllable Final/Intervocal Position

The words representing i and-u consist of `i, blood and-ùn, skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not express i-and u in the High Tone.

The words representing o,-a,-e and-o consist of n`op, add in the Falling Tone as the basic stem of such words. These words do not express o,-a,-e and-o in the High Tone.

The words with lúm, falling tone representing the vowels in the syllable intervocal position with such tone are compound forms with three or more syllables. Such words make the spelling of the given words inordinately long and clumsy.

### 2(1/3) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Intervocal Position.

When the words with the vowels in the syllable intervocal position are spelt according to the wàkóklón System, Such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) Two or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) Two or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Four or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- e) Four or more n'ops, add

## Examples—

| Words   | Spelling of the Words  |
|---|--|
| khómleán m'ong-lánzán, EM, dream                      | khó'u: on'op: m'it: l'onsúm: láí: en'op: ná: l'onsúm: m'it: on'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'osúm: láí: a'op: lúm: ná: l'osúm: c'in: lóm: an'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm  |
| khùtc'it khùt-nànth'ok, accidental fall from the hand | khó'u: un'op: lúm: t'in: l'onsúm: c'in: in'op: lúm: t'in: l'osúm: khó'u: un'op: lúm: t'in: l'onsúm: ná: an'op: lúm: t'in: l'onsúm: ná: an'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm: tho'u: on'op. lúm: k'ok: l'onsúm |
| lómtháng khùt l'ot, robe of honour                    | láí: on'op: m'it: l'onsúm: tho'u: an'op: ngo'u: l'osúm: khó'u: un'op: lúm: t'in l'onsúm: láí: on'op: lúm: t'in: l'onsúm  |
| múng'én k'ang-l'on, witch craft                       | m'it: un'op: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'òm: en'op: ná: l'onsúm: k'ok: an'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: láí: on'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm  |
| phùmlén thàng-g'on, a long sickle                     | phó'm: un'op: lúm: m'it: l'onsúm: láí: en'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm: tho'u: an'op: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: k'ok: lóm: on'op: lúm: ná: l'onsúm  |
| s'okyéng múng-sén, looking glass                      | s'òm: on'op: lúm: k'ok: l'onsúm: yáng: en'op ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: un'op: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'òm: en'op: ná: l'onsúm   |

## 2(1/4) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Final Position

When the words with the vowels in the syllable final

position are spelt according to the wák'oklón Systems, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Nine or more noun words
- b) Two or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Three or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- e) Five or more n'əps, add

Examples:—

| Words   | Spelling of the Words  |
|---|--|
| m'ir'ək m'icə'n-<br>th'ì, shyness               | mit: in'əp: lúm lák: lóm: ən'əp: lúm: k'ok: l'on-<br>súm: m'it: in'əp: lúm: c'ia: ən'əp: ná: l'on-<br>súm: tho'u: in'əp: lúm:  |
| m'ith'ib'ong<br>m'its'mbán,<br>worthless person | m'it: in'əp: iúm: tho'u: in'əp: lúm. pá:lóm:<br>ən'əp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: in'əp: lúm:<br>tín: ən'əp: m'it' l'onsúm: pá: lóm: an'əp: ná:<br>l'onsúm:              |
| páhàng núng-<br>yéngzég, EM,<br>widow           | pá: an'əp: hùk: an'əp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm:<br>ná: un'əp: ngo'u: l'osúm: yàng: ən'əp. ngo'u<br>l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: ən'əp: ngo'u: l'onsúm:                                |
| n'ingzíng mà-<br>ngzíngnəbə,<br>hesitation      | ná: in'əp: lúm: ngo'u: l'onsúm: c'in: lóm:<br>in'əp: ngo'u: l'onsúm: m'it: an'əp. lúm: ngo'u:<br>l'onsúm: c'in: lóm: in'əp. ngo'u. l'onsúm:<br>ná: ən'əp: pá: lóm: ən'əp |
| núngsí núng-<br>ngóabə, love                    | ná: un'əp. ngo'u: l'onsúm. s'əm. in'əp. ná.<br>un'əp. ngo'u. l'onsúm. ngo'u. ən'əp. ná.<br>l'onsúm. pá. lóm. ən'əp   |
| núngsùk nú-<br>ngzəpəbə,<br>melancholy          | ná: un'əp: ngo'u: l'onsúm: s'əm: un'əp. lúm:<br>k'ok: l'onsúm. ná: un'əp: ngo'u. l'onsúm:<br>c'in: lóm: an'əp. lúm. ná. ən'əp. pá: lóm.<br>ən'əp.                        |

## 2(2/1) Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position

Vowels in the syllable initial position are represented by the following words:—

**Vowels Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position**

|   | <b>-with <math>\phi</math> (zero) Tone</b> | <b>-with lúm, falling tone</b> |
|---|--|--------------------------------|
| o | otíngà, l'onsúm                            | otíngà lúm. l'onsúm            |
| a | otíngá, a. n'òp, l'onsúm                   | otíngà, a. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm  |
| e | otíngà, e. n'òp. l'onsúm                   | otíngà, e. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm  |
| o | otíngà, o. n'òp. l'onsúm                   | otíngà, o. n'òp. lúm. l'onsúm  |
| i | ì: l'onsu'm                                | ì. lu'm; l'onsu'm              |
| u | ùn: l'onsu'm                               | ùn. lu'm; l'onsu'm             |

Meaning of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| otíngà, sky                   | lu'm, falling tone or vital life force |
| ì, blood                      | n'òp, add                              |
| l'onsu'm, supreme<br>god head | ùn, skin                               |

**2(2/2) Defects of Words representing Vowels in Syllable Initial Position**

The words representing the vowels in the syllable initial position have the following defects:—

- a) These words do not express the sounds of the vowels
- b) The words representing- $\phi$ , -a, -e and -o consist of ting, a bound morpheme in the High Tone as the basic stem of such words. These words thus do not express the four vowels in the Falling Tone.

The words representing-i and-u consist of-ì, blood and ùn, skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the two vowels in the High Tone.

- c) The words representing the vowels in the syllable initial position are very long. They thus make spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

**2(2/5) Spelling of Words with Vowels in Syllable Initial Position**

When the words with the vowels in the syllable initial position are spelt according to the Wàk'oklón System; the

## 400- Graphology

spelling of such words may consist of the following components:—

- Eight or more noun words
- One or more lúms, falling tone or vital life fore
- One or more lóms, voicing or diuine life force
- four or more l'onsúms, supreme god head
- Three or more n'ops, add

Examples—

| Words   | Spelling of Words  |
|---|--|
| os'it owánthá,<br>windy season                      | otíngà, l'onsu'm. s'òm, i. n'òp. lu'm. tìn. l'on-<br>su'm, otíngà, l'onsu'm, wàì, an'òp. ná. l'on-<br>su'm. tho'u. an'òp   |
| arámdár cèp-<br>thá, fillister                      | otíngà, an'òp. lu'm. l'onsú'm; láì: lóm. an'òp<br>m'it. l'onsu'm. tìn. lóm. an'òp. láì, lóm.<br>l'onsu'm. c'lin, en'òp, lúm. pà. l'onsu'm,<br>tho'u, an'òp             |
| énno'm nàpàkp'i,<br>an edible herb                  | otíngà, en'òp, lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm<br>ná. on'òp. m'it, l'onsu'm. ná, an'òp, lu'm.<br>pá, an'òp. lu'm. k'òk. l'onsu'm, pá, in'òp:<br>lu'm                      |
| l'irúm s'òkt'ong-<br>ngà, EM, a kind<br>of umbrella | ì: lúm: l'onsu'm: láì: lóm: un'òp: lúm.<br>m'it: l'onsu'm: s'òm, on'òp, lu'm, k'òk. l'on-<br>su'm: tìn. on'òp lu'm. ngo'u: l'onsu'm ngo'u.<br>an'òp. lu'm              |
| l'onth'ok l'ons'in,<br>alteration                   | otíngà. on'òp. lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm,<br>tho'u. on'òp. lu'm. k'òk. l'onsu'm. otíngà:<br>on'òp. lu'm. l'onsu'm. ná. l'onsu'm. s'òm.<br>in'òp. lu'm. ná. l'onsu'm |
| úr'ok so'ndúng-<br>in, cattle egret                 | ùn: l'onsu'm: láì: lóm: on'òp: lu'm: k'òk:<br>l'onsu'm: s'òm. on'òp. ná l'onsu'm. tìn. lóm,<br>un'òp. ngo'u: l'onsu'm: ì: l'onsu'm. ná. l'on-<br>su'm                  |

### 3 Words representing Diphthongs



### 3(1/1) Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

Words representing the diphthongs in the syllable final position are shown below:—

#### Diphthongs      Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

|    | -with $\phi$ (zero) Tone            | -with lúm, falling Tone           |
|----|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| oi | c'oi:n'op                           | c'oi:n'op: lúm                    |
| ou | sə'u:n'op                           | sə'u. n'op. lu'm                  |
| ai | a. n'op. 'i. l'onsu'm               | a. n'op, lúm, 'i. l'onsú'm        |
| ao | a. n'op 'otíngà. on'op.<br>l'onsu'm | a. n'op. lúm. otíngà.<br>l'onsú'm |
| oi | on'op. 'i. l'onsú'm                 | o. n'op. lu'm. 'i. l'onsú'm       |
| ui | ùn. 'n'op. 'i. l'onsu'm             | ùn. n'op. lu'm. 'i. l'onsu'm      |

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below—

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| otíngà, sky                                  | l'onsú'm, supreme god head |
| c'oi, atick                                  | n'op, and                  |
| 'i, blood                                    | sə'u, net                  |
| lu'm, falling<br>tone or vital<br>life force | ùn, skin                   |

The words representing -ai, -ao, -oi and - ui are not given in the Wàkóklón System. They are reconstructed according to the principles followed in the Wàk'oklón System.

### 3(1/2) Defects of Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Final Position

The words representing the diphthongs in the syllable final position have the following defects:—

a) These words do not express the sounds of the diphthongs.

b) The words representing -oi, -ai, -oi, and -ui consist of c'oi, stick, 'i, blood and ùn. skin in the Falling Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the four diphthongs in the High Tone.

The words representing -au and -ao consist of əu, net and ting, a bound morpheme (ɔ+ting+ngà, sky) in the High Tone as the basic stems of such words. These words do not thus express the two diphthongs in the Falling Tone.

c) The words representing the diphthongs are very long compound forms. They thus make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

### 3(1/3) Spelling of Words with Diphthongs In Syllable Final Position.

When the words with the diphthongs in the syllable final position are spelt according to the Wàkò'klón System, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) One or more lu'ums, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force
- d) Two or more l'onsu'ums, supreme god head
- e) Five or more n'ops, add

Examples:—

| Words                                | Spelling of Words   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| l'òik'òk l'òikài,<br>neighbours      | lái. c'òino'p. lúm. k'òk. on'òp. lúm.<br>k'òk. l'onsúm. láí. c'òia'òp. lúm. k'òk.<br>an'òp. lúm. 'i. l'onsúm                                |
| l'òukháò phùr'it,<br>a kind of shirt | lái. əu'no'p. lúm. k'ho'u. an'òp. lúm.<br>otíngà. on'òp. l'onsúm. pho'm. un'òp.<br>lúm. láí. lóm. 'i: n'òp. lóm. tín l'on-<br>súm           |
| p'ongdài súdái'no'bo,<br>fool hardy  | pá. on'òp. lúm. ngo'u. l'onsúm. tín<br>lóm: an'òp. 'i. l'onsúm. s'əm. un'òp.<br>tín: lóm: an'òp. 'j; l'onsúm. ná. on'òp.<br>pá. lóm. on'òp. |
| pànnáo' s'ingnáo,<br>progenies       | pá: an'òp: lúm. ná. l'onsúm. ná. an'òp.<br>ctíngà. on'òp. l'onsúm. ə'əm. in'òp. ngo'u.  |

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
|                                     | l'onsúm. ná: an'op: otingà: on'op. l'onsúm  |
| phùdáo ná'áonobo,<br>entravagant    | ph'om. un'op. lúm. tín. lóm. an'op.<br>otingà. on'op. l'onsúm ná. an'op. lúm.<br>tín. an'op otingà. on'op. l'onsúm. ná.<br>on'op, pá. lóm. on'op              |
| th'oic'ot wángé'otnobo,<br>arrogant | tho'u. on'op. lúm. òi. l'onsúm. c'in-<br>on'op. lúm. tín. l'onsúm. wàj, an'op.<br>ngó'u. l'onsúm. c'in. on'op: lúm. tín.<br>l'onsúm, ná, on'op. pá lóm. on'op |

### 3(2/1) Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

Words representing the diphthongs in the syllable initial position are not given in the wàko'klón System. Such words are reconstructed according to the principles followed in the Wàk'oklón System. These reconstructed words are shown below:—

| Diphthongs | Words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position |   |
|------------|--|---|
|            | -with $\phi$ ( zero ) tone                                 | -with lúm, falling tone                                     |
| oi         | otingà. c'oin'op.<br>l'onsúm                               | otingà. c'oin'op. lúm.<br>l'onsúm                           |
| ou         | otingà. so'un'op.<br>l'onsu'm                              | otingà. so'un'op. lúm.<br>l'onsu'm                          |
| ai         | otingà. an'op. l'onsu'm<br>òi. l'onsu'm                    | otingà. a. n'op. lúm. l'on-<br>su'm. òi. l'onsu'm           |
| ao         | otingà. a.n'op. l'onsu'm.<br>otingà. o.n'op l'onsúm        | otingà. a.n'op. lu'm. l'on-<br>su'm. otingà. on'op l'onsu'm |
| ai         | otingà. on'op. l'onsu'm<br>òi. l'onsu'm                    | otingà. o.n'op. lu'm. l'on-<br>su'm. òi. l'onsu'm           |
| ui         | ùn. l'onsu'm. òi.<br>l'onsu'm                              | ùn lu'm. l'onsu'm. òi. l'on-<br>su'm                        |

Meanings of the components forming the above words are shown below:—

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| otíngà, sky                               | l'onsúm, supreme god head |
| c'òì, stick                               | n'òp, add                 |
| 'ì, blood                                 | so'u, net                 |
| lu'm, falling tone<br>or vital life force | ùn, skin                  |

### 3(2/2) Defects of words representing Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

The words representing in the syllable initial position have the following defects:—

- a) These words do not express the sounds of the diphthongs
- b) The words representing -oi, -ai, -oi and -ui in the syllable initial position are the extensions of the words representing such diphthongs in the syllable final position. They do not thus express the four diphthongs in the High Tone.

The words representing -ou and -ao in the syllable initial position are the extensions of the words representing such diphthongs in the syllable final position. They do not thus express the two diphthongs in the Falling Tone,

- c) These words are very long compound forms. They make the spelling of the given words awfully long and horribly clumsy.

### 3(2/3) Spelling of Words with Diphthongs in Syllable Initial Position

When the words with the diphthongs in the syllable initial position are spelt according to the Wàk'òk'lóu System, such spelling of these words may consist of the following components:—

- a) Eight or more noun words
- b) One or more lúms, falling tone or vital life force
- c) One or more lóms, voicing or divine life force

d) Three or more l'onsúms, supreme god head

e) Three or more n'ops, add

Examples—

| Words   | Spelling of Words  |
|---|--|
| o'ikh'oikhwàino,<br>all of us                     | o'tingà, c'oin'òp: lu'm l'onsu'm. kho'u: on'òp,<br>lu'm ìi. l'onsu'm, kho'u: wàj: an'òp, lu'm.<br>ìi: l'onsu'm. nà. on'òp  |
| o'ugriho'nggén,<br>a kind of dance                | o'tingà, so'uno'p, lúm l'onsu'm. k'ok. lóm.<br>lái. lóm. ino'p. hùk. on'òp. ngo'u, l'onsúm.<br>k'ok, lóm, on'òp. nà. l'onsúm   |
| áim'onkhúlén,<br>name of a tribal<br>village      | o'tingà, an'òp l'onsu'm. ìi. l'onsu'm m'it<br>on'òp. lu'm. ná. l'onsu'm. kho'u. un'òp. ná.<br>l'onsu'm: lái. en'òp ná, l'onsu'm  |
| áožuri pám̃b̃i,<br>a paddy plant                  | o'tingà, an'òp. l'onsu'm: o'tingà, on'òp. l'on-<br>súm, c'in. lóm. un'òp. lúm. lái. lóm. in'òp.<br>lu'm. pá, an'òp: lu'm: m'it. l'onsu'm pá.<br>lóm. ìi: n'òp                      |
| o'iro'm yètl'om,<br>left and right<br>hand sides  | o'tingà, on'òp. lúm. l'onsu'm. ìi. l'onsu'm.<br>lái lóm. on'òp. lúm. m'it, l'onsu'm. y'ang<br>en'òp. lu'm. tín. l'onsu'm. láj: on'òp: lu'm:<br>m'it : l'onsu'm                     |
| u'ibói u'idobói<br>tou': ìi, it is<br>hardly firm | ùn: lúm. l'onsúm: ìi: l'onsúm: pá, lóm.<br>on'òp: ìi: l'onsúm: ùn: lúm: l'onsu'm. ìi:<br>l'onsúm: tín lóm: on'òp: pá: lóm: on'òp: ìi:<br>l'onsúm: tín: so'uno'p: ìi. lúm. l'onsu'm |

#### 4 Assessment on Spelling of Words according to Wàk'oklón System

Spelling of the Manipuri words according to the Wàk'oklón System has the following defects:—

a) Sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are not expressed, Sounds of the unaspirated voiced stops, the aspirated voiced

## 406- Graphology

stops, -r, -z and -zh are not expressed.

b) The following vowels and diphthongs do not express the Tones shown against them:—

- I) -a, -e and -o in the Falling Tone
  - II) -i and -u in the High Tone
  - III) -oi, -ai-oi and -ui in the High Tone
  - IV) -ou and -ao in the Falling Tone
- c) Spelling of the words is awfully long and horribly clumsy.

The above defects are the sufficient ground for rejecting the demand for spelling the Manipuri words according to the Wāk'oklón System.

---